

# GANZ KLASSE!

#2

## STUDENT BOOK

**EDDA KAMPHUES + JENNY JEFFERY**  
**ELLEN MOFFATT + ELLEN DUNN**  
**KATHY HALPIN + SARAH MAY**

ACCESS  
ALL AREAS  
YOUR NELSONNET  
ACCESS CODE  
IS INSIDE! →





## **COPYRIGHT NOTICE**

Copyright in this work is owned by Cengage Learning Australia (“the work”). A condition of purchase of this electronic version of the work is that you agree to respect the copyright in the work, abide by the Copyright Act 1968 and specifically agree not to transfer, sell, assign, misuse, copy or transmit an electronic or other version of the work to any third party.

**Please note:** This product is accompanied by a licence (single user, network or adoption) governing the terms and conditions of its use.

This is a legal agreement between the you, (the “Customer”) and Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited (ABN 14 058 280 149) (the “Licensor”) which provides the terms and conditions of this non-exclusive licence and the limited warranty for the Product. Use of the Product indicates an acknowledgement that the Customer has read and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If you do not agree to these terms and conditions, return the Product to the place of purchase within 15 days of the date of purchase (with proof of purchase) for a full refund

#### **1. Licence Grant**

You do not receive title to the Product. Copyright in the Product (which includes all images, photographs, video, animations, audio, music and text incorporated in the Product, including all of the accompanying printed material) is owned by the Licensor and/or its suppliers and is protected by Australian copyright laws. The Licensor grants you a non-exclusive licence to use the Product subject to the restrictions and terms set out in this Agreement.

#### **2. A Licence allows you to:**

Use the Product on your computer. The Customer represents that they shall in no way place the Product in the public domain or in any way compromise our copyright in the Material. You agree to take reasonable steps to protect our copyright.

#### **3. You may not:**

Alter, modify, translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or adapt the software or create derivative works based on the Product. Make further copies by any means technological, electronic, digital whatsoever without the written permission of the Licensor. Rent or transfer all or any part of your rights under this Agreement. Remove or alter any copyright or other proprietary notice or label attached to the software.

#### **4. Termination**

Any failure to comply with the terms and conditions of this agreement will result in the automatic termination of this licence. Upon termination of this licence for any reason, the Customer must destroy or return to the Licensor all copies of the software and accompanying documentation.

#### **5. Warranties**

To the extent permitted by law, the Licensor’s liability for any breach of the warranty or any term implied by law into this licence is limited to the lowest cost of replacing the goods, acquiring equivalent goods or having the goods repaired.



SCHWEDEN

DÄNEMARK

Nordsee

Ostsee

Sylt  
Föhr  
Amrum

Helgoland  
Baltrum  
Borkum

Kiel

Fehmarn

Rügen

Usedom

Schleswig-Holstein

Mecklenburg-Vorpommern

Hamburg

Schwerin

Bremen

Elbe

Gorleben

Niedersachsen

Brandenburg

POLEN

DIE NIEDERLANDE

Hannover

Berlin

BELGIEN

Nordrhein-Westfalen

Sachsen-Anhalt

Düsseldorf

Hann. Münden

Göttingen

Magdeburg

Potsdam

Sachsen

Rheinland-Pfalz

DEUTSCHLAND

DIE TSCHHECHISCHE  
REPUBLIK

Wiesbaden

Mainz

Hessen

Thüringen

Fulda

Werra

Erfurt

Dresden

FRANKREICH

LUXEMBURG

Rhein

Bayern

ÖSTERREICH

Saarland

Saarbrücken

Baden-Württemberg

Stuttgart

Bayern

München

Wien

DIE SCHWEIZ

Vaduz

LIECHTENSTEIN

Garmisch-Partenkirchen

Bern

ITALIEN



0 50 100 km

# GANZ KLASSE!



#2

**EDDA KAMPHUES + JENNY JEFFERY**  
**ELLEN MOFFATT + ELLEN DUNN**  
**KATHY HALPIN + SARAH MAY**

LANGUAGE CONSULTANT: ANNA BEILHARZ

**CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS: TIM ADAMS, ALISON BRADBURY,**  
**KARIN FREEMAN, SUSANNE HAYWOOD,**  
**JANA KÜHN, ANDREA REICHERT, DIANNE TAMBURRO,**  
**ELAINE TARRAN, ALEXANDER WRIGHT**

Ganz Klasse! 2  
1st Edition  
Edda Kamphues  
Jenny Jeffery  
Ellen Moffatt  
Ellen Dunn  
Kathy Halpin  
Sarah May

Publishers: Dirk Strasser, Danielle Dominguez, Ingrid De Baets  
Project editor: Robyn Beaver  
Copy editors: Helen Koehne, Ingrid De Baets  
Language consultant: Anna Beilharz  
Reviewers: Heike Craig, Fiona King, Josie Nembach  
Text design: Leigh Ashforth (Watershed Art & Design)  
Cover design: Fiona Lee (Studio Pounce Creative)  
Cover art direction: Justin Lim  
Project designer: James Steer  
Cover image: Shutterstock.com/Asier Romero  
Illustrator: Scott Fraser  
Permissions researcher: Wendy Duncan  
Production controller: Renee Tome  
Typesetter: Lisa Howard Design

Any URLs contained in this publication were checked for currency during the production process. Note, however, that the publisher cannot vouch for the ongoing currency of URLs.

Design image credits: p. 34 Shutterstock.com/Aanav; p. 41 Shutterstock.com/Mega Pixel; p. 44 (left) Shutterstock.com/Art Stocker; (centre) Shutterstock.com/Mega Pixel; p. 56 Shutterstock.com/Anna Violet; Shutterstock.com/Antonov Maxim; Shutterstock.com/Tatiana Pankova; p. 70 Shutterstock.com/gst; p. 91 Shutterstock.com/Keith Tarrier; p. 161 Shutterstock.com/serazetdinov; p. 162 Shutterstock.com/BARS graphics; p. 176 Shutterstock.com/rodnikovay; Shutterstock.com/Picsfive; p. 177 Shutterstock.com/optimarc; Shutterstock.com/Marek R Swadzba

© 2020 Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited

#### Copyright Notice

This Work is copyright. No part of this Work may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission of the Publisher. Except as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, for example any fair dealing for the purposes of private study, research, criticism or review, subject to certain limitations. These limitations include: Restricting the copying to a maximum of one chapter or 10% of this book, whichever is greater; providing an appropriate notice and warning with the copies of the Work disseminated; taking all reasonable steps to limit access to these copies to people authorised to receive these copies; ensuring you hold the appropriate Licences issued by the Copyright Agency Limited ("CAL"), supply a remuneration notice to CAL and pay any required fees. For details of CAL licences and remuneration notices please contact CAL at Level 11, 66 Goulburn Street, Sydney NSW 2000, Tel: (02) 9394 7600, Fax: (02) 9394 7601 Email: [info@copyright.com.au](mailto:info@copyright.com.au) Website: [www.copyright.com.au](http://www.copyright.com.au)

For product information and technology assistance,  
in Australia call **1300 790 853**;  
in New Zealand call **0800 449 725**

For permission to use material from this text or product, please email [aust.permissions@cengage.com](mailto:aust.permissions@cengage.com)

ISBN 978 0 17 041951 2

#### Cengage Learning Australia

Level 7, 80 Dorcas Street  
South Melbourne, Victoria Australia 3205

#### Cengage Learning New Zealand

Unit 4B Rosedale Office Park  
331 Rosedale Road, Albany, North Shore 0632, NZ

For learning solutions, visit [cengage.com.au](http://cengage.com.au)

Printed in Singapore by 1010 Printing International Limited.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 23 22 21 20 19



Welcome back to *Ganz Klasse! 2* for another exciting ride through the German-speaking world. You will learn a lot more about culture in German-speaking countries and compare it with your own.

You will also meet up again with our characters in Göttingen, Germany – Max, Anna, Christian, Julia and Sibel and their families. Jessie and Nick are back in Australia, but look out for a happy reunion with two of their German friends.

Through their adventures and conversations, you will further develop your oral skills, enabling you to talk about a wider range of topics, such as negotiating with parents, eating out, sports, health and wellbeing, household chores, shopping, holidays, transport, caring for the environment and future careers.

This Student Book is supported by a Workbook with exercises in grammar, vocabulary, listening, reading, writing and speaking, and by the audio and digital activities on the student website, which will give you further practice. *Alles Gute und viel Spaß!*

The *Ganz Klasse! 2* author team

# PREFACE

## Hier sind wir wieder!



Hallo! Ich heiße Anna Schneider.  
Ich fahre dieses Jahr als  
Austauschschülerin nach Australien.



Ich heiße Max Steiner.  
Ich freue mich schon auf  
meine Reise nach Melbourne.



Ich bin Sibel Hayak.  
Ich habe zwei Brüder  
und eine Schwester.



Servus! Ich bin Christian Gruber.  
Ich komme aus Österreich.



Hi! Ich bin Julia Heine.  
Ich wohne in Göttingen.



Ich bin Nick Davies.  
Ich komme aus Australien.



Ich bin Jessie Newman-McDonald.  
Ich wohne in Melbourne.



# About the series

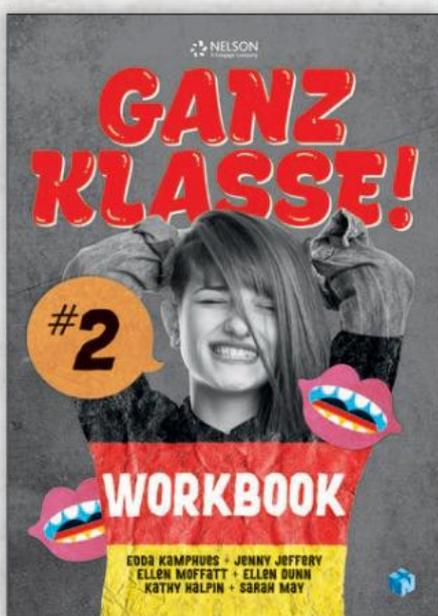
## *Ganz Klasse! 1 and 2, 1st edition*

*Ganz Klasse! 1 and 2* has been written to fully address the requirements of the Australian Curriculum: German. The series is intended for level 1 (Years 7–8) and level 2 (Years 9–10) beginners.

Combining a well-paced communicative approach with a focus on intercultural pedagogy, students will be able to build their language skills with confidence while developing their intercultural competence.

### Student Book

The Student Book for each level is clearly structured, and allows for meaningful and fun language and culture learning, reflecting and comparing. It provides a variety of tasks and texts, which develop and consolidate both productive and receptive skills, interwoven with many opportunities for the development of general capabilities and cross-curriculum priorities. It includes lively cartoon spreads, photos, reading passages and multiple occasions for intercultural reflection.



### Workbook

The Workbook offers a wealth of reinforcing exercises, drills and tasks to consolidate and revise the language and culture encountered in the Student Book. Audio tracks are provided on the student website to complete the listening exercises.



## Teacher Toolkit

The Teacher Toolkit includes:

- unit overview grids that assist with lesson planning and highlight the links between the series components
- teaching notes on how to use the course materials and extension tasks, games and worksheets
- unit tests and answers
- Workbook answers and audio transcripts.



## NelsonNetBook

The NelsonNetBook is an online version of the Student Book, with interactive links. It can be personalised by adding notes, weblinks and audio recordings, and can be used to share comments in class. There are also 'hot spots' that provide access to a variety of multimedia resources.

## Ganz Klasse! website on NelsonNet

NelsonNet is your portal to a wealth of additional resources for students and teachers. Each level of *Ganz Klasse!* offers a student website and a teacher website.

The student website includes:

- selected audio tracks from the Student Book
- worksheets for additional practice
- grammar videos
- unit quizzes.

The teacher website includes all the material from the student website, plus:

- curriculum grids and teaching plans to help you with lesson planning
- Workbook answers
- unit tests with answers
- audio transcripts.

# Contents

Hier sind wir wieder!	iii
About the series	iv
How to use this book	x

THEMA 1	THEMA 2	THEMA 3
<b>Darf ich ...?</b>	<b>Der Wochenendausflug</b>	<b>Macht Sport!</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>32</b>
		
<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The German town of Hannoversch Münden</li> <li>• Popular travel destinations in Germany</li> <li>• Friedensreich Hundertwasser</li> </ul>	<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restaurant etiquette in German-speaking countries</li> <li>• Popular fast foods</li> </ul>	<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The role of sport in German culture and everyday life</li> <li>• Favourite sports (including <i>Handball</i>, <i>Extremsport</i>, foreign sports, winter sports)</li> </ul>
<p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asking for and giving permission</li> <li>• Persuading people</li> </ul>	<p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ordering and paying for a meal</li> <li>• Comparing things</li> </ul>	<p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about sport, especially soccer</li> <li>• Naming player positions in soccer and some other sports</li> </ul>
<p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Modal verbs</li> <li>• Separable verbs</li> <li>• Verbs: <i>sprechen</i> and <i>wissen</i></li> <li>• Coordinating conjunctions: <i>denn</i>, <i>aber</i>, <i>oder</i>, <i>sondern</i>, <i>und</i></li> </ul>	<p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comparative and superlative forms</li> <li>• Accusative case: direct object, accusative prepositions</li> <li>• Verb: <i>nehmen</i></li> </ul>	<p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Imperative mood</li> </ul>

THEMA 4	THEMA 5	THEMA 6
<p><b>Gesundheit!</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>46</b></p>	<p><b>Das bisschen Haushalt ...</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>60</b></p>	<p><b>Einkaufen bis zum Umfallen</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>74</b></p>
		
<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Health and wellbeing, including spa culture and Nordic walking</li> <li>• <i>Apotheke</i> and <i>Drogerie</i></li> </ul> <p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saying you are feeling ill</li> <li>• Describing symptoms</li> <li>• Naming parts of the body</li> <li>• Describing daily routines</li> </ul> <p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Verb: <i>wehtun</i> (<i>das tut weh</i>)</li> <li>• Reflexive verbs: <i>sich duschen</i>, <i>sich anziehen</i></li> <li>• Accusative and dative reflexive pronouns: <i>mich/mir</i></li> </ul>	<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Well-known German, Swiss and Austrian appliances and products</li> <li>• Housing and living arrangements in German-speaking countries</li> </ul> <p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about household chores</li> <li>• Talking about different rooms in a house</li> <li>• Expressing dismay</li> <li>• Expressing compromise</li> </ul> <p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Revision: regular (weak) and irregular (strong) verbs</li> <li>• Perfect tense of regular and irregular verbs</li> <li>• Perfect tense of separable verbs</li> </ul>	<p><b>INFOS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shopping – department stores (<i>Kaufhof</i>, <i>Loeb</i> ...), supermarkets (<i>Aldi</i>, <i>Lidl</i> ...), small shops (<i>Bioläden</i>, <i>Bäckereien</i> ...), online</li> <li>• Opening hours, payment, clothing sizes</li> </ul> <p><b>KOMMUNIKATION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about going shopping</li> <li>• Talking about different parts of a department store and what you would find there</li> <li>• Talking about clothes and trying them on</li> </ul> <p><b>GRAMMATIK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Direct object (accusative) pronouns</li> <li>• Perfect tense (past participle prefixes)</li> </ul>



## THEMA 7

### In Australien

94



#### INFOS

- The German school system
- Types of schools in Germany

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Talking about what you are allowed or not allowed to do as a teenager in Germany
- Describing people and things
- Numbers from 100 to one million

#### GRAMMATIK

- Adjective endings in nominative, accusative and dative
- Dative pronouns
- Prepositions + dative: *aus, außer, bei, gegenüber, mit, nach, seit, von, zu*
- Contractions: *beim, zum, zur, vom*
- Verbs + dative: *gefallen, stehen, passen*
- *Man* (revision)

## THEMA 8

### Die Ferien

110



#### INFOS

- German-speaking tourists and migrants in Australia and New Zealand
- Student exchange programs and au pairs

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Talking about holiday destinations and activities
- Spelling reform

#### GRAMMATIK

- Revision: prepositions with accusative and dative
- Perfect tense with *sein* and verbs of movement

## THEMA 9

### Berliner Luft

124



#### INFOS

- Berlin: history and sights (*Reichstag, Brandenburger Tor, die Mauer ...*)
- Potsdam and *Schloss Sanssouci*
- East and West Germany (DDR and BDR) before reunification
- Pedestrian zones

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Saying where places are located
- Giving and understanding directions
- Talking about places in town and how to get around
- Arranging to meet someone at a particular location

#### GRAMMATIK

- Two-way prepositions (accusative or dative): *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen*
- Contractions: *ins, ans, übers, vors, im, am*

**THEMA 10****Zurück zur Natur****138****INFOS**

- Caring for the environment (rubbish disposal, recycling, *Der Grüne Punkt*)
- Nuclear power (*Atomkraft*) and nuclear waste
- Ecotourism

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Talking about different modes of transport
- Talking about how to care for the environment
- Expressing comparisons using a variety of adjectives

**GRAMMATIK**

- Revision: comparative and superlative
- *immer* + adjective
- Subordinating conjunctions *weil, dass, obwohl, wenn, als, bevor, ob* + perfect tense (verb position)

**THEMA 11****Party ohne Ende?****152****INFOS**

- Technology and social media
- Bloggers, vloggers and influencers
- Youth culture in Germany

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Negotiating with parents
- Talking about going out
- Talking about leisure time activities

**GRAMMATIK**

- Revision: nominative, accusative, dative (articles, pronouns, direct and indirect objects, prepositions, verbs)
- Verbs + dative: *gefallen, passen, erlauben, stehen, vertrauen*

**THEMA 12****Jobs, Jobs, Jobs****166****INFOS**

- Holiday and part-time jobs
- Apprenticeships and formal training
- Minimum wage
- Gender in occupations

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Talking about where you work, how often and what you earn
- Talking about apprenticeships
- Talking about careers

**GRAMMATIK**

- Imperfect tense (usage, formation)
- Revision: *möchten*

**KLASSE KULTUR 2:  
EINWANDERER**
**180**

Deutsch–Englisch Wortschatz 186  
 Englisch–Deutsch Wortschatz 204  
 Starke Verben 223

# How to use this book

## Unit introduction

The opening spread gives you a visual introduction to the unit, with lots of images and captions to prompt intercultural discussion. Looking at culturally rich and authentic photographs, you and your classmates will be able to notice and reflect on different aspects of German culture.



## Infos

Here you will learn more about the cultural aspects presented in the unit and take on a *Projekt* that will enable you to research these themes further. You will also learn new vocabulary to help broaden your conversations.



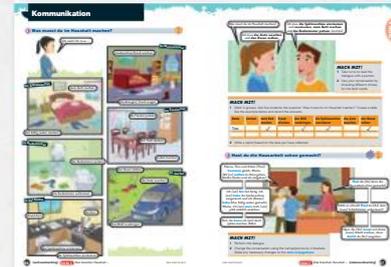
## Cartoon story

Each story follows the adventures of our characters in and around Göttingen, Germany and abroad. The cartoons will introduce you to new words and expressions in a fun and engaging way. It won't be long before you are able to master the key structures.



## Kommunikation

This is where you start looking at how the German language works. You will learn about the different functions of specific structures and what expressions to use.



## Deutsch und Englisch

Begin to learn about German grammar rules by translating and comparing with English grammar rules. Learn interesting facts about your own language while learning a new one!



## Leseseite

In this section you will be presented with different text types, such as emails, blogs, advertisements and postcards, to help you practise your reading.



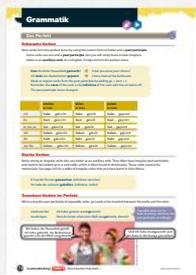
## Sprache und Kultur

Here you will complete activities to further explore the cultural and intercultural themes presented in the unit, learning some additional vocabulary along the way.



## Grammatik

This is where you get an overview of the grammar and language in the unit, with lots of examples and helpful explanations. The focus of this section is on the building blocks of language that form the basis for the functions you have seen in *Kommunikation*.



## Auf einen Blick

*Auf einen Blick* means 'at a glance'. These sections list the essential new words and expressions you have learnt in each unit.



## Activities

Throughout the unit you will have the opportunity to engage in different activities and tasks, putting into practice the language you are learning.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In these tasks you are asked to discuss a variety of questions about German culture and language with your classmates and teacher.

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

Through these tasks you will practise your reading skills, looking for a range of information in a variety of texts.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Through these tasks you will be reflecting on how the German and English languages work through translating. You will soon become an expert at mediating between two codes and cultures.

## MACH MIT!

This means 'Join in!'. In these sections you will use role plays, surveys, pairwork and group discussions to practise German in real-life situations.

## Klasse Kultur

At the end of every six units you will have the chance to go deeper into German culture and learn more about it while engaging in fun and creative activities.



## Icons

Throughout your Student Book you will find the following icons. Most icons signal extra resources on the student website. In the NelsonNetBook, you can click on the icon to open the resource.



'animated' version of the cartoon story



quiz



audio recording



grammar video clips



play 'n' say (Listen to the text, record yourself saying the words and then listen to your recording.)



worksheet

# Darf ich ...?

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ ask for and give permission
- ✓ persuade people
- ✓ use modal verbs
- ✓ use separable verbs
- ✓ use coordinating conjunctions
- ✓ use the verbs *wissen* and *sprechen*.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ the travel habits of students in German-speaking countries
- ✓ the town of Hannoversch Münden
- ✓ other places of interest in German-speaking countries
- ✓ the artist Friedensreich Hundertwasser
- ✓ the different pronunciations of certain consonants in German compared to English.

It is not uncommon for students in German-speaking countries to be independent travellers. Many travel on class trips around Europe from an early age. Schools take advantage of the relatively short distances to much-loved destinations such as Prague, the Alps, Paris or London by offering trips, either during the school year or during the holidays. Often these trips are connected to particular subjects – an English class might travel to London, while a history class might visit Rome. Some trips are not tied to specific subjects and can be taken by any student at any age (usually in high school). This could mean a group of students aged 11 to 19 travels to Innsbruck (Austria) on a skiing outing for a couple of weeks, or to Lake Balaton (Hungary) for a beach holiday – without parents (but under the watchful eyes of teachers, of course)!

Not all trips are organised by schools. It is common for school students to go away for a weekend, either in the local area or maybe across an international border. Good, affordable public transport across Europe makes this quite a popular experience.

See where these people are going. Can you find out what and where the places are? What else can you find out about them?

Alamy Stock Photo/Jeffer Isaac Greenberg 3



Gruezi! Wo geht's denn hin?

Das ist meine Portugiesischklasse.  
Wir fliegen mit der Schule für  
eine Woche nach Lissabon.

Hi! Ich fahre am Wochenende nach Wien. Ich will das Hundertwasserhaus dort sehen.



Tag!

Grüß dich! Fährst du auch nach Sylt?



Ja, meine Tante wohnt dort.

Gut, dann geht's los! Freut ihr euch schon auf Pompeji?



Tschüs, Mama!



Viel Spaß am Bodensee, Sophie!

Dreamstime.com/Monkey Business Images

Guten Abend! Willkommen im schönen Schwarzwald. Ich bin sicher, Ihr Wochenende hier in Freiburg wird Ihnen gut gefallen.



Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance archive

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you think all these travellers have something in common? Explain your thoughts.
- Why do you think people in German-speaking countries are such avid travellers?
- Do you think there is a difference in how students in German-speaking countries travel compared to students in your country? Why do you think that is?
- Can you give examples of popular travel destinations for people from your region? What makes these places attractive destinations?
- If you could go anywhere in the world, where would you go? What makes you say that?

## HANNOVERSCH MÜNDE

Shutterstock.com/Marc Venema



The town of Hannoversch Münden (known as Hann. Münden) is located near Göttingen in the state of Niedersachsen (see the map of Germany on the inside front cover). It lies in a triangle of rivers (Weser, Werra and Fulda) and is famous for its traditional buildings, *Fachwerkhäuser*, and its colourful history. Hann. Münden has about 700 different *Fachwerkhäuser* from six different centuries, as well as the remains of a castle and a city wall.

Its location near three major rivers meant that Hann. Münden was an important centre for trade. As a sign of the town's importance, it was given its own coat of arms. See if you can find a picture of it on the Internet!

## BELIEBTE REISEZIELE IN DEUTSCHLAND

Beaches and beach life aren't usually associated with Germany. However, Germany has much more to offer than its famous mountains and castles.

Alamy Stock Photo/dipa picture alliance



Die Insel Baltrum

### INSELN

If you look at the map on the inside front cover, you will see a line of seven small islands in the North Sea, close to the mainland and the border with the Netherlands. The largest of these islands is Borkum; the smallest is Baltrum. Most of these islands are car-free and only emergency services are permitted to drive there.

Further north is possibly the most unusual German island – Helgoland. It is located 70 kilometres off the coast, which means the boat trip from the mainland can sometimes be very rough. But if you are not a fan of high waves and rough waters, you can fly there! This red sandstone island is a favourite holiday destination due to its unique landscape and mild climate. People suffering from respiratory illnesses will especially find relief on Helgoland thanks to its pollution-free air and water.

Close to Denmark lies Sylt – arguably Germany's most popular island. Surrounded by the smaller islands of Föhr and Amrum, it lies on the same latitude as the southernmost part of Alaska and parts of Siberia. However, the climate is relatively mild and sunny, even though it can be very windy at times. Sylt's main town is Westerland, a fashionable and expensive place where many German celebrities spend their holidays.

These islands are all about health and relaxation, and many families spend their summer holidays on the same island every year. Families usually rent a *Ferienwohnung*, or holiday house. Owning a holiday house is not as common in Germany as it is in Australia or New Zealand.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why are some of the islands car-free? How do people move around these islands? Rank the forms of transport according to convenience or comfort, and explain your reasoning.

Alamy Stock Photo/Look



Friedrichstraße im Westerland

*Strandkörbe*, or beach baskets, are a common sight on German beaches. They come in three varieties: *Sitzkorb* (to sit in), *Leicht-Liegekorb* (the top half tilts back) and *Liegekorb* (to lie in). People hire them for about 15 euros per day. Under the seat of a *Strandkorb*, there are often drawers, where people put their towels, food and other items they need at the beach.



Stock.com/flyszard Filipowicz

Shutterstock.com/tricok



The *Kreidefelsen*, or chalk cliffs, of Rügen give the water a beautiful turquoise appearance.

The islands further to the east, in the Baltic Sea, are also popular holiday destinations. Three of these islands are particularly famous: Fehmarn, Usedom and Rügen. These islands are much larger than the North Sea islands and are connected to the mainland by bridges.

**SEEN**

There are also many lakes in Germany. On a hot summer's day, many people pack their bathers and a picnic basket and head to the nearest lake, instead of going to the local swimming pool. Probably the most famous German lake is *der Bodensee*, or Lake Constance. It is located on the border between Germany, Austria and Switzerland. It is also the second-largest freshwater lake in central Europe and more than 4.5 million people in three countries rely on it for their drinking water.



Der Bodensee

Shutterstock.com/  
Sergey Dzhyuba

**FLÜSSE**

One of the major German rivers is the Rhine (*der Rhein*). It begins in the Swiss Alps and runs more than 1320 kilometres until it splits into many smaller streams and flows into the North Sea in a vast river delta. Many smaller canals connect it to large parts of Europe and several hydroelectric power stations rely on it for their water supply. The most picturesque part of the Rhine is the *Mittelrhein*, between Bingen and Koblenz, in the centre of Germany, where, over millions of years, the river has cut a deep valley into the surrounding hills and created the perfect location for castles and vineyards.



Der Rhein

Alamy Stock Photo/robertharding

**FRIEDENSREICH HUNDERTWASSER**

The artist Friedrich Stowasser, better known as Friedensreich Hundertwasser, was born in Austria in 1928. He moved to New Zealand in the 1970s and lived there until his death in 2000. He is most famous for his unusual architectural designs, such as the *Hundertwasserhaus*, an apartment building in Vienna, and the *Hundertwasser Toilets* in New Zealand. Yes, he designed a public toilet block for the northern New Zealand town of Kawakawa, and it can still be found at 60 Gillies Street!



Hundertwasserhaus, Vienna

Alamy Stock Photo/Lucas Vallecillos

Did you know that Hundertwasser also designed a proposed new flag for New Zealand in 1983, as well as one for Australia in 1986? What does Hundertwasser symbolise in these flags? Research them to find out.

**PROJEKTE**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into one of the following.

**PROJEKT 1 Hann. Münden**

- Find some more information on Hann. Münden. What would you like to do there? Why?
- Look at a map of Göttingen and its surroundings. Where else in that area could you go for the weekend? How would you get there? What interests you most about that place?
- Where else in German-speaking countries can you find *Fachwerkhäuser*?

**PROJEKT 3 Friedensreich Hundertwasser**

- What else can you find out about Friedensreich Hundertwasser?
- Based on his designs, what type of person would he have been? Why do you think that?
- Would you like to visit one of Hundertwasser's buildings? Why?

**PROJEKT 2 Beliebte Reiseziele**

- Which German island would you like to visit? Why?
- How do *Strandkörbe* differ from the types of shelters often found on beaches in your country? Make a list in English of the items you would put in the drawers underneath your preferred *Strandkorb*, then find the German translations. Don't forget the *der*, *die*, *das*!
- What are the main rivers that run through Germany? Which river in Germany would you like to visit? Why? Which one sounds the most fun for travel by boat? Explain.
- What other interesting locations can you find in the German-speaking countries (outside Germany)? What would you do there?



Sibel



Ahmet



Sibels Vater

## Ahmets Zimmer: Sibel spricht mit Ahmet



**Sibel** Ahmet, ich muss mit dir sprechen.

**Ahmet** Ja, was ist denn?

**Sibel** Meine Freundinnen fahren am Wochenende weg, denn Julias Oma hat ein Haus in Hann. Münden und wir dürfen dort übernachten.

**Ahmet** Was meint Papa dazu?

**Sibel** Er weiß es noch nicht. Kannst du mit Papa sprechen? Ich will unbedingt mitfahren.

**Ahmet** Du bist doch kein kleines Kind mehr. Du sollst selbst mit Papa sprechen.

**Sibel** Aber Ahmet ... er ist so streng!

**Ahmet** Nein, das musst du schon selbst machen.

## Im Wohnzimmer



**Sibel** Du siehst müde aus, Papa. Möchtest du einen Tee?

**Sibels Vater** Nein, danke.

**Sibel** Ich muss dich etwas fragen. Am Wochenende fahren meine Freundinnen nach Hann. Münden, denn dort wohnt Julias Oma. Darf ich bitte mitfahren? In zwei Wochen haben wir Prüfungen und wir wollen zusammen lernen.

**Sibels Vater** Wann wollt ihr abfahren?

**Sibel** Am Samstagmorgen. Und wir kommen am Sonntagabend zurück.

**Sibels Vater** Hmm ... ich weiß nicht. Warum könnt ihr nicht zu Hause lernen?

**Sibel** Wir wollen doch in Ruhe lernen.



**Sibels Vater** Na gut, du darfst mitfahren, aber Ahmet muss dich am Samstagabend abholen.

**Sibel** Aber Papa, am Samstag spielt er Fußball und dann will er mit seinen Freunden ausgehen.

**Sibels Vater** Ahmet kann dich nicht abholen? Dann musst du eben hier bleiben und deiner Mutter am Wochenende im Haus helfen.

**Sibel** Aber Tante Yildiz kommt auf Besuch ... Bitte, Papa, Julias Mutter kann mich doch am Sonntagabend abholen! Ich will gute Noten bekommen.



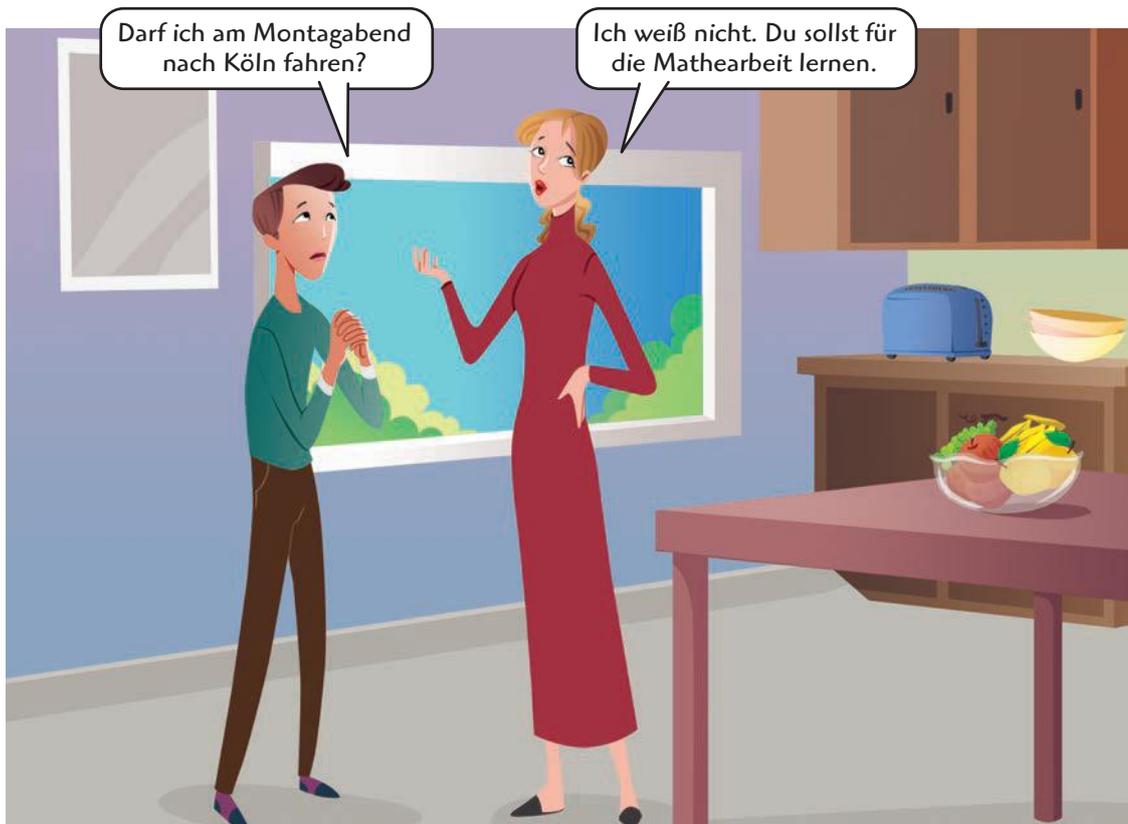
### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Where do the friends want to go on the weekend?
- 2 What does Sibel ask Ahmet? Why?
- 3 Who is coming to visit Sibel's family on the weekend?
- 4 Why can't Ahmet pick Sibel up?
- 5 Do you think the friends really want to study on the weekend? Why do you think that?

## 1 Asking for permission and getting a response



Darf ich Kann ich	am Montagmorgen am Dienstagnachmittag am Mittwochabend am Wochenende	bei Anna übernachten? mit Max Tennis spielen? ins Kino gehen? mit Christian ausgehen? zu Julias Party gehen? einkaufen gehen? mitfahren? wegfahren? nach Hann. Münden fahren? zurückkommen?
Nein! Ich weiß nicht.	Du musst Du sollst	im Haus helfen. Mama helfen. Hausaufgaben machen. hier bleiben. für die Prüfung lernen.



### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out versions of this conversation with a partner. After the first turn, change the content to one of the choices in the **table** above and change the reply to one of the choices in the **table** above. Make sure you always say what you're asking permission for and why it is denied. You can change the bold words to other suitable options.

## 2 Persuading someone



Aber bitte, Papa!	Ich möchte Ich will	unbedingt <b>mitfahren</b> . nach <b>Hann. Münden</b> fahren. mit meinen Freunden wegfahren. <b>mitmachen</b> . gute Noten bekommen.
Ich kann	<b>morgen</b> <b>nächste Woche</b> <b>am Dienstagmorgen</b> <b>am Mittwochnachmittag</b> <b>am Donnerstagabend</b> <b>am Wochenende</b>	im Haus helfen. <b>Mama</b> helfen. <b>Hausaufgaben</b> machen. hier bleiben. für die <b>Prüfung</b> lernen.

Na gut!  
Du darfst mitmachen!  
O.K.!  
Alles klar!

### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out versions of this conversation with a partner.

Aber bitte, Mama! Ich will unbedingt nach Köln fahren.  
Ich kann am Dienstagabend für die Mathearbeit lernen.

Na gut.



## 3 Asking for permission and persuading someone



Kann ich morgen zu Mias Geburtstagsparty gehen?

Du musst Oma im Garten helfen.

Aber, bitte, Papa! Ich will unbedingt hingehen. Ich kann heute Oma im Garten helfen.

O.K.



### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out versions of this conversation with a partner. Make sure you always say what you want to do, why you want to do it and receive an initial objection before persuading your partner.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Am **Montagsmorgen** gehen wir alle in den Park.

**Heute Morgen** regnet es.

Am **Samstagnachmittag** hat Ingo eine Party.

Warst du **gestern Nachmittag** im Kino?

Ich spiele am **Dienstagabend** immer Handball.

Wir möchten **heute Abend** nicht weggehen.

Can you see a pattern here? If so, what do you think the rule is? Is it similar in English?

What about the sentences below? Do you see what the rule is here?



Ich kann Tante Kara **morgen** im Supermarkt helfen.



Was für ein schöner **Morgen**.  
Die Sonne scheint.

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

- 1 Translate the following sentences into English.
  - a Heute Abend fahren die Freunde zu einem Konzert.
  - b Frau Steiner war gestern Abend nicht zu Hause.
- 2 Do you notice a difference between the German expression of time and the English equivalent? Can you see a pattern?

## What's different about German?

### J

When adopted into German, English words that start with 'j' are pronounced 'dj', the same as in English. All other 'j' words in German are pronounced like the English 'y'. Check out the following examples.

der **Job** but der **Junge**  
die **Jeans** but das **Jahr**

### ch

English speakers often encounter difficulties pronouncing the German *ch*, incorrectly pronouncing it as 'k'. The pronunciation of *ch* as 'k' does exist, but only in dialects and when referring to countries (e.g. the pronunciation of *China* as 'Kina' is acceptable and a matter of personal choice). However, for the vast majority of words containing the consonant combination *ch*, there are only two ways of pronouncing it correctly and it depends entirely on the vowel it follows. When the preceding vowel is a high one (*i* or *e*), the *ch* is pronounced high up in the throat. This occurs when the back of the tongue is pressed up high against the back part of the hard palate in a speaker's upper jaw.

ich  
mich  
Gesicht  
nicht

When the preceding vowel is a low one (*a, o, u*), the *ch* is pronounced low in the throat by opening the mouth wider and pressing the back part of the tongue against the uvula (the small bit of soft tissue that hangs down at the back of your throat).

ach  
noch  
gemacht  
Woche

Practise with the following words.

Mittwoch	Buch
doch	echt
mitmachen	Loch
leicht	richtig
sich	suchen

### f/v/w and z/s

The different pronunciation of the German *f/v/w* and *z/s* can also cause difficulties for English native speakers. In German, 'f' and 'v' are largely interchangeable in words of German origin. This is not the case in English, where 'f' is a voiceless consonant and 'v' is voiced, meaning it is more audible and somewhat softer. Check out the following examples.

English: future, veil, fan, van  
German: fahren, von, Fernseher, Vogel

A similar difference exists between the English and German ways of pronouncing 'w'. Unlike in English, where 'w' is formed by rounding the lips, the German 'w' corresponds more to the English 'v', and is formed with the upper teeth on the bottom lip.

English: water, weather, wonder  
German: Wasser, Wetter, Wunder

The German pronunciation of *z/s* is the opposite of the English pronunciation. In English, 'z' is a softer voiced consonant, while 's' can be voiced or voiceless. In German, 's' is always voiced at the start of words, sounding like an English 'z'; however, this is not the case in the middle of words. Compare the pronunciation of *Sommer* and *Wasser*. The German 'z' is more pronounced, like 'ts'. Here are some examples.

English: Susan, summer, season / zenith, zone, zealous  
German: Sommer, Sonne, sagen / Zentrum, Zone, Zähne

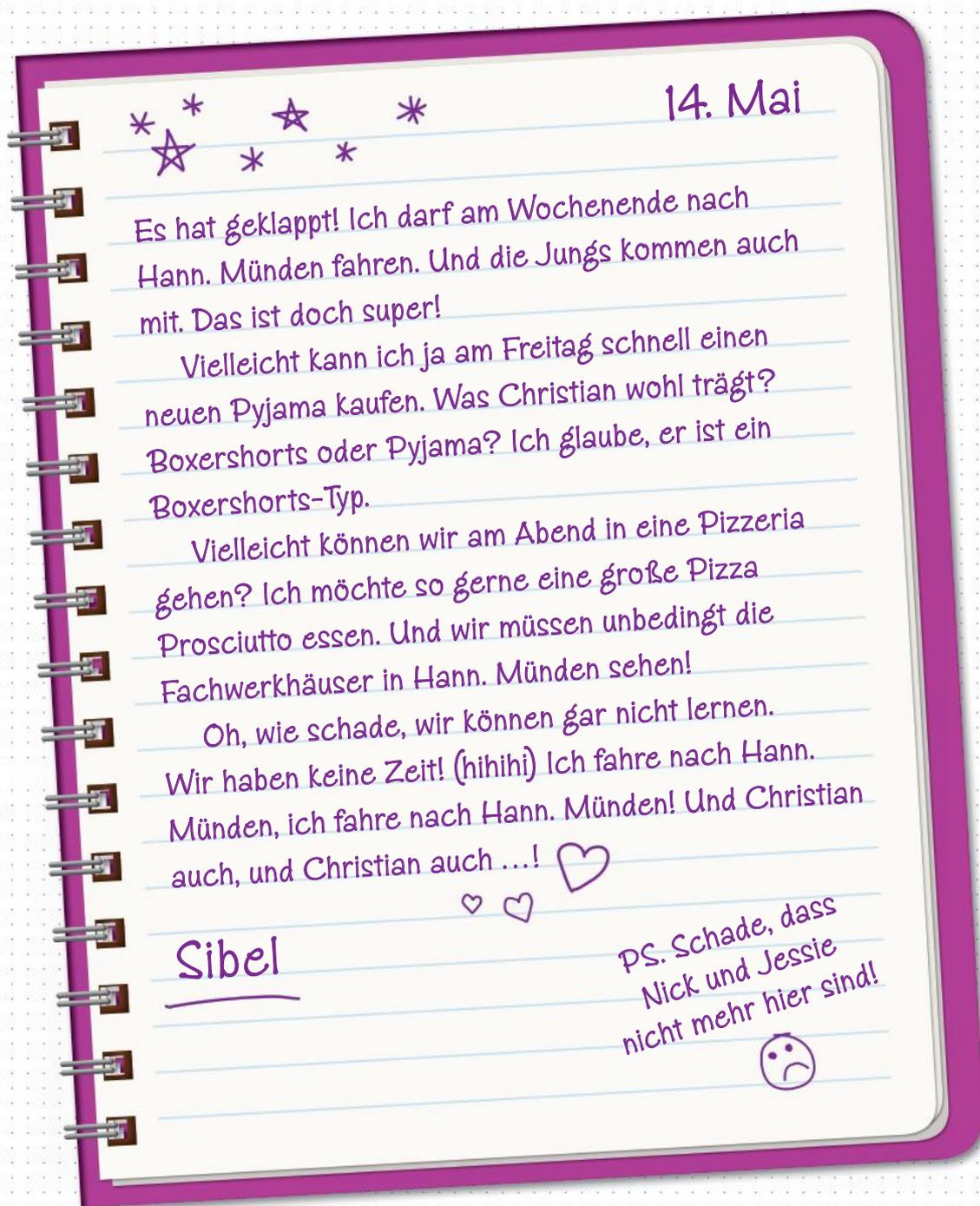
Now practise with the following words, noting the pronunciation of the starting letter.

#### English

zebra  
watch  
window  
fantastic  
vulture  
September  
sunny  
zen  
variety  
when

#### German

Zebra  
Wache  
Wand  
Fenster  
viel  
September  
sonnig  
Zug  
vorbei  
Wahnsinn



\* \* \* \* \* 14. Mai

Es hat geklappt! Ich darf am Wochenende nach Hann. Münden fahren. Und die Jungs kommen auch mit. Das ist doch super!

Vielleicht kann ich ja am Freitag schnell einen neuen Pyjama kaufen. Was Christian wohl trägt? Boxershorts oder Pyjama? Ich glaube, er ist ein Boxershorts-Typ.

Vielleicht können wir am Abend in eine Pizzeria gehen? Ich möchte so gerne eine große Pizza Prosciutto essen. Und wir müssen unbedingt die Fachwerkhäuser in Hann. Münden sehen!

Oh, wie schade, wir können gar nicht lernen. Wir haben keine Zeit! (hihihi) Ich fahre nach Hann. Münden, ich fahre nach Hann. Münden! Und Christian auch, und Christian auch ...!

Sibel

PS. Schade, dass Nick und Jessie nicht mehr hier sind!



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Sibel darf nicht nach Hann. Münden fahren.
- 2 Die Jungs fahren auch am Wochenende nach Hann. Münden.
- 3 Sibel freut sich auf Christian.
- 4 Die Freunde wollen in ein Restaurant gehen.
- 5 Die Freunde wollen in Hann. Münden lernen.
- 6 Sibel vermisst Nick und Jessie.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How can you tell that Sibel is excited about the weekend?
- What is Sibel wondering about Christian? What makes you think that?
- What are the exact plans for the weekend?
- Why do you think Sibel writes 'hihihi' in her diary?
- Do you think Sibel's dad would be happy reading this entry? Why do you think that?

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

You no doubt already know that English and German are closely related languages. They borrow from each other and influence each other. Look at the sentences in the speech bubbles below.

- 1 Can you see a pattern in the verbs? Is the pattern restricted to verbs?
- 2 Why do you think German speakers do this?
- 3 Find out if there are other ways to convey the same meaning.
- 4 Is there a comparable pattern of use of foreign words in the English language?

Haben Jack und Lachie euch schon gemailt?



Shutterstock.com/Norman Poston

Hey, Marion, ich texte dir heute Mittag.



Shutterstock.com/Antonio Guillem

Kommt Leute! Wir gehen shoppen.



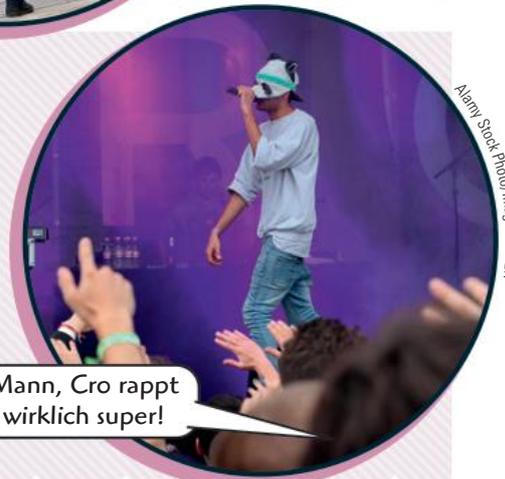
Alamy Stock Photo/Colin Urz Photography

Wahnsinn! 312 Kontakte liken mein Update.



iStock.com/ishancharge

Mann, Cro rappt wirklich super!



Alamy Stock Photo/imagabrocker

Wow, cooles Auto! Muss teuer sein.

Ach nein, ich lease ja nur.



Shutterstock.com/Nadon\_1987

Jetzt chill doch mal, Evie!



Alamy Stock Photo/David J. Green - Lifestyle

Roughly 10 per cent of all German words are derived from English. These words are called 'anglicisms' or *Denglisch* (*DE*utsch + *e*NGLISCH). Anglicisms can especially be found in everyday, informal speech, especially among young people, and in terms relating to social media. Here are some of the more common ones.

	<b>hi</b> das Fastfood <b>der Hamburger</b> der Cheeseburger	<b>funny</b> <b>shoppen</b> <b>der Lifestyle</b> das Marketing sexy	
	<b>hot</b> das Meeting das Call Center das Shopping Center	der Style <b>relaxen</b> das Dinner die Party	
	das Business die Shorts die Happy Hour das Catering	der Airbag der Laptop liken das Internet	

When some English verbs are adopted into German, they are conjugated by adding German regular-verb endings to the English stem. Nouns are usually capitalised and given a gender (which can be quite random, often determined by majority usage or based on the existing patterns for German gender endings). For example, *der Computer* is masculine because *-er* endings in German take *der*.

As words are absorbed by another language, other changes can also occur, such as different spellings ('centre' to *Center*; 'the photoshoot' to *das Fotoshooting*) or even changes in meaning.

Find out what the following terms mean in both languages.

**English**

- handy
- public viewing
- peeling
- to check
- Beamer
- smoking
- city
- to tramp
- oldtimer

**German**

- das Handy
- das Public Viewing
- das Peeling
- checken
- der Beamer
- der Smoking
- die City
- trampen
- der Oldtimer

Words such as these are called 'false friends': terms that look like English words, but have a completely different meaning in German.

This process, however, is not a one-way street. Many German words have also been adopted into English, and have changed meaning along the way. Can you think of any? Compile a list of as many German words used in the English language as you can. How many can you find? What are their original (German) and changed (English) meanings? Can you depict 'false friends' visually, demonstrating the difference in their meanings?



## 1 Modalverben

As you learnt in *Ganz Klasse 1*, **modal verbs** are usually accompanied by another (action) verb in the **infinitive**, while the conjugated modal verb takes second position in a sentence. Whatever goes in first position, subject or otherwise, the conjugated verb will still be second, and the infinitive must go to the end of the sentence. It is, however, sometimes possible that modal verbs are not accompanied by another verb, when the implied meaning is clear from the context. Such is the case in sentences like these.

**Darf** ich?      May I?  
**Musst** du?      Do you need to go (to the toilet)?  
 Ihr **könnt** das!      You can do this!

	<b>sollen</b> (should, ought to)	<b>müssen</b> (must, to have to)	<b>dürfen</b> (may, to be allowed to)	<b>können</b> (can, to be able to)	<b>mögen</b> (to like)	<b>wollen</b> (to want)
ich	soll	muss	darf	kann	mag	will
du	sollst	musst	darfst	kannst	magst	willst
er, sie, es	soll	muss	darf	kann	mag	will
wir	sollen	müssen	dürfen	können	mögen	wollen
ihr	sollt	müsst	dürft	könnt	mögt	wollt
sie, Sie	sollen	müssen	dürfen	können	mögen	wollen

Du **sollst** nicht so viel Schokolade **essen**.  
 Wir **dürfen** nach Sydney **fahren**.  
 Tessa **kann** am Wochenende nicht Tennis **spielen**.

### ACHTUNG!

**ich mag** (I like)  
 but: **ich möchte** (I would like to)

## 2 Trennbare Verben

As you learnt in *Ganz Klasse 1*, separable verbs consist of a **prefix**, a **stem** and an **ending**. When using a separable verb in any form other than the infinitive, the prefix is separated from the conjugated stem and goes to the end of the sentence.

**weg|fahren**      Ich **fahre** am Wochenende **weg**.  
 Ich **möchte** am Wochenende **wegfahren**.

**mit|kommen**      Wir **kommen** am Wochenende **mit**.  
 Wir **dürfen** am Wochenende **mitkommen**.

**mit|machen**      Du **machst** am Wochenende **mit**.  
 Du **kannst** am Wochenende **mitmachen**.

**zurück|kommen**      Wir **kommen** am Montag **zurück**.  
 Wir **müssen** am Montag **zurückkommen**.

**ab|holen**      Ahmet **holt** Sibel **ab**.  
 Ahmet **soll** Sibel **abholen**.

### 3 Verben

	sprechen (to speak, to talk)	wissen (to know)
ich	spreche	weiß
du	sprichst	weißt
er, sie, es	spricht	weiß
wir	sprechen	wissen
ihr	sprecht	wisst
sie, Sie	sprechen	wissen



Shutterstock.com/Antonio Guillem

### 4 Konjunktionen

*Denn, aber, oder, und* and *sondern* are **coordinating conjunctions** (*nebenordnende Konjunktionen*). Their purpose is to connect sentences or parts of sentences of 'equal' weighting. This means that each part can be a standalone sentence. Conjunctions never change form!

*Denn, aber, oder, und* and *sondern* are user-friendly conjunctions, because they don't influence the word order of the sentences they connect. Instead, they only replace the full stop between the two sentences.

**denn** = because, for    **aber** = but    **oder** = or    **und** = and    **sondern** = but rather

Wir fahren weg. Es ist schönes Wetter.	We are going away. It is good weather.
Wir fahren weg, <b>denn</b> es ist schönes Wetter.	We are going away, <b>because</b> it is good weather.
Du darfst mitfahren. Ahmet muss dich abholen.	You are allowed to go. Ahmet must pick you up.
Du darfst mitfahren, <b>aber</b> Ahmet muss dich abholen.	You are allowed to go, <b>but</b> Ahmet must pick you up.
Wir fahren mit dem Bus zurück. Wir fahren mit dem Auto zurück.	We are returning by bus. We are returning by car.
Wir fahren mit dem Bus zurück <b>oder</b> mit dem Auto.	We are returning by bus <b>or</b> by car.
Sie hat ein Haus. Wir dürfen dort übernachten.	She has a house. We are allowed to stay there overnight.
Sie hat ein Haus, <b>und</b> wir dürfen dort übernachten.	She has a house <b>and</b> we are allowed to stay there overnight.
Wir fahren nicht nach Hamburg. Wir fahren nach Hann. Münden.	We are not going to Hamburg. We are going to Hann. Münden.
Wir fahren nicht nach Hamburg, <b>sondern</b> wir fahren nach Hann. Münden.	We are not going to Hamburg, <b>but rather</b> we are going to Hann. Münden.
Wir fahren mit dem Bus <b>oder</b> mit dem Auto zurück.	
Sie hat ein Haus, <b>und</b> wir dürfen dort übernachten.	

There is always a comma before *denn*, *aber* and *sondern*. The comma before *und* and *oder* is optional. The comma is optional within rules (e.g. if it is a list, or if each phrase has the same grammatical subject). If each phrase has a different grammatical subject, as in the *und* example, a comma is used.



## Times of the day

der Abend (e)	evening
der Morgen (-)	morning
der Nachmittag (e)	afternoon

## Nouns

der Besuch (e)	visit
der Pyjama (s)	pyjamas
die Note (n)	mark, grade
die Prüfung (en)	examination
das Haus ('er)	house
die Jungs	boys, guys (informal)

## Verbs

bleiben	to stay
erzählen	to tell, to narrate
lernen	to learn
sprechen	to speak, to talk
wissen	to know

## Modal verbs

dürfen	to be allowed to, may
können	to be able to, can
möchten	would like to
mögen	to like
müssen	to have to, must
sollen	ought to, should
wollen	to want to

## Separable verbs

abfahren	to depart
abholen	to pick up
ausgehen	to go out
aussehen	to look like
mitfahren	to go with, to drive with
mitkommen	to come with
mitmachen	to participate, to join in
übernachten	to stay overnight
wegfahren	to go away, to drive away
zurückkommen	to come back

## Expressions of time

am Dienstagmorgen	on Tuesday morning
am Donnerstagabend	on Thursday evening
am Mittwochnachmittag	on Wednesday afternoon
gestern Morgen	yesterday morning
heute Abend	tonight, this evening

## Coordinating conjunctions

aber	but
denn	because, for
oder	or
sondern	but rather
und	and

## Useful expressions

Alles klar!	That's fine!
Bitte!	Please!
eben	just
Er/Sie kommt auf Besuch.	He/She is coming for a visit.
Es hat geklappt!	It worked!
Ich weiß nicht.	I don't know.
in Ruhe	in peace
Na gut!	All right! OK then!
selbst	alone, self
unbedingt	absolutely
Was meint ... dazu?	What does ... think about that?

# Der Wochenendausflug

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ order and pay for a meal
- ✓ compare things
- ✓ use the comparative and superlative forms of *gern* and *gut*
- ✓ use the verb *nehmen*
- ✓ use prepositions with the accusative case.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ restaurant etiquette
- ✓ popular fast-food items.

Dining out in German-speaking countries is a popular pastime, as it is in Australia and New Zealand. There are many traditional and regional specialties in Germany, but there are also a variety of cuisines from the nationalities of the many people who now call Germany home. In the past, breakfast was traditionally a hearty meal of fresh breads with cheese and meat, but increasingly busy lifestyles have led to more young people in Germany choosing smaller options such as cereal and fruit. The weekend is the time for extended breakfasts with family and friends, either at home or at a café or restaurant.

Another tradition that has changed is that of the main daily meal. Traditionally, people ate the main meal at lunchtime, between 12 p.m. and 2 p.m., and it was a hearty, substantial meal that was served hot. In the evening, traditional *Abendbrot* was a cold meal of bread, cheese, meat and salads. Many families now enjoy a hot, substantial meal in the evening, and a lighter meal at lunchtime.

Fast food is also popular in German-speaking countries. The most common fast foods are from well-known international burger chains, but there are also more traditional choices, such as *Bratwurst*.

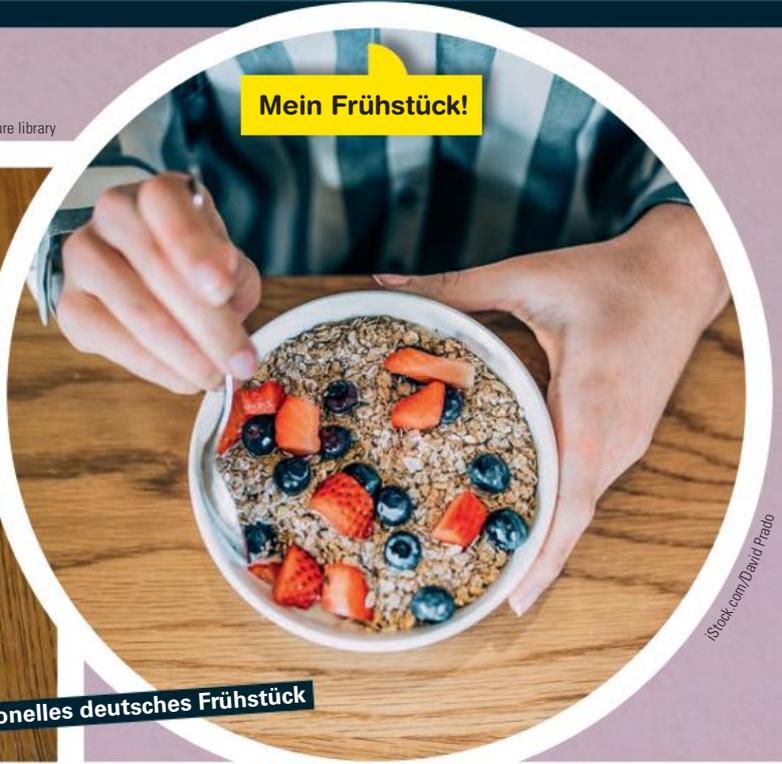
Alamy, Stock Photo/McPhoto/Weber



Wir essen gern Curry und Bratwurst!



Ein traditionelles deutsches Frühstück



Mein Frühstück!



Wir frühstücken auch im Café oder Restaurant!



Wir essen mittags gern Salat.



Mein Lieblingsfastfood!

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you and your family eat out? If so, how often?
- Discuss the pros and cons of eating out as opposed to having home-cooked meals.
- Does a traditional German breakfast appeal to you? Why or why not?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of having a larger meal at lunchtime?
- What do you think is the most important meal of the day and why?
- Does fast food have a place in our diets?

## IM DEUTSCHEN RESTAURANT

Restaurant etiquette in German-speaking countries can be a little different from what is customary in Australia and New Zealand. You may be waiting for a while if you expect to be seated in a German restaurant, because you usually find a table yourself. Expect some free water with your meal? Well, tap water is not automatically brought to your table. If you do request water, you may be given *Mineralwasser* (sparkling mineral water) or *stilles Wasser* (bottled still water), both with an associated cost. Asking for *Leitungswasser* (tap water) may be met with a look of disdain, as tap water is for bathing, not drinking!

Alamy Stock Photo/Roman Babakin



Die Deutschen essen gern draußen.

Mineralwasser und stilles Wasser kosten Geld!



Shutterstock.com/Evgeny Karandaev

Getty Images/Andersen Ross



Kreditkarte oder bar?

Alamy Stock Photo/National Geographic Image Collection



Hier treffen wir uns jeden Freitag!

In some small restaurants and bars you might see a table with a sign saying *Stammtisch* (regulars' table). This will be a table reserved for regulars from an organisation, club or other group who frequent the establishment to enjoy a friendly meeting.



Alamy Stock Photo/Look

**FASTFOOD IN DEUTSCHLAND**

Fast food is a popular choice among young people in German-speaking countries; burgers, fries and pizzas from chain outlets are favourite options. A note to travellers: condiments from these chain outlets are not always free! *Pommes rot-weiß* (French fries with tomato sauce and mayonnaise) and *Currywurst* (sliced sausage with a curry tomato sauce) are firm favourites, but the *Döner Kebab* is the fast-food meal of choice for many young people. Turkish immigrants first introduced this delicious snack to Germany in the 1970s.



**Döner Kebab schmeckt am besten!**



**Pommes rot-weiß und Currywurst schmecken lecker!**



**Manchmal muss man für uns bezahlen!**

iStock.com/Nikada

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance/Robert Schelsinger

Alamy Stock Photo/Jeffrey Isaac Greenberg 8

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Was darf man im deutschen Restaurant, was darf man nicht?**

Create a digital presentation or poster about restaurant etiquette in Germany. Use the modal verbs you learnt in *Thema 1*. Include 8–10 sentences about things you can, may, must or should do in a restaurant; for example: *Man muss für Wasser bezahlen*. You can also add pictures or illustrations. This could be part of a cultural project series that is displayed in the classroom, for example, a project about regional specialties.

**PROJEKT 2 Fastfood in Deutschland und Australien/Neuseeland**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into popular fast food in Germany. Include the following information.

- pictures of five fast-food items you can buy in Germany *and* in your home country
- a brief description in German of each item
- a sentence in German about whether you would like to try the German item or not (e.g. *Das will ich probieren! / Das will ich nicht probieren!*)
- a sentence in German explaining what your favourite fast food (or food you buy when you eat out) is and why it is your favourite (*Mein Lieblingsfastfood ist ...*)



Julia



Christian



Max



Sibel



Anna



Oma



Kellnerin

## Am Göttinger Hauptbahnhof



- Julia** Endlich! Da ist er ja!
- Christian** Warum kommst du so spät?
- Max** Ich habe mein Handy fast vergessen.
- Julia** Macht schnell oder der Zug fährt ohne uns ab! Warum hast du eigentlich so viel Gepäck? Wir bleiben doch nur zwei Tage.
- Sibel** Ich habe viele Snacks dabei.
- Anna** Schade, dass Nick nicht mehr hier ist.

## Bei Oma Heine



- Sibel** Ein altes Bauernhaus ... wie schön!
- Julia** Meine Oma wohnt seit vierzig Jahren in diesem Haus. Sie freut sich, dass wir kommen.
- Oma** Schön, dass ihr hier seid!
- Sibel** Guten Tag, Frau Heine!
- Oma** Ich habe Kaffee und Kuchen für euch.
- Max** Was machen wir eigentlich heute Abend?
- Julia** Es gibt eine Pizzeria gleich um die Ecke. Da haben sie die beste Pizza.
- Max** Super!

## Ein bisschen später in der Pizzeria



**Kellnerin** Guten Abend! Was darf es sein?

**Christian** Eine Pizza Margherita, bitte.

**Sibel** Und ich nehme eine Pizza Prosciutto.

**Max** Ich esse lieber Spaghetti Bolognese.

**Anna** Ich möchte eine vegetarische Pizza, bitte.

**Julia** Ich auch. Danke.

**Kellnerin** Und was möchten Sie trinken?

**Max** Für mich ein Malzbier, bitte.

**Julia** und **Anna** Wir nehmen zwei Apfelschorlen.

**Sibel** Für mich eine Limo, bitte.

**Christian** Und ich trinke eine Cola.

## Etwas später



**Kellnerin** Guten Appetit!

**Christian** Danke ... Hmm, die Pizza riecht aber lecker.

**Julia** Und wie schmeckt's?

**Max** Super!

**Julia** Zahlen, bitte!

**Kellnerin** Das macht €40,50.

**Julia** €42, stimmt so!

**Sibel** Oh mein Gott, Ahmet!

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

## Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Sibel hat nicht viel Gepäck dabei.
- 2 Max nimmt eine vegetarische Pizza.
- 3 Julia und Anna trinken ein Malzbier.
- 4 Das Essen kostet €50.
- 5 Sibel freut sich, dass Ahmet da ist.

## 1 Was darf es sein?



### SPEISEKARTE

SPEISEN		PREISE	GETRÄNKE		PREISE
<b>VORSPEISEN</b>			<b>KALTE GETRÄNKE</b>		
Gartensalat .....		€2,50	Cola .....		€1,20
Nudelsalat .....		€3,50	Limonade .....		€1,20
Tomatensuppe .....		€4,00	Mineralwasser .....		€1,50
Zwiebelsuppe .....		€4,00	Spezi (Cola + Limo) .....		€1,50
<b>HAUPTGERICHTE</b>			<b>WARME GETRÄNKE</b>		
Pizza Margherita .....		€5,50	Apfelsaft .....		€2,00
Pizza Prosciutto .....		€6,50	Orangensaft .....		€2,50
Vegetarische Pizza .....		€6,00	Bananensaft .....		€2,50
Pizza Napolitana .....		€6,00	Kirschsafte .....		€2,50
Spaghetti Bolognese .....		€7,00	Apfelschorle .....		€2,50
Spaghetti Carbonara .....		€7,50	Malzbier .....		€2,50
Spaghetti Pesto .....		€7,00	<b>WARME GETRÄNKE</b>		
Vegetarische Spaghetti .....		€6,50	Kaffee .....		€1,50
Wiener Schnitzel mit Pommes .....		€6,00	Schwarzer Tee .....		€1,50
Bratwurst mit Sauerkraut .....		€5,50	Früchtetee .....		€1,50
<b>NACHSPEISEN</b>			Heiße Schokolade .....		€2,00
Gemischtes Eis .....		€3,50	<b>GUTEN APPETIT!</b>		
Tiramisu .....		€4,00			
Mousse au Chocolat .....		€3,50			

### MACH MIT!

Are there any food and drinks on the menu above that are not common on a menu in Australia or New Zealand? What food and drinks served in cafés and restaurants in your local area are not on this menu? What style of cuisine would you classify them as?

## 2 Im Restaurant



## Dialog 1

Was darf es sein?

Ich nehme **die Spaghetti Pesto**, bitte.

Und was möchten Sie trinken?

Ich esse lieber **ein Wiener Schnitzel mit Pommes** und **ein gemischtes Eis** zum Nachtisch, bitte.

Für mich **eine Apfelschorle**, bitte.

Ich nehme **einen Früchtetee**.



iStock.com/Drazen Zigic

## Dialog 2

Also: **einmal Spaghetti Pesto, ein Wiener Schnitzel mit Pommes, eine Apfelschorle** und **einen Früchtetee**. Ach ja, und **ein gemischtes Eis** als Nachspeise. Das macht €21.

Die Rechnung, bitte!

€22. Stimmt so.

Vielen Dank! Auf Wiedersehen!

## ACHTUNG!

- **Sie**, the polite form of address, is used between wait staff and customers.
- **zum Nachtisch** = als Nachspeise
- **Die Rechnung, bitte!** = **Zahlen, bitte!**

## MACH MIT!

Read the dialogues aloud. Create new dialogues using the menu, substituting other suitable choices for the words in bold.

## What's the rule?

### Komparativ und Superlativ

As you learnt in *Ganz Klasse 1*, to describe different degrees of liking (such as 'good', 'better', 'best'), special forms of *gern* and *gut* are needed. These forms are called the **comparative** form and the **superlative** form. Degrees of liking can be expressed by *gern* and *gut*, as well as the commonly used *gern + mögen* or *gut + finden!*

Positive form	Komparativ	Superlativ
Ich mag ... <b>gern</b> .	Ich mag ... <b>lieber</b> .	Ich mag ... <b>am liebsten</b> .
Ich finde ... <b>gut</b> .	Ich finde ... <b>besser</b> .	Ich finde ... <b>am besten</b> .
I like ...	I like ... better.	I like ... best.

Henri isst **gern** Obstsalat.

Er isst **lieber** Spaghetti Bolognese.

Er isst **am liebsten** Eis.



### LET'S TRANSLATE!

- 1 Look at the menu on page 24 and say what you **like** to eat/drink, what you **prefer** to eat/drink, and what you like to eat/drink **the best**.
- 2 Ask your friends what they **like** to eat/drink, what they **prefer** to eat/drink, and what they like to eat/drink **the best**.

Remember: *Was isst/trinkst du gern?*

## What's different about German?

In German, *gern* cannot be translated directly as the verb 'like' in English. It must be used with a verb and, as such, indicates that you like doing this activity/action. The word *nicht* is used in front of *gern* to indicate that you don't like doing something.

Melanie isst **nicht gern** Fleisch.

Ich trinke **nicht gern** Kaffee.



**Ahmet** Ich muss mit Papa sprechen und du musst in deinem Zimmer bleiben. Du kannst sicher sein, dass deine Freunde nächstes Mal ohne dich fahren! Für die Prüfung lernen, was? Lernst du immer mit Christian und Max in der Pizzeria?

**Sibel** Bitte, bitte, Ahmet. Du darfst Papa das auf keinen Fall sagen. Bitte! Ich darf nie wieder mitmachen! Du weißt doch, dass er so streng ist. Bitte! Ich mache, was du willst!

**Ahmet** Na ja ... Christian kennt doch den Talentsucher vom Hamburger SV, oder?

**Sibel** Ja, sein Bruder spielt mit Christian Fußball. Aber ich verstehe nicht ...

**Ahmet** Du weißt doch, dass ich beim Hamburger SV spielen möchte! Wir spielen am Samstag gegen Hann. Münden. Der Talentsucher kann ja ganz zufällig im Stadion sein.

**Sibel** Das ist Erpressung!

**Ahmet** Papa kann wirklich sehr sauer werden ...

**Sibel** O.K., O.K. Ich rufe Christian an.

**Sibel** Christian? Hi, Sibel hier. Du, ich muss dich was fragen. Du kennst doch den Talentsucher vom Hamburger SV, oder? Also, Ahmet spielt am Samstag gegen ...



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Wer kann sauer werden?
- 2 Wo muss Sibel bleiben?
- 3 Wer kennt den Talentsucher vom Hamburger SV?
- 4 Wann spielt Ahmet gegen Hann. Münden?
- 5 Was muss Sibel machen?

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What does SV stand for?
- What is the English translation of SV?
- What other football teams can you find with 'SV' endings?

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Prepositions are useful words that are part of a phrase. They usually come before a noun or a pronoun.

Der Zug fährt **ohne uns** ab.

Ich habe Kaffee und Kuchen **für euch**.

Es gibt eine Pizzeria gleich **um die Ecke**.

**Für mich** ein Malzbier, bitte.

Die Kinder rennen **durch den Garten**.

Thomas spielt am Samstag **gegen mich** Tennis.

- Can you locate the prepositions in the German sentences?
- What grammatical case is used after the preposition? Can you give an example?
- Which sentences have a preposition that describes the way in which something is done?
- Which sentences have a preposition that describes the position of something?

## So ist Deutsch!



*Bis, durch, entlang, für, gegen, ohne* and *um* are **prepositions**. These prepositions cannot appear by themselves and they never change. However, they often make the following nouns or pronouns change by dictating their case. *Bis, durch, entlang, für, gegen, ohne* and *um* require the following noun or pronoun to be in the **accusative case**.

**bis** = to, until

**durch** = through

**entlang** = along, down

**für** = for

**gegen** = against

**ohne** = without

**um** = around

### ACHTUNG!

**Entlang** always goes at the end of the sentence in the accusative case.

For example:

**Ich gehe die Straße entlang.**

To help you remember the accusative prepositions (*bis, durch, entlang, für, gegen, ohne, um*), try learning them in alphabetical order or make up your own mnemonic; for example: **B**en **d**ances **e**agerly **f**or **g**orgeous **O**livia **U**pton. Choose a sentence that you find easy to remember!





## 1 Der Akkusativ

### Das direkte Objekt

Die Freunde nehmen **den Zug**.

Da haben sie **die beste Pizza**.

Für mich **ein Malzbier**, bitte.

Nouns in a sentence can have different functions. They can be the 'doer' or the **subject**, which takes the **nominative case**. The subject is the person or thing doing the action.

*subject*  
Die **Kinder** spielen.

Der **Junge** liest.  
*subject*

Nouns can also be immediately influenced by the action. They are then called the **direct object**. Direct objects always take the **accusative case**. Only nouns and their articles and/or pronouns are affected by cases.

*direct object*  
Die **Kinder** spielen **Tennis**.

Der **Junge** liest **ein Buch**.  
*direct object*

## 2 Definiter Artikel



	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Nominativ	der Kaffee	die Suppe	das Tiramisu	die Getränke
Akkusativ	<b>den</b> Kaffee	die Suppe	das Tiramisu	die Getränke



*direct objects*  
Monika trinkt **den Kaffee**.

Ich finde **die Getränke** teuer.

Er nimmt immer **das Tiramisu**.

*direct object*

### 3 Indefiniter Artikel

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Nominativ	ein Salat	eine Limo	ein Malzbier	keine Snacks
Akkusativ	ein <b>en</b> Salat	eine Limo	ein Malzbier	keine Snacks

**ACHTUNG!**

Remember: The endings of possessive pronouns (e.g. **mein, dein ...**) follow the pattern of **ein/eine/ein** (indefinite articles).



*direct objects*

Ali und Timo nehmen **einen Salat**.

Karsten, möchtest du **ein Malzbier**?

Kari bestellt **eine Limo**.

Herr und Frau Holst essen **keine Snacks**.

*direct object*

*direct object*

### 4 Personalpronomen im Akkusativ

Nominativ	Akkusativ
ich	mich
du	dich
er, sie, es	ihn, sie, es
wir	uns
ihr	euch
sie, Sie	sie, Sie

Like nouns, **personal pronouns** are influenced by cases. They can also be direct objects!

*direct object*

Ich rufe **dich** später an.

Dürfen wir **euch** am Wochenende besuchen?

Melissa mag **ihn**.

*direct objects*

### 5 Nehmen

	nehmen to take
ich	nehme
du	<b>nimmst</b>
er, sie, es	<b>nimmt</b>
wir	nehmen
ihr	nehmt
sie, Sie	nehmen

*Nehmen* is a strong verb. It features a vowel change when used with *du* and *er/sie/es* (in present tense).



Timo nimmt einen Salat.

Dreamstime.com/Evgenyatamanenko



## Food and drink

der Apfelsaft (˚e)	apple juice
der Bananensaft (˚e)	banana juice
der Döner (Kebab)	doner kebab
der Früchtetee (s)	fruit tisane, herbal tea
der Gartensalat (e)	garden salad
der Kaffee (s)	coffee
der Kirschsaft (˚e)	cherry juice
der Kuchen (-)	cake
der Nachtisch (e)	dessert
der Nudelsalat (e)	pasta salad
der Orangensaft (˚e)	orange juice
der Saft (˚e)	juice
der Salat (e)	salad
der schwarze Tee (s)	black tea
der Snack (s)	snack
der Tee (s)	tea
die Apfelschorle (n)	apple spritzer
die Bratwurst (˚e)	bratwurst sausage
die Cola (s)	cola
die Currywurst (˚e)	curried sausage
die heiÙe Schokolade (n)	hot chocolate
die Limo (s)	lemonade (abbreviation)
die Limonade (n)	lemonade
die Nachspeise (n)	dessert
die Pizza (s)	pizza
die Pommes rot-weiÙ	French fries with tomato sauce and mayonnaise
die Schorle (n)	spritzer
die Spaghetti (s)	spaghetti
die Speise (n)	food
die Suppe (n)	soup
die Tomatensuppe (n)	tomato soup
die Vorspeise (n)	entrée
die Zwiebelsuppe (n)	onion soup
das Fastfood (-)	fast food
das gemischte Eis (-)	ice-cream
das Gericht (e)	dish
das Getränk (e)	beverage
das Hauptgericht (e)	main course
das Leitungswasser (-)	tap water
das Malzbier (e)	malt beer (non-alcoholic)
das Mineralwasser (-)	mineral water
das Sauerkraut (-)	sauerkraut
das Spezi (s)	cola/lemonade mix
das stille Wasser	still water
das Tiramisu (s)	tiramisu
das Wiener Schnitzel (-)	schnitzel

## Other nouns

der Geldbeutel (-)	money pouch
der Kellner (-)	waiter
der Preis (e)	price
der Stammtisch (e)	table for regular customers
die Ecke (n)	corner
die Erpressung (en)	blackmail
die Kellnerin (nen)	waitress
die Kreditkarte (n)	credit card
die Pizzeria (en)	pizza parlour
die Rechnung (en)	bill
die Speisekarte (n)	menu
das Gedicht (e)	poem
das Gepäck (no pl.)	luggage
das Trinkgeld	tip

## Verbs

bleiben	to stay
essen	to eat
nehmen	to take
riechen	to smell
trinken	to drink

## Accusative prepositions

bis	to, until
durch	through
entlang	along, down
für	for
gegen	against
ohne	without
um	in order to

## Useful words/expressions

bar	cash
Da ist er ja!	There he is!
Das macht ...	That's ...
dass	that
fast	almost
Guten Appetit!	Enjoy your meal!
sauer	annoyed
Stimmt so!	Keep the change!
vegetarisch	vegetarian
Was darf es sein?	What would you like?
Wie schmeckt's?	How is it?
Zahlen, bitte!	The bill, please!

# Macht Sport!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ use the imperative mood
- ☑ speak and write about different sports; in particular, soccer
- ☑ refer to key playing positions in soccer and some other sports.

You will also learn about:

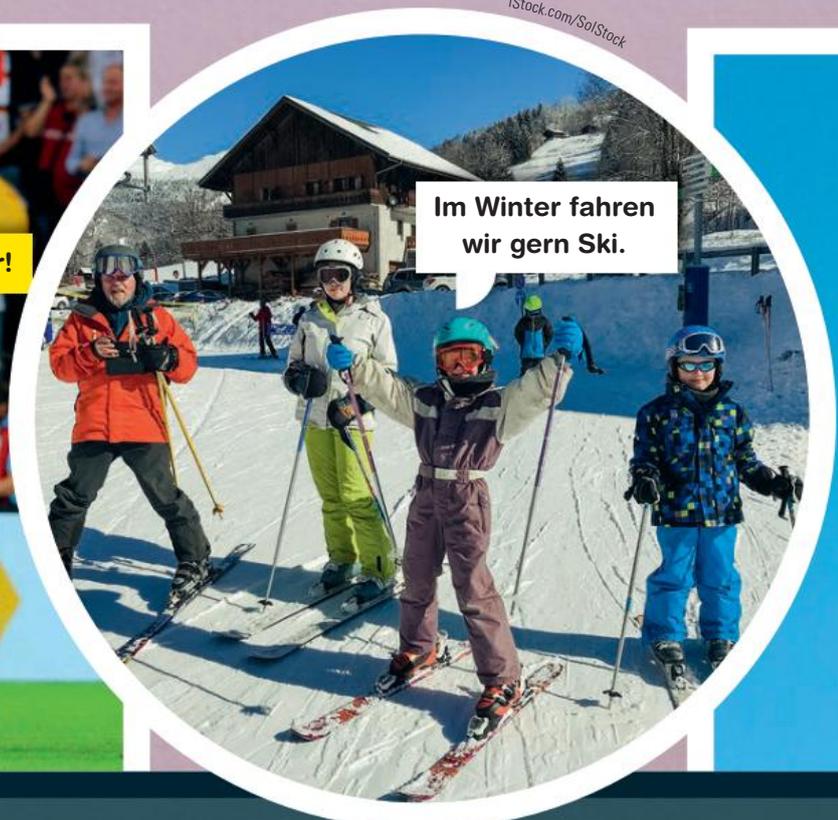
- ☑ the role of sport in German culture.

Popular sports typically differ from country to country. For many Germans, the most important sport is soccer, which is also Germany's national sport. Other sports, such as ice hockey, handball and motor sports, are also popular. Extreme sports and some non-traditional sports from other countries are increasing in popularity, especially among young people. Due to the climate in German-speaking countries, snow-based sports such as skiing and snowboarding are also popular.

School often finishes around lunchtime, so many students in Germany train and play with sports teams outside school hours. School-based sports teams are not as commonplace in German-speaking countries as they are in Australia and New Zealand.



Alamy Stock Photo/ImageBROKER/Luise Kraft



iStock.com/SolStock



Mach ein Tor!

Schieß den Ball!

Deutschland!

istock.com/southerly/course



Zeig's ihnen!

Alamy Stock Photo/Cones/Catalin Soare



Wir trainieren zweimal pro Woche.

Jeden Samstag haben wir ein Spiel.

Dreamstime.com/Igor Mojzes



Fallschirmspringen macht Spaß!

Alamy Stock Photo/Helmut Corneli

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are some of the German expressions used by players or spectators during sports matches?
- How do typical German sports mentioned earlier differ from sports that are commonly played in Australia and New Zealand?
- Would you like to spend more time enjoying a snow-based sport (such as skiing, snowboarding or sledding) each year? How would this differ from the sports you usually play throughout the year?
- Which, if any, of the sports mentioned earlier are popular where you live? Why do you think this is?
- Which of the sports mentioned earlier are not so popular where you live, and why?
- Research which extreme sports and non-traditional sports from other countries were most popular in German-speaking countries last year. Why do you think this is? What does this indicate about the popularity of sports in German-speaking countries?

## WELCHE SPORTARTEN SPIELTEN DIE DEUTSCHEN GERN?

Getty Images/Agence Zoom/Christophe Pallot



Die Winterspiele sind sehr wichtig in Deutschland. Maria Höfl-Riesch gewann die Silbermedaille beim Alpiner Ski Frauen Super-G in Sotschi, 2014.

Sport plays an important role in the society and culture of German-speaking countries. Many German people play individual and team sports and millions of Germans are members of one or more sports teams or leagues.

Germany has a significant presence in the Olympic Games; if all medals won in previous years by German, East German and West German athletes were combined, Germany would rank third in the all-time Summer Olympics medal count and first in the all-time Winter Olympics medal count. Germany hosted the Summer Olympics in Berlin in 1936 and in München (Munich) in 1972. It also hosted the Winter Olympics in Garmisch-Partenkirchen (a town in Bavaria) in 1936. Can you find Germany's medal count at each of these Olympic Games?

The importance of *Fußball* (soccer) to German society and culture cannot be overstated. It is the most widely played, watched and attended sport in Germany. The *Bundesliga*, Germany's top soccer league, has the highest attendance rates of all professional soccer leagues worldwide. Popular *Bundesliga* teams include FC (*Fußball-Club*) Bayern München, Borussia Dortmund, SV (*Sportverein*) Werder Bremen and Hertha BSC (*Berliner Sport-Club*). A *Frauen-Bundesliga* (women's professional soccer league) was founded in 1990, and is increasingly popular. On an international level, Germany's men's and women's national soccer teams are both successful, winning FIFA World Cup titles in 1954, 1974, 1990, 2014 (men's team), and 2003 and 2007 (women's team).

Deutschland gewinnt die FIFA Fußballweltmeisterschaft (Herren) im Jahr 2014.



Die Frauen-Bundesliga hat zwölf Mannschaften.



Getty Images/Juan Mabromata

While *Handball* (European handball) is a sport that might seem unusual to us, it is commonly played in schools and clubs across Germany and Europe. In fact, it is the second most played sport in Europe. *Handball* is a fast game in which two teams attempt to throw the ball into the opponent's goal as many times as possible within two 30-minute periods of play.

Handball ist sehr beliebt in Europa.

The popularity of *Motorsport* in Germany reflects the country's high-quality car manufacturing industry and the popularity of German car brands overseas. The German Formula 1 *Großer Preis* (Grand Prix) has been held most years since 1926, at three venues.



Getty Images/Stuart Franklin



Even though one can pursue *Wintersport* in Australia and New Zealand, the climate of German-speaking countries means that it is much easier to access and participate in activities such as *Eishockey*, *Skifahren*, *Snowboarden* and *Rodeln* (sledding). There are many mountainous locations in German-speaking countries, including the *Schweizer Alpen* (Swiss Alps), the *Österreichischer Alpen* (Austrian Alps) and *Garmisch-Partenkirchen* (a key winter sport destination in Germany).



**Viele Deutsche snowboarden gern.**

The beautiful and mountainous landscape of many German-speaking countries makes *Extremsport* such as *Dauerlauf* (endurance running), *Marathonradrennen* (marathon cycling), *Parkour*, *BMX*, *Fallschirmspringen* (skydiving), *Base-Jumping* and *Bergsteigen* (rock climbing) popular.



**Bergsteigen kann ganz gefährlich sein!**

As in Australia, sports that are typically foreign to the locals (such as cricket, rugby, AFL, NFL and netball in Germany) are receiving greater exposure via social media and streaming services. An increasing number of teams are emerging in Germany for these foreign sports, and the number of people in German-speaking countries who watch these sports online or via streaming services is also increasing. There is even a German AFL league (Australian Football League Germany, or AFLG) and a German Rugby Union league (*Deutscher Rugby Verband*, or DRV).



**Die deutsche AFL-Mannschaft, die Eagles. Es gibt einen 'Australian Football International Cup' alle drei Jahre.**

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Die 10 beliebtesten Sportarten**

Search online to find the top 10 most popular sports in Germany.

- Which of the top 10 are not surprising to you? Why?
- Which of the top 10 are surprising to you? Why?

**PROJEKT 3 Ein Spiel anschauen**

Have you ever watched a German sports match, such as a *Bundesliga* soccer match? Find a German sports match to watch on the internet and observe the following.

- What are some of the key similarities and differences between watching a German sports match and an Australian sports match?
- Consider things such as the teams, the size of the stadium, the size of the crowd and how supporters show their support (e.g. by wearing team colours or merchandise, chanting, etc.).

**PROJEKT 2 Ein Sporturlaub**

Plan a sports holiday in a German-speaking country. This can be presented in a range of ways, based on your skills and interests (for example, an information sheet, pamphlet, website, video, blog or vlog, an article or an oral presentation with accompanying visuals).

- What sport(s) would you play/participate in?
- Where would you undertake the sport(s)?
- At what time of year would you travel to participate in this sport, and why?
- What (if any) equipment would you need? Is it easily available to hire or buy in Germany, or would you take it with you from home?
- If relevant, how would you go about joining the relevant team, league or association to play this sport(s)?
- What other information might you need to prepare for the holiday?



Sibel



Sibels Vater



Christian



Max

## Im Fußballstadion



1

**Sibel** Da ist Ahmet. Er sieht echt fit aus.

**Sibels Vater** Er muss heute wirklich gut spielen, weil der Talentsucher vom Hamburger SV hier ist.

**Sibel** Ahmet weiß, dass das Spiel heute wichtig ist. Wann fängt es an?

**Sibels Vater** In zehn Minuten.

**Sibel** Dann hole ich schnell etwas zu essen, bevor das Spiel anfängt. Ich habe kein Frühstück gehabt. Was möchtest du, Papa?

**Sibels Vater** Pommes, bitte. Aber nicht mit Ketschup, sondern mit Mayo! Hier, ich gebe dir Geld.



2

Da ist er! Mein Schatz, Christian!

**Sibel** Christian! Hi, Max! Wo sitzt ihr?

**Christian** Wir suchen noch Plätze. Wo sitzt du?

**Sibel** Papa und ich sitzen hier, an der Seite. Kommt doch mit. Christian, Max, das ist mein Vater. Papa, Max und Christian sind meine Schulfreunde.

**Sibels Vater** Hallo, ihr beiden.

**Max** Guten Tag, Herr Hayak!

**Christian** Servus!

**Sibels Vater** Spielt oder schaut ihr auch Fußball?

**Max** Ich schaue gern Fußball, obwohl ich lieber Eishockey spiele.

**Christian** Ich spiele oft Fußball, wenn ich nicht skateboarden gehe.

**Sibels Vater** Oh, das Spiel fängt an. Hoffentlich spielt Ahmet gut!

**Sibel** Mein Vater und ich sind ganz gespannt, weil ein Talentsucher hier ist.

**Christian** Wo ist Ahmet?

**Sibel** Dort in der Mitte. Er hat die Nummer fünf.



3



**Max** Seit wann spielt Ahmet Fußball?

**Sibel** Seit acht oder neun Jahren. Zuerst hat er zwei Jahre als Rechtsaußen gespielt und danach zwei Jahre als Verteidiger. Jetzt ist er seit vier Jahren Stürmer.

**Christian** Oh nein ... der Linksaußen in blau ist aber schnell. Er schießt ...

**Sibel** Puh, er hat fast ein Tor gemacht! Gut, dass unser Torwart auch schnell ist!

**Sibel** Oh nein, Ahmet ist verletzt!

**Christian** Foul! Foul!

**Max** Der Schiedsrichter gibt dem anderen Spieler eine rote Karte.



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Why is it important that Ahmet plays well?
- 2 What does Sibel do before the match starts?
- 3 What does Max like to play?
- 4 How long has Ahmet been playing soccer?
- 5 How does Ahmet win the match for his team? Explain.

## 1 Das Fußballspiel



## 2 Die Positionen



## 3 Ein Interview



**A:** Hallo, Steffi! Vielen Dank für deine Zeit. Ich habe ein paar Fragen an dich.

**B:** Hi, Jürgen! Kein Problem!

**A:** Also, Steffi, was spielst du gern?

**B:** Naja, ich spiele sehr gern **Handball**, aber ich spiele noch lieber **Basketball**. Am liebsten spiele ich **Fußball**. Das ist ja klar!

**A:** Aha. Und seit wann spielst du schon **Fußball**?

**B:** Seit 4 Jahren. Ich habe ein Jahr als **Stürmerin** gespielt und drei Jahre als **Torwartin**. Jetzt bin ich **Verteidigerin**.

**A:** Toll! Und wo spielst du?

**B:** Ich spiele immer **im RheinEnergieStadion**.

**A:** Das ist ja sehr interessant. Und trainierst du oft?

**B:** Ja, klar! Acht Stunden pro Woche. Ich bin sehr **fit**, aber manchmal bin ich auch **faul**.

**A:** Vielen Dank für deine Zeit!

**B:** Kein Problem!

australischen Fußball  
Basketball  
Cricket  
Eishockey  
Handball

Fußball  
Korbball  
Rugby

Torwart/Torwartin  
Stürmer/Stürmerin  
Verteidiger/Verteidigerin  
Mittelfeldspieler/Mittelfeldspielerin  
Linksaußen  
Rechtsaußen

auf dem Rasen  
auf einem  
Sportplatz  
auf einem  
Spielfeld

im Park  
im Fußballstadion  
im Tor  
im Stadion

aktiv  
fit  
gesund  
durchtrainiert  
geschickt

ungeschickt  
faul  
schnell  
langsam  
verletzt



### MACH MIT!

- 1 Practise and perform the interview with a partner.
- 2 Make up new dialogues with a partner, replacing the coloured words with other options from the vocabulary lists.
- 3 What sport(s) or physical activity do you do? Where and how often do you train/play? Practise providing this information verbally in German to a partner.

## What's the rule?

As you learnt in *Ganz Klasse! 1*, all nouns in German are assigned a gender: masculine, feminine or neuter. Nouns referring to people can state, for example, playing positions in sport, jobs and other roles. Many of these nouns will have both a masculine and a feminine form, to reflect whether a man or a woman is in the position, job or role.

Look at these examples of nouns that have both a masculine and a feminine form. What do you notice about them? Which article does each form take? In what way are the feminine forms different from the masculine forms?

Maskulinum (der)	Femininum (die)
Schiedsrichter	Schiedsrichterin
Stürmer	Stürmerin
Verteidiger	Verteidigerin
Lehrer	Lehrerin
Freund	Freundin




What examples can you list in English of male and female forms of the same position, job or role? How do the words differ?

See whether you can find more nouns with both a masculine and a feminine form in previous units of *Ganz Klasse! 1* and *Ganz Klasse! 2*.

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

- 1 You have already learnt that, when you are speaking to people in German, there are three different ways of saying 'you'. When you are speaking to friends, family or other people you know well, you use *du* (when you are speaking to one person) or *ihr* (when you are speaking to two or more people). When you are speaking to strangers or older people and you want to be polite, you use *Sie*.
- 2 Think of the people you see and speak to each week. With whom would you use *du* and with whom would you use *Sie*?
- 3 Think of an instance when you would use *ihr*, and an instance when you would be required to use *Sie* (plural).

## What's different about German?

Similarly, there are three different ways of giving an instruction to someone (*du* or *Sie*) or to a group of people (*ihr* or *Sie*). There is also a fourth way of giving an instruction or making a suggestion to a group of people when you are part of the group (*wir*).

Look at these examples.

Julia, **mach** deine Hausaufgaben!

Anna und Jessie, **macht** diese Übungen!

Frau Berthold, **machen Sie** eine Liste!

**Machen wir** unsere Hausarbeit!

Julia, **do** your homework!

Anna and Jessie, **do** these exercises!

Mrs Berthold, **make** a list!

**Let's (Let us) do** our chores!

These are all examples of the **imperative mood**, which is used for giving instructions, commands or orders, or for making suggestions. You will learn more about the imperative mood in the *Grammatik* section.

## Die Fußballweltmeisterschaft



Alamy Stock Photo/alliance/Marcus Brandt



Hallo und willkommen, liebe Zuhörer. Mein Name ist Bruno Ball und ich bin heute Ihr Kommentator. Sie schauen ein Fußballspiel aus dem Olympiastadion in München. Es spielen Deutschland und Australien. Australien hat schon zwei Tore, aber der deutsche Stürmer mit der Nummer vier ist sehr schnell. Er läuft, er läuft, er schießt, und ... TOR! TOR! TOR!

Deutschland hat ein Tor geschossen! Der australische Torwart war zu langsam. Aber jetzt haben die Australier den Ball. Der Verteidiger schießt zum Spieler mit der Nummer dreizehn. Das war wirklich sehr geschickt! Jetzt hat der australische Rechtsaußen den Ball, aber ... was ist das? Der australische Spieler ist verletzt ... er liegt auf dem Rasen. Er hält sich das Bein. Oh nein, der Schiedsrichter gibt dem deutschen Spieler mit der Nummer eins eine rote Karte und dem Australier einen Freistoß! Der australische Spieler läuft, er schießt ... und ... TOR!

Die Australier haben ein Tor gemacht. Und da ist der Schlusspfiff. Australien gewinnt drei zu eins, aber nächste Woche spielen die zwei Mannschaften wieder. Hoffentlich sind alle Spieler fit und gesund, denn Deutschland muss besser spielen.



Alamy Stock Photo/Katherine Rose

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Bruno Ball spielt für Deutschland.
- 2 Das Spiel findet in Australien statt.
- 3 Die zwei Mannschaften sind Australien und Deutschland.
- 4 Der Stürmer gibt eine rote Karte.
- 5 Ein deutscher Spieler bekommt die rote Karte.
- 6 Der australische Spieler ist nicht verletzt.
- 7 In zwei Wochen spielen die Mannschaften wieder.
- 8 Deutschland muss besser spielen.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How would the above differ if there were female teams playing?
- Rewrite the text using the feminine forms of the relevant player positions.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do you think the main differences are between sport in Germany and Australia?
- Considering that certain sports are becoming increasingly popular in German-speaking countries, how do you think German sporting trends will change further in the future? Why do you think this?
- What do you think the main difference would be between attending an Australian Rules or rugby match and a German *Bundesliga* match?
- Look at the following words and try to figure out what they mean, and how they became part of the German language.



Getty Images/Robert Michael



Shutterstock.com/Michele Morrone

- coachen
- trainieren
- der Sportfreund
- der Fan
- die Trophäe



## So ist Deutsch!

### Sprachtipps: 'sp', 'st' and 'r'

- 'sp' sounds at the beginning of a word or a syllable are pronounced 'shp': **S**piel, **s**pielen, **S**pieler, **g**espannt, **S**port.
- 'st' sounds at the beginning of a word or a syllable are pronounced 'sht': **S**tadion, **S**tadt, **F**rühstück, **S**türmer, **S**traße.
- 'sp' and 'st' sounds at the end of a word or a syllable are pronounced 'sp' and 'st', as they are pronounced in English: **A**spekt, knus**s**prig, **R**est, **B**este.
- The pronunciation of the letter 'r' can be a bit tricky. The sound it makes can vary depending on what comes after it. Before a vowel, 'r' is pronounced much more prominently than before a consonant or at the end of a word.

'r' before a vowel	'r' before a consonant	'r' at the end of a word
drei <b>ß</b> ig	wirklich	sehr
Reis	Wurm	Vater
Jahre	skateboarden	Tor

### Schreibtipps: Instructions and commands

It is important to note that when giving instructions and commands in German, the phrase will most often end with an exclamation mark, to emphasise the fact that it is a demand. This also often occurs in English.

<b>Komm her!</b>	Come here!
<b>Setzt euch!</b>	Sit down!
<b>Fragen Sie!</b>	Ask!



## Der Imperativ

The **imperative** form of a verb is used to give an order, a command, an instruction, a suggestion or advice. An instruction always addresses one person or a group of people directly (i.e. 'you' or 'we'). Therefore, the imperative mood has only four forms: a *du* form (you – **informal singular**), an *ihr* form (you – **informal plural**), a *Sie* form (you – **formal singular and plural**) and a *wir* form (we).

To form the imperative mood, we do the following.

- du** form → use the present tense stem of the verb (i.e. remove the **en** or **n** from the end of the infinitive)
- ihr** form → use the present tense **ihr** conjugation of the verb
- Sie** form → use the present tense **Sie** conjugation of the verb, followed by the pronoun **Sie**
- wir** form → use the present tense **wir** conjugation of the verb, followed by the pronoun **wir**

Note that for verbs that have an irregular stem in the *du* form (such as *nehmen*), the same irregular stem is reflected in the *du* form of the imperative mood. This irregularity is highlighted in the table below.

Note also that we don't include the pronouns *du* and *ihr* when using the imperative mood, but we must always include the pronouns *Sie* and *wir* after the imperative verb. This is because the verbs in both of these forms look the same. We must include the correct pronoun so that it is clear to whom we are giving the instruction or suggestion. The last two columns of the table demonstrate this similarity.

Highly irregular verbs (such as *sein*) have irregular forms in the imperative mood, but you don't need to worry about these verbs for now.

	du form	ihr form	Sie form	wir form
gehen (to go)	Geh!	Geht!	Gehen Sie!	Gehen wir!
kommen (to come)	Komm!	Kommt!	Kommen Sie!	Kommen wir!
laufen (to run, walk)	Lauf!	Lauft!	Laufen Sie!	Laufen wir!
machen (to do, make)	Mach!	Macht!	Machen Sie!	Machen wir!
nehmen (to take)	<b>Nimm!</b>	Nehmt!	Nehmen Sie!	Nehmen wir!
schießen (to shoot)	Schieß!	Schießt!	Schießen Sie!	Schießen wir!
spielen (to play)	Spiel!	Spielt!	Spielen Sie!	Spielen wir!
zeigen (to show)	Zeig!	Zeigt!	Zeigen Sie!	Zeigen wir!



Here are some examples of some statements (the indicative mood) versus some instructions (the imperative mood). Notice that normal, present tense verb conjugations are used in the statements – this is the indicative mood.

Indicative mood (statements)	Imperative mood (instructions, orders, commands, suggestions)
Du <b>gehst</b> nach Hause. (You [singular] go home.)	<b>Geh</b> nach Hause! (Go home!)
Ihr <b>kommt</b> mit. (You [plural] come along.)	<b>Kommt</b> mit! (Come along!)
Sie <b>machen</b> ein bisschen Hausarbeit. (You [formal] do a bit of housework.)	<b>Machen Sie</b> ein bisschen Hausarbeit! (Do a bit of housework!)
Wir <b>spielen</b> Hockey. (We play hockey.)	<b>Spielen wir</b> Hockey! (Let's play hockey!)

### ACHTUNG!

When we give instructions, it is easy to sound rude if we don't use the appropriate manners. For this reason, the imperative mood can be used with expressions such as **bitte** ('please').

**Steh auf, bitte!**

Get up, please!

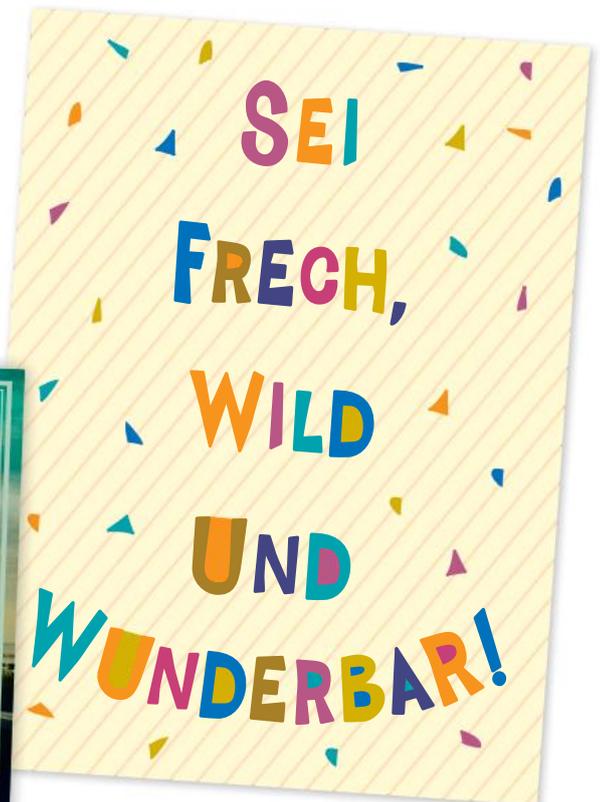
**Kommt herein, bitte!**

Come inside, please!

**Schreiben Sie mir eine Mail, bitte!**

Write me an email, please!

Can you identify the verbs in the posters below that are in the imperative mood? See if you can translate them.





## Nouns

der Coach (es)	coach
der Extremsport (e)	extreme sports
der Freistoß (˘e)	free kick
der Fußball (˘e)	soccer ball, soccer
der Kommentator (en)	commentator (male)
der Linksaußen (-)	left-wing player
der Mittelfeldspieler (-)	midfielder (male)
der Motorsport (e)	motor sports
der Platz (˘e)	place, spot, seat, field
der Rasen (-)	pitch, lawn
der Rechtsaußen (-)	right-wing player
der Schiedsrichter (-)	umpire, referee (male)
der Schlusspfiff (e)	final whistle
der Spieler (-)	player (male)
der Spielstand (˘e)	score
der Stürmer (-)	forward, striker (male)
der Talentsucher (-)	talent scout (male)
der Torwart (e)	goalkeeper
der Verteidiger (-)	defender (male)
der Wintersport (e)	winter sports
der Zuhörer (-)	listener (male)
der Zuschauer (-)	spectator (male)
die Anzeigetafel (n)	scoreboard
die Bundesliga (-ligen)	German professional soccer league
die gelbe/rote Karte (n)	yellow/red card
die Kommentatorin (nen)	commentator (female)
die Linksaußen	left-wing player
die Mannschaft (en)	team
die Mittelfeldspielerin (nen)	midfielder (female)
die Nummer (n)	number
die Rechtsaußen	right-wing player
die Schiedsrichterin (nen)	umpire, referee (female)
die Seitenlinie (n)	sideline
die Spielerin (nen)	player (female)
die Stürmerin (nen)	forward, striker (female)
die Talentsucherin (nen)	talent scout (female)
die Torwartin (nen)	goalkeeper (female)
die Tribüne (n)	stand
die Verteidigerin (nen)	defender (female)
die Zuhörerin (nen)	listener (female)
die Zuschauerin (nen)	spectator (female)
das Abseits (-)	offside
das Foul (s)	foul
das Fußballstadion (-stadien)	soccer stadium
das Spiel (e)	game, match
das Spielfeld (er)	playing field
das Tor (e)	goal
das Trikot (s)	jersey

## Verbs

bekommen	to receive
gewinnen	to win
haben (gehabt)	to have (had)
machen (gemacht)	to make, to do (made/did)
schießen (geschossen)	to shoot (a goal) (shot)
Ski fahren	to go skiing
snowboarden	to snowboard
spielen (gespielt)	to play (played)
trainieren	to train
zuhören	to listen to (a sport match)
zuschauen	to watch (a sport match)

## Adjectives

aktiv	active, energetic
böse	angry, mad
durchtrainiert	muscly
faul	lazy
fit	fit
geschickt	skilful, coordinated
gespannt	excited
gesund	healthy
langsam	slow
schnell	fast
ungeschickt	clumsy, uncoordinated
verletzt	injured
wichtig	important

## Adverbs

danach	after that
langsam	slowly
schnell	quickly
zuerst	first (of all)

## Conjunctions

bevor	before
dass	that
obwohl	although, even though
weil	because
wenn	if, whenever, when

## Useful expressions

Entschuldigen Sie mich	Excuse me (formal)
... macht Spaß!	... is fun!
Zeig's ihnen!	Show them!

# Gesundheit!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- say how you are feeling
- describe certain symptoms
- label parts of the body
- use the expression *wehtun*
- describe your daily routines
- use reflexive verbs
- use accusative and dative reflexive pronouns
- use compound nouns.

You will also learn about:

- wellbeing in Germany.

People in German-speaking countries are very health conscious, and preventing illness (*die Vorbeugung*) is as important as a cure.

Germany, Austria and Switzerland have the most comprehensive spa cultures in Europe. Going to spas regularly is considered to be a part of good health and not a luxury. A major difference between spas in German-speaking countries and most spas in Australia is that German spas are generally outdoors and at natural springs.

A high percentage of people in German-speaking countries exercise regularly to stay fit. *Wandern* (hiking) is still one of the most popular outdoor activities, followed by Nordic walking, which is a form of physical activity where regular walking is enhanced with a pair of walking poles. The poles encourage correct walking technique. It is said that the continuous swinging gait works the heart and blood circulation in a similar way to jogging. Yoga, cycling, running and swimming are also popular recreational activities in German-speaking countries.

Eating well and healthy living are just as important. There is a trend to shop at the local farmers' markets or at a *Bioladen*. This is a shop that sells mainly organic food and environmentally friendly goods.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Are you and your family health conscious? In what way?
- What do people in your country do to promote a healthy lifestyle? Is it different from other countries?
- Does Nordic walking appeal to you? Why or why not?
- Why would people in Australia or New Zealand go to a spa resort? Is there a resort/natural spa in your area? How does it compare to those in German-speaking countries?
- Does your family use any home remedies, medicines used by Indigenous Australians and New Zealanders, or other alternative medicines? If so, which ones?



Wir wandern gern.



Das macht Spaß und hält fit.

age fotostock/Thomas Eisele



Das Thermalwasser ist gut für unsere Gesundheit.

Das Thermalbad Leukerbad in der Schweiz



Nordic walking – man braucht die richtige Technik.

Shutterstock.com/messer16

Shutterstock.com/Ekapong



Gemüse ist lecker und gesund!

Ein Bauernmarkt



Mir geht's nicht so gut.

Wie können wir gesund bleiben?

iStock.com/PeopleImages

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do you think are the causes of modern illnesses?
- What is the most common illness in your country? How does that compare with illnesses around the world?
- What kind of food would you regard as healthy? What food would you encourage a sick person to eat?
- Explore and reflect on your relationship with traditional and alternative medicines and discuss it in class.
- Do you agree with the saying, 'Healthy body; healthy mind'? Why or why not?

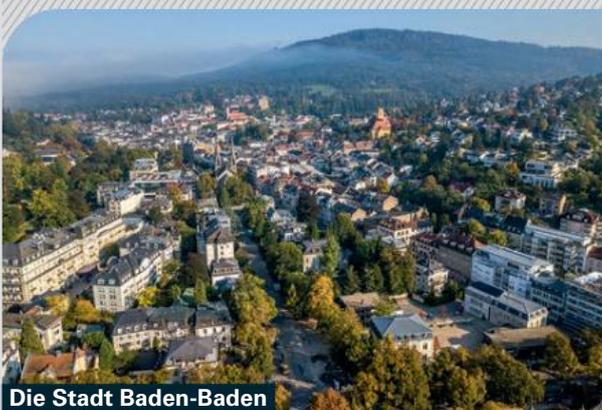
## GESUNDHEIT!

The word *Gesundheit* can be translated into 'wellness and wellbeing', but it is also the response when someone sneezes, and literally means 'health'. The appropriate response is to say *Danke*.

Hand vor den Mund beim Niesen oder Husten? Höflich, aber gesundheitlich nicht sinnvoll. Nehmen Sie lieber ein Einwegtaschentuch.



Can you work out the message in the cartoon?



## BADEKULTUR

The spa culture in German-speaking countries is adopted from an ancient Roman tradition in which soldiers returning from battle would bathe as a form of hydrotherapy. A *Kurort*, which literally means 'cure place', is a spa resort or wellness centre for preventative medicine, recovery and cure. Located in towns that adhere to strict air and water quality standards, they feature natural outdoor thermal pools and incorporate a wide range of wellbeing treatments based on natural remedies.

Going to a *Kurort* is covered by Austrian and German health insurance plans, and a doctor may prescribe *eine Kur*, which translates to free or subsidised treatments in a spa resort, including exercise, nutrition, relaxation, communication and motivation. Is this something that happens in your country?

The prefix *Bad* (bath) before a German town's name is an official designation that there is a health and curative spa in the town. There are many town names in Germany beginning with *Bad*; for example, *Bad Reichenhall* and *Bad Soden*. *Baden-Baden*, which literally means 'bathing-bathing', is one of Germany's most famous spa towns, and is located in the Black Forest. What other towns beginning with *Bad* can you find? Is there a geographical pattern?

Alamy Stock Photo/HTHphoto



**Die Kaiser-Friedrich-Therme in Wiesbaden**

Europeans do not shy away from nakedness, and being naked in front of others is generally not seen as embarrassing or a source of shame. Although swimsuits are worn in many areas of a spa, the steam baths and massage areas are typically 'towel only'. Although German people are generally not prudish when it comes to the human body, there are unwritten rules about etiquette in the spas of German-speaking countries, such as showering before one enters a pool, and wearing a bathing cap.

age fotostock/imageBROKER/Petr Svarec



**Das Kurhotel Rogner Bad Blumau in Österreich**

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Eine Werbung für einen Kurort**

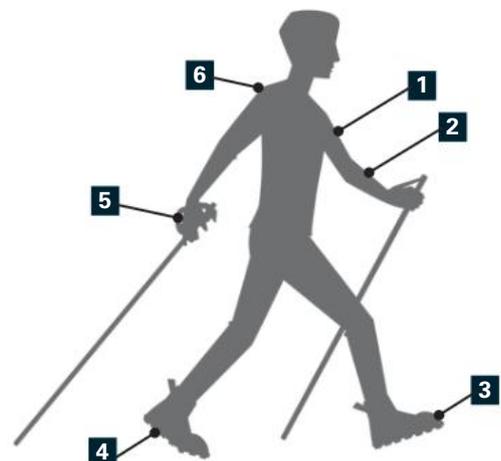
Create a brochure to attract tourists to a wellness centre. It can be fictitious.

- Give your spa a German name.
- State where it is located (provide a map).
- Include pictures of the place.
- Promote the surrounding landscape.
- State why people should go to your spa.
- Provide information about the therapies and remedies on offer.
- Quote prices in euros. Include a conversion to Australian or New Zealand dollars, based on current exchange rates.

**PROJEKT 2 Nordic walking – ja oder nein?**

Write a persuasive text on the importance of Nordic walking and why it should be introduced to your country. Produce as much of your work as you can in German. Include the following information.

- Find out about and state its origin.
- State why it might have found such popularity in the German-speaking countries.
- Compare Nordic walking to activities that are similar (e.g. cross-country skiing). Is there a connection?
- Mention its health benefits.
- Briefly describe the technique in English. Use an image similar to the one shown to help you. Label, in German, the body parts (1–6) that are used when Nordic walking.





## Sibels Zimmer



**Sibels Vater** Sibel! Steh auf! Es ist schon spät und du musst dich noch duschen und dir die Zähne putzen.

**Sibel** Mir ist so schlecht! Ich dusche mich nicht! Ich kann nicht aufstehen. Ich bleibe heute zu Hause.

## Im Klassenzimmer



**Herr Lenz** Heute machen wir Algebra. Ach ... Christian, du kommst zu spät!

**Christian** Entschuldigen Sie, Herr Lenz. Ich bin verletzt. Mein Bein ist gebrochen. Ich kann mit den Krücken nicht so schnell gehen. Es tut sehr weh.

**Herr Lenz** Ach so! Setz dich schnell hin. Also ...

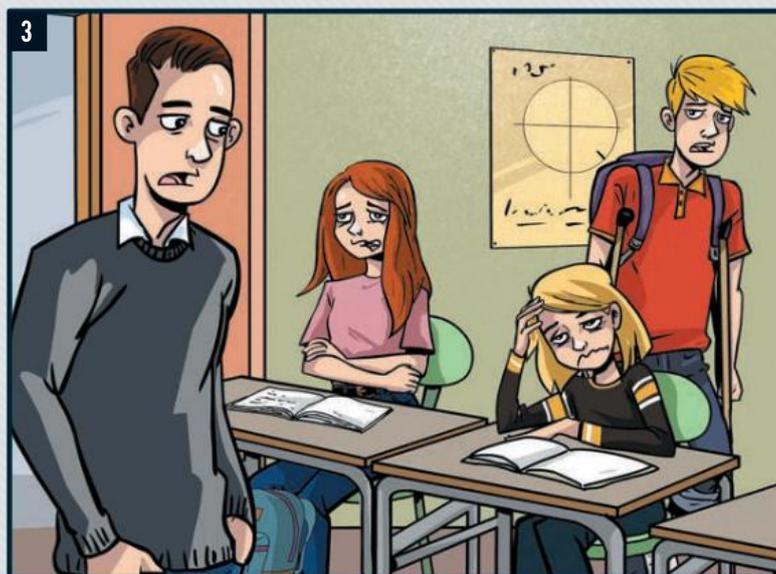
**Julia** Entschuldigung, Herr Lenz? Ich fühle mich nicht wohl. Mir ist schlecht und ich habe Bauchschmerzen. Kann ich bitte auf die Toilette gehen?

**Herr Lenz** Ja, natürlich. Na Anna ... was ist denn mit dir los?

**Anna** Aah ... also ... ach, Herr Lenz, es tut mir leid. Ich kann mich nicht konzentrieren. Ich habe Kopfschmerzen und mein Hals tut weh.

**Herr Lenz** Was ist das hier? Eine Schule oder ein Krankenhaus?

**Christian** Anna sieht aber wirklich blass und müde aus, Herr Lenz.



**Herr Lenz** Zum Donnerwetter! Passt jetzt auf! Max!  $a + b = \dots$  ?

**Max** Herr Lenz! Meine Zahnsperre ist zu eng. Mein ganzer Mund tut weh und ich kann nicht gut sprechen. Leider kann ich nur Suppe essen und ich habe einen Bärenhunger.

**Anna** Nur Suppe?

**Max** Genau!



**Herr Lenz** Wo ist Sibel denn heute?

**Christian** Sie fühlt sich nicht wohl. Sie hat die Grippe. Hoffentlich werde ich nicht auch noch krank.

**Max** Hat Ahmet schon vom Talentsucher gehört?

**Christian** Nein, noch nicht. Er wartet noch auf den Anruf. Ahmet wird bestimmt mal ein Fußballprofi. Er trainiert so oft und ist wirklich topfit.



Herr Lenz? Mein Gott!

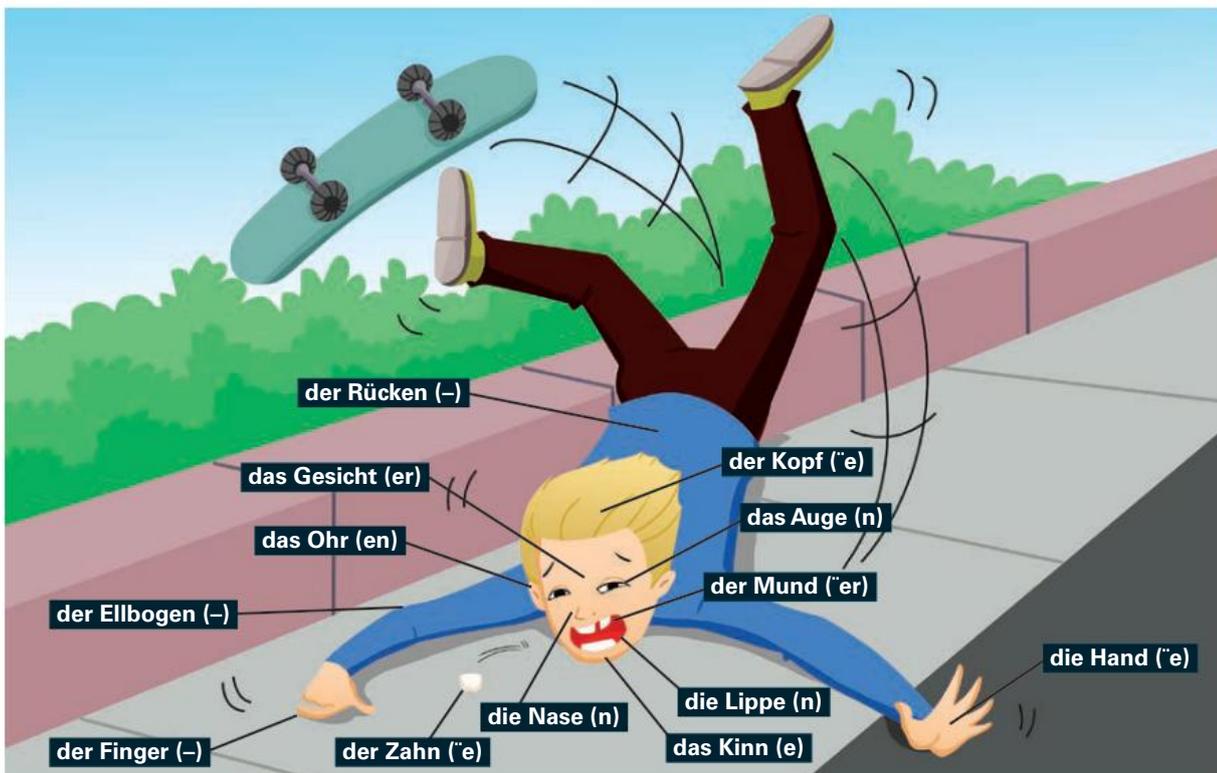
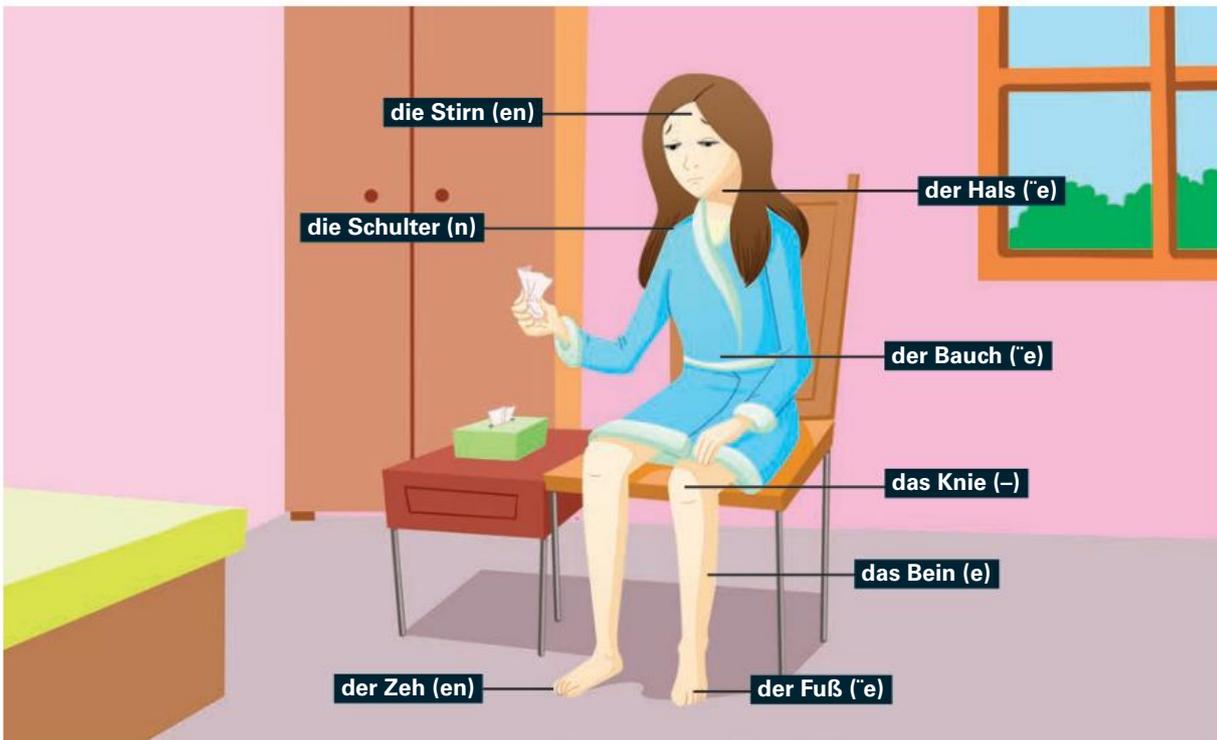
Oh nein, er ist ohnmächtig. Anna, hol schnell Frau Berthold!

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Sibels Vater möchte, dass Sibel ins Badezimmer geht.
- 2 Sibel kann nicht in die Schule gehen.
- 3 Christian ist krank.
- 4 Julia will nach Hause gehen.
- 5 Anna sieht krank aus.
- 6 Max ist nicht gut in Mathe. Er weiss die Antwort nicht.

## 1 Was ist los?



Read all the words in their singular form first and then try the plurals. Say each word three times to help you memorise it.

### ACHTUNG!

The singular and plural of **Knie** look the same but have different pronunciations: 'K-nee' (sing.) and 'K-nee-ye' (pl.). Have a go at clapping the syllables: one clap for singular and two claps for plural.



<b>A</b>	Hallo Servus Guten Morgen	Anna. Herr Lenz. Christian und Max.	Wie geht's? Wie geht es dir? Wie geht es Ihnen? Wie geht es euch?		
<b>B</b>	Ich bin Wir sind	krank. müde. erkältet. kaputt. verletzt.	Ich habe Wir haben	Kopfschmerzen. Ohrenschmerzen. Fieber. die Grippe. einen Schnupfen. Heuschnupfen. eine Erkältung. Schmerzen.	Zu viel Sport! Die Grippe geht um! Zu viele Hausaufgaben!
<b>A</b>	Du Arme! Ihr Armen! Sie Armer!	Du musst Ihr müsst Sie müssen	zum Arzt gehen. ins Bett gehen. ins Krankenhaus gehen. nach Hause gehen. zu Hause bleiben. viel schlafen. Medizin nehmen. Schmerztabletten nehmen.		

## MACH MIT!

- Take turns to read the dialogue with a partner. After the first turn, change the words in bold to another body part. Make sure you use the correct form of *mein* and *meine*.
- Have a conversation with your partner by selecting from the choices offered in the tables above. Listen carefully to your partner so that your choices make sense.
  - Now vary your conversation by changing roles with your partner and making different choices.

## 2 Die tägliche Routine von Karl



06.00

Ich stehe auf.



06.10

Ich dusche mich.



06.30

Ich ziehe mich an.  
Ich mache mich fertig.



06.45

Ich frühstücke.



07.05

Ich putze mir die Zähne.



07.10

Ich rasiere mich.  
Ich schminke mich.



07.35

Ich treffe mich mit Freunden  
an der Bushaltestelle.



07.40

Ich fahre mit dem Bus zur Schule.



08.00

Ich langweile mich.



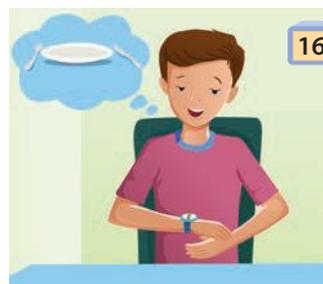
13.00

Ich gehe zu Fuß nach Hause.



16.00

Ich ziehe mich um.



16.20

Ich freue mich auf das Abendessen!

### Dialog 1

<b>A:</b>	Was machst du um sechzehn Uhr, Karl?
<b>Karl:</b>	Ich ziehe mich um.
<b>A:</b>	Frühstückst du um halb acht?
<b>Karl:</b>	Nein, ich frühstücke von Viertel vor sieben bis fünf nach sieben Uhr.

### Dialog 2

<b>A:</b>	Was macht Karl um fünf nach sieben?
<b>B:</b>	Er putzt sich die Zähne.
<b>A:</b>	Wann freut er sich auf das Abendessen?
<b>B:</b>	Er freut sich um zwanzig nach vier auf das Abendessen.

### MACH MIT!

- 1 Rehearse Dialogue 1 with a partner. Pretend you are Karl. Your partner wants to know what you do at different times of the day. Then swap roles. Substitute some of the times and activities in the dialogue with others.
- 2 Rehearse Dialogue 2 with a partner and take turns to ask each other what Karl does at different times of the day. Substitute some of the times and activities in the dialogue with others.
- 3 Tell your partner at what time you do the activities mentioned above. Then swap roles.

## What's the rule?

If something is hurting, you can use the expression *tut weh*.

Mein Fuß <b>tut weh</b> .	My foot hurts.
Mein Ohr <b>tut weh</b> .	My ear hurts.
Meine Augen <b>tun weh</b> .	My eyes hurt.
<b>Tut dein Zahn weh?</b>	Does your tooth hurt?

Mein Arm tut weh.



Look at the German and English sentences above. The word 'hurt' is expressed using two words in German. Can you remember what a two-part verb is called? Try to work out the infinitive of *tut weh* (i.e. how you would find it in a dictionary).

You can also use the word *Schmerzen* to express hurt or pain.

Ich habe Bauch <b>schmerzen</b> .	I have a stomach ache.
Hast du Kopf <b>schmerzen</b> ?	Do you have a headache?

Ich habe Bauchschmerzen.



The word *Schmerzen* is used in its plural form, so you do not need to use an article.

Play with the two expressions (*tut weh* and *-schmerzen*), using key vocabulary from this unit. Can you work out which expression is better suited to which ailment? Is it the same in English? What is the rule?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Look at these sentences. How would you translate them into English?

- Ich dusche **mich**.
- Max zieht **sich** an.
- Rasierst du **dich**?
- Ich treffe **mich** mit Freunden.

A literal translation might sound strange. 'I shower myself' has a different meaning in English; namely, it implies that you are doing it without any help from anybody else. This is not the case in German.

These verbs are called **reflexive verbs**. Do you know any reflexive verbs in English? Can you find some more examples in the text?

## What's different about German?

### Komposita

Germans love compound nouns – *Komposita*. Remember: compound nouns are made up of two or more small words joined together to make a brand new, longer one. In English, where you would use separate words, German speakers compress everything together. For example, 'stomach pain' in English is two words, but in German it is one: *Bauchschmerzen*.

der **Bauch** + die **Schmerzen** = die **Bauchschmerzen**

die **Kranken** + das **Haus** = das **Krankenhaus**

The new word takes the gender of the last noun in the chain!

### ACHTUNG!

When talking about 'earache', you will need to take the plural form of the word **Ohr**, even though your pain might only be in one ear:

**das Ohr + die Schmerzen = die Ohrenschmerzen**

What compound nouns can you think of in English and how many can you make up in German?

In Germany, *das Krankenhaus* is commonly used, but in Austria and Switzerland, *das Spital* is preferred.

### Kurz oder lang?

If a vowel precedes a double consonant, the vowel will be short, whereas an 'h' after the vowel indicates that a vowel is to be pronounced long.

**kurz**

Kinn

Unfall

Grippe

**lang**

ohnmächtig

Zähne

weh

## Entschuldigung



In Deutschland ist man mit 18 Jahren erwachsen und darf in der Oberstufe eigene Entschuldigungen schreiben.

Lieber Herr Kraus,  
ich bin krank. Ich habe eine Erkältung  
mit Schnupfen und hohem Fieber –  
38 Grad! Ich kann nicht gut schlafen und  
bin total müde. Der Arzt sagt, ich soll  
eine Woche zu Hause bleiben, denn ich  
darf die anderen Schüler nicht anstecken.  
Mit freundlichen Grüßen,

Veronika Verletzt



Liebe Frau Fuchs,

ich kann morgen leider nicht an den  
Bundesjugendspielen teilnehmen.  
Ich war skifahren und mein Bein ist  
gebrochen. Mein Bein ist in Gips  
und ich kann nur mit Krücken  
laufen. Der Arzt sagt, ich soll für die  
nächsten acht Wochen keinen Sport  
machen. Es tut mir sehr leid.

Mit freundlichen Grüßen,

Ulli Unfall



Sehr geehrter Herr Müller,

ich kann die Mathearbeit morgen nicht schreiben.

Meine Katze hat gestern mein Mathebuch gefressen\* und hat  
nun Bauchschmerzen.

Der Tierarzt sagt, meine Katze muss still liegen. Sie macht das  
natürlich nicht.

Daher muss ich sie im Arm halten.

Ich weiß, dass in der Schule Haustiere verboten sind. Daher muss  
ich wohl zu Hause bleiben. Meine Eltern können nicht auf meine  
Katze aufpassen. Sie müssen meine kranke Oma in Hamburg  
besuchen. Und außerdem muss ich ein neues Mathebuch kaufen.  
Ich will ja schließlich für meine Mathearbeit lernen.

Ich hoffe, Sie haben für meine Situation Verständnis.

Auf Wiedersehen,

Rosi Prospekt



\*gefressen = eaten

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Veronika hat eine Grippe.
- 2 Ulli kann nicht in die Schule gehen.
- 3 Ulli ist sportlich.
- 4 Rosi darf ihre Katzen nicht in die Schule bringen.
- 5 Rosis Eltern sind nicht zu Hause.

## German illnesses

German speakers get sick just like everybody else, but some of the diseases they come down with are only found in Germany. A *Kreislaufzusammenbruch* seems to be a major health problem in Germany. Another uniquely German phenomenon is a *Hörsturz*. In English, it's called 'acute hearing loss', caused by stress. This illness is, however, not even mentioned in the English version of Wikipedia.

## Hand gestures

Sometimes facial expressions and hand gestures can communicate more than words, but they also vary greatly from culture to culture. Tapping your temple or forehead with your index finger in a German-speaking country means, 'That's crazy'. Waving your hand in front of your face means, 'You've got to be kidding me'.

## So ist Deutsch!

### Wie geht's?

When you ask a German speaker this question, be prepared for an extended response regarding their wellbeing. It is not used as a greeting, as it is in English. The answer might not be as straightforward as expected.

**Mir geht's gut. /  
Es geht mir gut.**

I am well.

**Mir ist pudelwohl.**

I am well/happy  
like a pig in mud.

*Notice that the German  
uses a different animal.  
Can you work out what it is?*

**Mir geht's nicht so gut.**

I am not so well.

**Mir ist schlecht.**

I feel sick.

*This implies that you  
might be going to vomit.*

So why do German speakers use *mir* instead of *ich*? Let's go back to the question.

The full expression of *Wie geht's?* is actually *Wie geht es dir?* (when talking to friends and family members). *Wie geht es Ihnen?* is the polite form of this enquiry, used among adults who don't know each other well, or when a young person is addressing an older person who is not a family member.

Why is there no *du/dich* or *Sie*? Germans describe how something around them affects how they feel.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Can you work out how many words are used to form *Kreislaufzusammenbruch*, and what it means in English? What does each individual word mean?
- Why are these illnesses more common in Germany?
- Do you know any health-related words that are unique to a language you know?
- What hand gestures do you use in your language? Are they the same as in German?

It is a different way of looking at the world. That's why you can't answer with *Ich bin gut*, which to a German means literally, 'I am a good person', emphasising behaviour or quality. This contrasts with the English usage of the same term, which implies 'I am well'.

If you say *Mir geht's gut*, you are saying 'To me it is good' (i.e. 'The environment is affecting me positively').

You also say *Mir ist heiß* or *Mir ist kalt*, as it is the outside world affecting your state of being. It is the temperature that is making a person feel hot or cold.

### Apotheke oder Drogerie?

People in Germany cannot buy pain medication in supermarkets or department stores. The German authorities feel that substance abuse is less likely to occur if people have to buy all medication (prescribed or recommended by a doctor) in *Apotheken*, where they can consult pharmacists and talk about possible side effects. *Apotheken* sell pain and prescription medication, while *Drogerien* sell cosmetics, sanitary products, herbal remedies and vitamins.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why do you think there is a separation between *Apotheken* and *Drogerien*? What does it imply or tell you about German culture?
- What types of chemists and other retailers for prescribed medications are there in your country?



## 1 Aua ... das tut weh!

The strong verb *wehtun* is used to describe suffering and pain. It is a **separable verb**. The prefix *weh* is separated from the stem *tun* and is moved to the end of the sentence. The verb *tun* by itself means 'to do'.

Mein Fuß **tut** sehr **weh**. Literally: My foot **does** very much **hurt**.  
 Mein Bein **tut** **weh**. Literally: My leg **does** hurt.  
 Meine Ohren **tun** **weh**. Literally: My ears **do** hurt.

Here is how you conjugate *wehtun*. It is mainly used with *er/sie/es* and *sie* (pl.).

	wehtun to hurt; to ache	Singular	Plural
ich	tue ... weh	Mein ... tut weh. z.B. Mein Fuß tut weh.	Meine ... tun weh. z.B. Meine Füße tun weh.
du	tust ... weh		
er, sie, es	tut ... weh	Meine ... tut weh. z.B. Meine Hand tut weh.	Meine ... tun weh. z.B. Meine Hände tun weh.
wir	tun ... weh		
ihr	tut ... weh	Mein ... tut weh. z.B. Mein Ohr tut weh.	Meine ... tun weh. z.B. Meine Ohren tun weh.
sie, Sie	tun ... weh		

## 2 Reflexive Verben

Ich muss **mich** doch nur kurz **duschen**.  
 Ich kann **mich** nicht **konzentrieren**.  
 Max **zieht sich** an.  
 Ich **wasche mir** die Hände.

Verbs such as *sich waschen*, *sich duschen*, *sich schminken*, *sich rasieren*, *sich umziehen*, *sich anziehen*, *sich konzentrieren* and *sich treffen mit* are called **reflexive verbs**, because their subject and object both refer to the same person or thing. The reflexive pronoun always refers back to the subject or 'doer' of the sentence.

Ich dusche **mich**. Max zieht **sich** an.

German speakers are very precise. The literal meanings of the text above are 'I shower myself' and 'Max dresses himself', which avoids confusion over who or what is being washed or dressed.

Normally, the reflexive pronoun will be accusative. However, if the verb already has an accusative object, such as in the sentences **b** below, then the reflexive pronoun will be dative.

**a** Ich wasche **mich**.  
**b** Ich wasche **mir** die Hände.  
**a** Du ziehst **dich** an.  
**b** Du ziehst **dir** die Schuhe an.

Here is a table with both the accusative and dative pronouns.

Person	Accusative reflexive pronoun	Dative reflexive pronoun
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
er, sie, es	sich	sich
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
sie, Sie	sich	sich

Note: The accusative reflexive pronouns are similar to the regular accusative pronouns in *Thema 2* but, in the third person singular and plural, there is only one form of the reflexive pronoun for all genders: *sich*.

The accusative and dative reflexive pronouns are almost identical apart from the *ich*- and *du*- forms.

Watch out for the word order: in a simple, one-verb sentence with standard word order, the reflexive pronoun comes directly after the verb. If the verb is separable, the reflexive pronoun stands between the verb and its separated prefix.

Du duschst **dich**.  
 Die Kinder ziehen **sich** um.  
 Du putzt **dir** die Zähne.

A dictionary will always tell you if a verb is reflexive by adding the *sich* in front of the verb (e.g. *sich duschen*).



## Parts of the body

der Arm (e)	arm
der Bauch (‘e)	stomach
der Ellbogen (-)	elbow
der Finger (-)	finger
der Fuß (‘e)	foot
der Hals (‘e)	throat, neck
der Kopf (‘e)	head
der Mund (‘er)	mouth
der Rücken (-)	back
der Zahn (‘e)	tooth
der Zeh (en)	toe
die Hand (‘e)	hand
die Lippe (n)	lip
die Nase (n)	nose
die Schulter (n)	shoulder
die Stirn (en)	forehead
das Auge (n)	eye
das Bein (e)	leg
das Gesicht (er)	face
das Kinn (e)	chin
das Knie (-)	knee
das Ohr (en)	ear

## Ailments and cures

der Schmerz (en)	ache, pain
Bauchschmerzen haben	to have a stomach ache
Halsschmerzen haben	to have a sore throat
Ohrenschmerzen haben	to have an earache
Kopfschmerzen haben	to have a headache
der Schnupfen	sniffles
der Heuschnupfen	hay fever
der Unfall (‘e)	accident
die Erkältung (en)	cold
die Grippe	flu
die Krücke (n)	crutches
die Tablette (n)	tablet
die Zahnspange (n)	braces (teeth)
das Fieber	temperature
das Medikament (e)	medication

## Other medical words

der Arzt (‘e)	male doctor
die Ärztin (nen)	female doctor
das Krankenhaus (‘er)	hospital
das Spital (‘er)	hospital

## Verbs

sich anziehen	to get dressed
sich ausruhen	to rest
sich duschen	to have a shower
sich erkälten	to catch a cold
sich freuen auf	to look forward to
sich konzentrieren	to concentrate
sich langweilen	to be bored
sich rasieren	to shave
sich schminken	to put on make-up
sich treffen mit	to meet with
sich umziehen	to get changed
sich waschen	to wash
erkältet sein	to have a cold
fühlen	to feel
wehtun	to feel sore, to ache

## Adjectives

blass	pale
eng	tight
gebrochen	broken
geschwollen	swollen
gesund	healthy
krank	sick
müde	tired
ohnmächtig	faint
topfit	in top form
verletzt	injured
wenig	less
wohl	well

## Useful expressions

du Arme/r!	you poor thing!
Gesundheit!	Bless you!
Mit freundlichen Grüßen	Kind regards
Mir geht's ...	I feel ...
Mir ist schlecht.	I am feeling unwell.
Verständnis haben für	to have an understanding for
Was ist los?	What is the matter/wrong?
Was ist passiert?	What happened?
Wie geht's?	How are you? (informal)
Wie geht es dir?	How are you? (informal)
Wie geht es Ihnen?	How are you? (formal)
Zum Donnerwetter!	Damn it!

# Das bisschen Haushalt ...

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ talk about household chores
- ☑ talk about different rooms in a house
- ☑ talk about what must/should be done
- ☑ express dismay
- ☑ express compromise
- ☑ use the perfect tense with regular and irregular verbs (also separable verbs).

You will also learn about:

- ☑ housing in German-speaking countries, including alternative housing
- ☑ where this housing is (cities, countryside ...)
- ☑ how people live in and care for their houses
- ☑ who is responsible for doing household chores in German-speaking countries
- ☑ Household appliances and products commonly used in German-speaking countries.

While some people in German-speaking countries live in a rural setting, most people live in cities. As we've read before, the people who live in the cities generally live in rented accommodation, usually in multi-apartment buildings.

Because of the lack of space and dense populations in cities in German-speaking countries, people have come up with creative solutions for housing. Communal housing schemes are booming in cities such as Berlin and Leipzig. Tiny houses are becoming more popular and there is a *Wagendorf* (caravan/trailer park) in Karow, north of Berlin. Colonies of houseboats can be found in the waterways around Berlin, Leipzig and Hamburg.

Germans are very community-minded, and social housing projects meet the needs of all types of people, including new immigrants, older citizens and those with limited or uncertain incomes. People also share accommodation and expenses in *Wohngemeinschaften* (residential communities).

People in German-speaking countries love their homes and make them as comfortable as possible. Even though they often live in apartments, they still love to surround themselves with greenery, such as beautiful pot plants.

istock.com/4499



Die Familie Heinz wohnt auf dem Land.



Wir wohnen in der Stadtmitte.



Unser Haus ist klein, aber bequem.



Wir wohnen in der Nähe von Berlin.

Bauwagen als Wohnwagen genutzt in Berlin-Alt-Treptow



**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- What do you think is a creative alternative to common types of housing? Discuss this with a classmate.
- Are there any unique or unusual types of housing where you live? Find out if there are any communities like those mentioned here in the area where you live.
- What type of alternative housing would you like to live in? Explain.

Alamy Stock Photo/Agencja Fotograficzna Caro

## DEUTSCHE, ÖSTERREICHISCHE UND SCHWEIZERISCHE PRODUKTE



Eine Bosch Waschmaschine

Shutterstock.com/Gregorz Czapski

German companies are renowned throughout the world as producers of quality electrical appliances and tools. Such companies include Miele, Gaggenau, Loewe, AEG and Bosch. Some well-known Austrian makers of household items include Swarovski and Schwarzkopf. Switzerland is known for watchmaking and quality appliances (e.g. JURA), fine chocolate (e.g. Lindt), as well as other brands such as Maggi and Nescafé.

People in German-speaking countries are also known for choosing environmentally friendly products to use in their homes, and Germany is a world leader in domestic recycling and clean energy production. For example, people in Germany have reduced plastic waste by using cloth shopping bags and reducing packaging. Also, their homes are built according to strict environmental guidelines; for example, houses must have double glazing and insulation.



Lindt Schokolade



Knorr Suppen

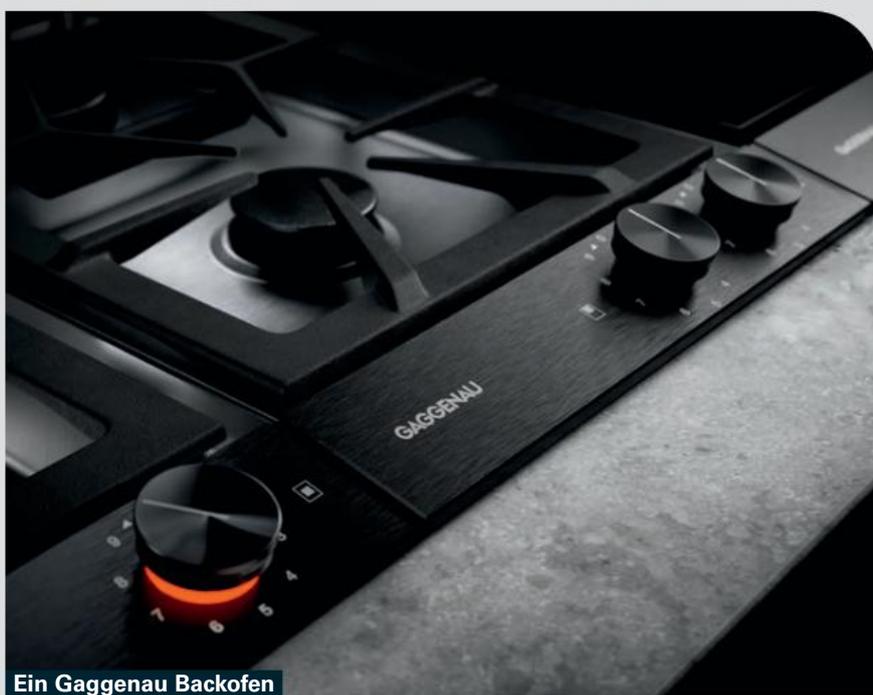
Shutterstock.com/Cineberg

Shutterstock.com/Cineberg



Eine Schweizer Uhr

Shutterstock.com/Radu Gheorghita



Ein Gaggenau Backofen

Image supplied by Gaggenau



Wiederverwendbare deutsche Einkaufstaschen mit Recycling

123RF.com/magesso\_uceprem

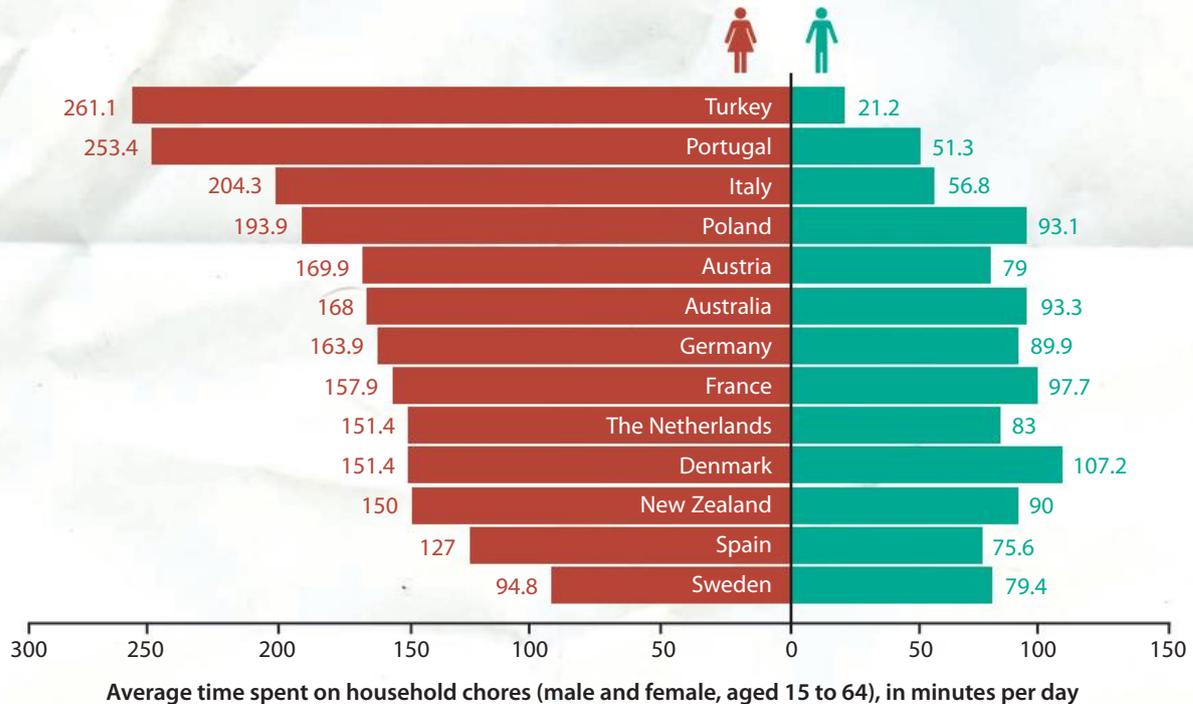
### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Discuss these questions with a classmate.

- Which of the German, Austrian and Swiss brands have you heard of?
- What German, Austrian or Swiss brands of household items can be purchased here in Australia?
- Check at home. Do any appliances or other items in your home come from Germany, Austria or Switzerland?
- Do some research on one of the brands mentioned above. Find out where their items are available, and their quality, price and uses.

**WER MACHT WAS ZU HAUSE?**

*Das bisschen Haushalt macht sich von allein, sagt mein Mann* (That little bit of housework takes care of itself, my husband says), proclaimed the German pop tune 'Das bisschen Haushalt' in the 1970s. At that time in German family life, as well as in many other developed countries, it was common for a husband/father to work and a wife/mother to stay at home and look after the household and the children. But family profiles have evolved greatly over time. Despite the fact that nowadays both men and women work outside the home, it is still the case that women do much more of the housework than men if they are part of a heterosexual couple.



Source: Statista and Zeit Online (2014 data), and Stats NZ (2009 data).  
This work is based on Stats NZ's data which are licensed by Stats NZ for re-use under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence.

**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- How are chores and tasks divided at your house? Who does what?
- What do you think of having to do housework?
- Compare your household to the statistics of Europe and your country. How does your household compare?

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Minihaus**

Design your own tiny house or houseboat. Present it as a poster, with all the features labelled in German. Include a paragraph describing your dwelling.

**PROJEKT 3 Wer macht was zu Hause?**

- Find some pictures of the rooms of your home (or a house like it) and describe who does what in each room.
- Explain how and what you do to recycle. Conduct some research to find out if this is similar in German-speaking households.

**PROJEKT 2 Umweltfreundliche Haushaltsprodukte**

Create an advertisement for an environmentally friendly household product. Here are a few ideas.

- Pur und Picobello – ein Waschmittel ohne Chemikalien!
- Waschtücher aus Pflanzenmaterialien, kann man auf den Komposthaufen werfen.
- Vom Haushalt in den Komposthaufen – Produkte aus der Natur!
- Einkaufstüten aus Stoff



## Bei Julia



**Julia** Anna, Christian und Max kommen gleich, Mama. Wir wollen ins Kino gehen.

**Julias Mutter** Hast du denn deine Hausarbeit schon gemacht?

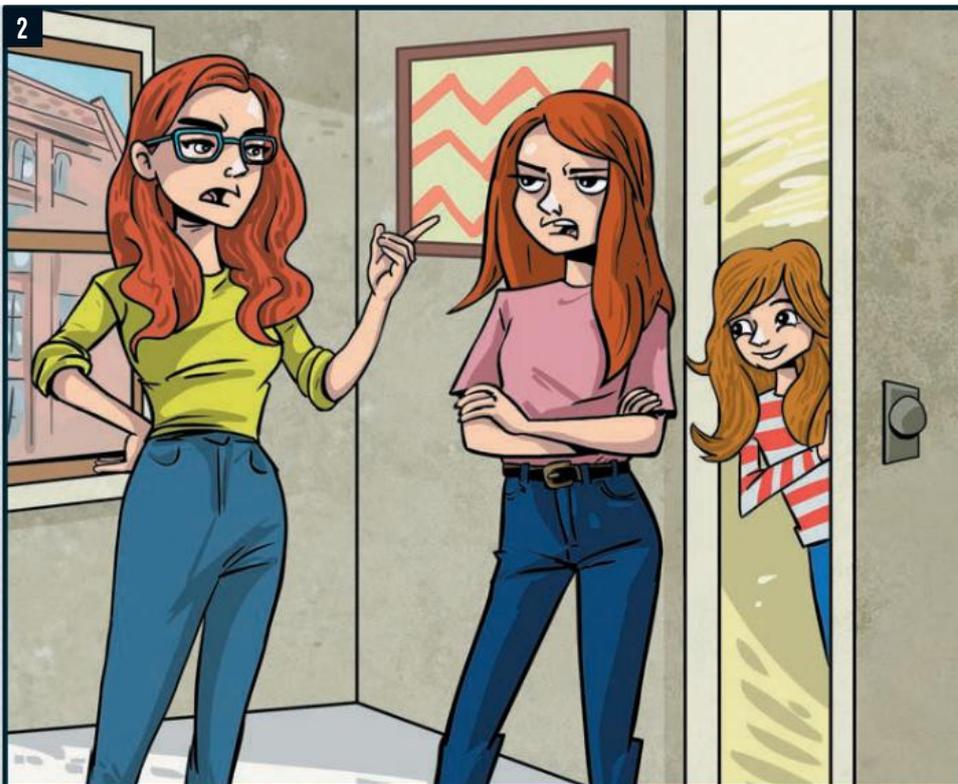
**Julia** Ich bin fast fertig. Ich habe die Spülmaschine eingeräumt und Charlies Käfig sauber gemacht. Mama, ich muss mich jetzt wirklich anziehen.

**Julias Mutter** Nicht so schnell! Hast du dein Schlafzimmer aufgeräumt?

**Julia** Ach, das kann ich doch später machen. Bitte! Ich muss mich jetzt wirklich, wirklich, wirklich anziehen!!

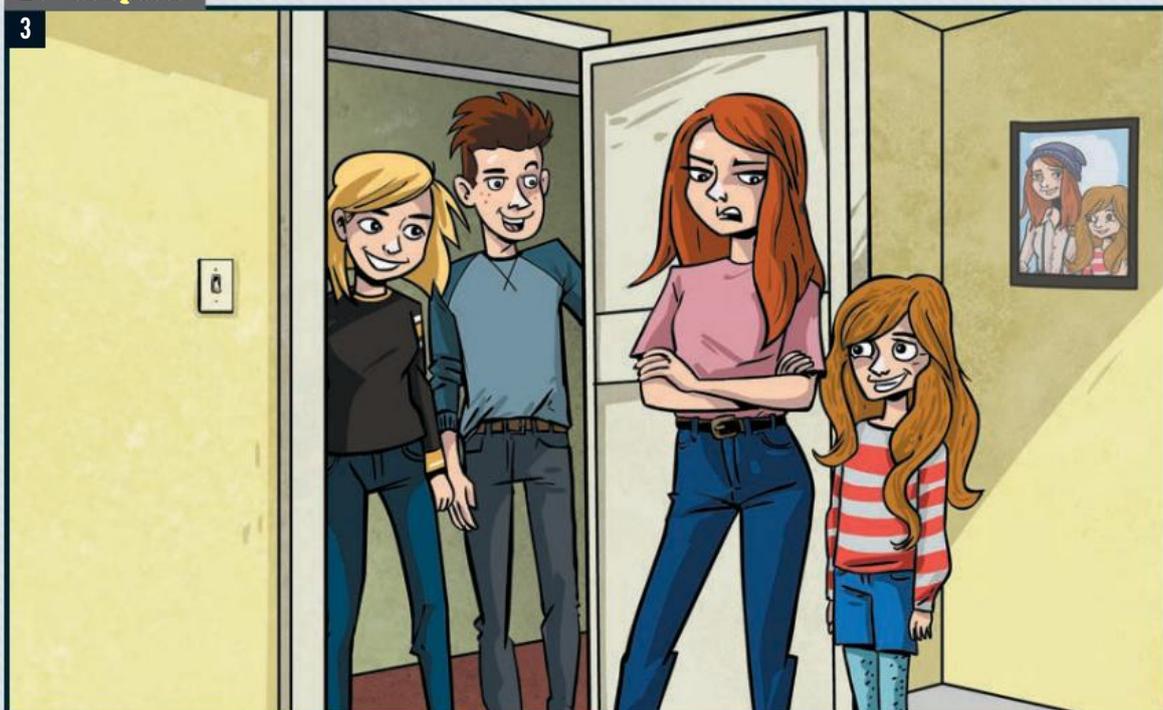
**Julias Mutter** Nein, das geht aber nicht, Julia. Du musst erst deine Arbeit machen, dann darfst du ausgehen.

**Julia** Das ist unfair. Ich habe die Spülmaschine eingeräumt, Staub gesaugt und den Müll rausgebracht. Nina hat nicht einmal ihr Zimmer aufgeräumt. So ein Mist!



## Etwas später

3



**Nina** Welchen Film seht ihr?

**Julia** Einen neuen Film aus Australien. Jessie hat ihn schon gesehen. Hallo, Max und Anna! Gut, dass ihr hier seid. Mama geht mir so auf die Nerven!

**Max** Was ist denn los?

**Julia** Ich bin die Putzfrau hier. Ich habe alles aufgeräumt und Nina hat überhaupt nicht geholfen. Sie ist total verwöhnt.

**Max** Genau wie mein Bruder Boris.

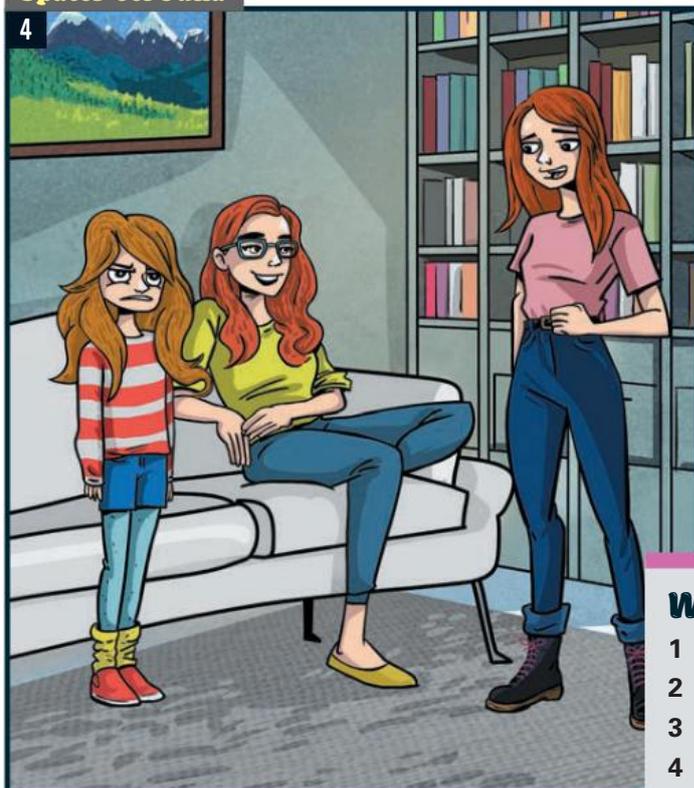
**Julia** Musst du auch zu Hause helfen, Anna?

**Anna** Na, klar. Wir sind nur zwei und Mama und ich haben die Arbeit immer geteilt.

**Julia** Deine Mutter ist aber lieb. Du hast ja so ein Glück.

## Später bei Julia

4



**Julias Mutter** Da bist du ja wieder. Wie war der Film?

**Julia** Nicht schlecht. ... Mama, du bist doch nicht böse auf mich, oder?

**Julias Mutter** Julia, wir müssen einen Kompromiss treffen: Nina soll jeden Samstag Staub saugen und Charlies Käfig sauber machen. Du sollst jeden Freitag den Müll rausbringen und Staub wischen. Ist das besser?

**Julia** Viel besser! Das ist ein guter Kompromiss.

**Nina** So ein Mist!

**WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?**

- 1 Wohin wollen die Freunde gehen?
- 2 Was hat Julia gemacht?
- 3 Was wollen die Freunde machen?
- 4 Wann muss Nina Charlies Käfig sauber machen?
- 5 Was muss Julia jeden Freitag machen?

## 1 Was musst du im Haushalt machen?



### Im Schlafzimmer



### Im Badezimmer



### In der Küche



### Im Wohnzimmer



### Im Esszimmer



### Im Garten



Was musst du im Haushalt machen?

Ich muss **das Auto waschen** und **den Rasen mähen**.

Ich muss **die Spülmaschine einräumen** und **ausräumen, mein Bett machen** und **das Badezimmer putzen**. Und du?


**MACH MIT!**

- 1 Take turns to read the dialogue with a partner.
- 2 Vary your conversation by choosing different chores for the bold words.

**MACH MIT!**

- 1 Work in groups. Ask five students the question 'Was musst du im Haushalt machen?' Create a table like the example below and record the answers.

Name	kochen	mein Bett machen	Staub wischen	den Müll rausbringen	die Spülmaschine ausräumen	das Auto waschen	den Rasen mähen
Tom		✓		✓	✓		✓

- 2 Write a report based on the data you have collected.

## 2 Hast du die Hausarbeit schon gemacht?



Hanna, Finn und Anton (Finn) **kommen** gleich, Mama. Wir (er) **wollen** ins Kino gehen. Dürfen Dieter und ich mitgehen?

Ich (wir) **bin** fast fertig. Ich (wir) **habe** die Spülmaschine eingeräumt und ich (Dieter) **habe** Ritas Käfig sauber gemacht. Mama, ich (wir) **muss** mich (uns) jetzt wirklich anziehen.

Ach, das **kann** ich (wir) doch später machen. Bitte!

**Hast** du (ihr) denn die Hausarbeit schon gemacht?

Nicht so schnell! **Hast** du (ihr) dein (euer) Schlafzimmer aufgeräumt?

Nein. Du (ihr) **musst** erst deine (eure) Arbeit machen, dann **darfst** du (ihr) ausgehen.


**MACH MIT!**

- 1 Perform the dialogue.
- 2 Change the conversation using the names/pronouns in brackets. Make any necessary changes to the **verb conjugations**.

## What's the rule?

In English, when you write a sentence describing what usually happens, or what is happening now, you write it in the present tense. This is because of the connection with present time. With a classmate, write two sentences in English in present tense. Then study these two German sentences to discover something about German. What differences and similarities do you notice between English and German?



In English, sentences in which you are describing something that has already happened are written in past tense. Rewrite your English sentences in the past tense. Then study the way the German present tense sentences are changed to the past tense, especially for speaking.



- What do you notice about both sets of sentences in English *and* German?
- How has the German sentence been changed to reflect past events?
- What are the steps you took to change your English sentences so that they reflect past events?
- Try to generate a set of rules to follow.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Read extracts 1–6 from the cartoon story with a classmate. For each one, work out the 'word-for-word meaning' and the 'everyday' English meaning. Which words do you need to change or add to arrive at an 'everyday' English meaning?

Try to find some other examples.

- 1 ... das geht aber nicht, Julia.
- 2 Nina hat nicht einmal ihr Zimmer aufgeräumt.
- 3 Mensch, gut dass ihr hier seid.
- 4 Na, klar.
- 5 Du hast ja so ein Glück.
- 6 Wir müssen einen Kompromiss treffen.

## Wie ordentlich bist du?



**1** Deine Mutter sagt, du musst dein Zimmer aufräumen und dein Bett machen. Was machst du?

- A** Du räumst dein Zimmer auf und machst dein Bett. (2 Punkte)
- B** Du räumst dein Zimmer auf, aber machst dein Bett nicht. Als Entschuldigung sagst du, dass du abends sowieso wieder ins Bett gehst und es dir dann total egal ist, ob das Bett gemacht ist oder nicht. (5 Punkte)
- C** Du sagst deiner Mutter, dass Eminem nie sein Zimmer aufräumen muss und gemachte Betten total uncool sind. Du gehst mit deinen Freunden ins Kino. (7 Punkte)



**2** Musst du viel im Haushalt helfen?

- A** Ja, ich muss jeden Tag die Spülmaschine ausräumen, staubsaugen, staubwischen, das Bad putzen, Egons Käfig sauber machen und mein Zimmer aufräumen. (0 Punkte)
- B** Ich muss manchmal den Rasen mähen und das Auto waschen, aber nicht jeden Tag. (4 Punkte)
- C** Theoretisch ja, praktisch nein! Ich helfe überhaupt nicht! (4 Punkte)



**3** Hilft dein Bruder/deine Schwester auch im Haushalt?

- A** Nein, er/sie ist total verwöhnt. Ich muss alles machen. (1 Punkt)
- B** Ja, wir teilen die Arbeit immer. (3 Punkte)
- C** Ja klar, ich helfe überhaupt nicht und mein Bruder/meine Schwester macht die ganze Hausarbeit. Das ist fair! oder Ich habe keine Geschwister. Meine Eltern machen alles. (6 Punkte)



**4** Wirst du für Hausarbeit bezahlt?

- A** Nein, nie. Ich helfe gern, auch ohne Geld! (2 Punkte)
- B** Manchmal bekomme ich €5, wenn ich das Auto wasche. Auch für den Rasen mähen bekomme ich ein bisschen. Ungefähr €4. (4 Punkte)
- C** Für €10 räume ich mein Zimmer auf, aber das ist zu teuer für meine Eltern. Mein Bruder / meine Schwester räumen alles umsonst auf. Nur wenn er/sie meine Hausarbeit macht, muss ich ihm/ihr €5 geben. (10 Punkte)



**5–9 Punkte:** Du bist die Putzhilfe! Du hilfst zuviel im Haushalt und hast keine Hobbys, Freunde oder Freizeit! Deine Geschwister sind total verwöhnt und helfen überhaupt nicht.

**10–16 Punkte:** Deine Familie teilt die Arbeit. Deine Geschwister helfen auch im Haushalt und ihr habt einen Kompromiss getroffen. Das ist fair!

**17–32 Punkte:** Du bist total verwöhnt und hilfst überhaupt nicht! Du gehst allen auf die Nerven und deine Geschwister und Eltern sind deine Putzhilfen. Das ist total unfair!

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

Complete the survey and add up your scores. Use the guide to work out whether you help too much or not enough around the house.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Which household chores are there to do in your home?
- Which household chores do you like/dislike doing?
- Do you have a routine in your household for cleaning or doing chores?
- Who does what in and around your home?
- Is the division of labour fair? Why or why not?

### 'Das bisschen Haushalt'

- 1** Das bisschen Haushalt macht sich von allein,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Das bisschen Haushalt kann so schlimm nicht sein,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Wie eine Frau sich überhaupt beklagen kann,  
ist unbegreiflich,  
sagt mein Mann.
- 2** Das bisschen Kochen ist doch halb so wild,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Was für den Abwasch ganz genauso gilt,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Wie eine Frau von heut darüber stöhnen kann,  
ist ihm ein Rätsel,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Und was mein Mann sagt, stimmt haargenau.  
Ich muss das wissen, ich bin ja seine Frau.
- 3** Das bisschen Wäsche ist doch kein Problem,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Und auch das Bügeln schafft man ganz bequem,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Wie eine Frau von heut da gleich verzweifeln kann,  
ist nicht zu fassen,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Und was mein Mann sagt stimmt haargenau,  
ich muss das wissen, ich bin ja seine Frau.
- 4** Das bisschen Garten, oh, wie wohl das tut,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Das Rasenschneiden ist für den Kreislauf gut,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Wie eine Frau von heut das nicht begreifen kann,  
ist unverständlich,  
sagt mein Mann.
- 5** Er muss zur Firma geh'n, tagein tagaus  
sagt mein Mann.  
Die Frau Gemahlin ruht sich aus zu Haus,  
sagt mein Mann.  
Dass ich auf Knien meinem Schöpfer danken kann,  
wie gut ich's habe,  
sagt mein Mann.



## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Read the song lyrics with a classmate, then match each verse with a summary (a–e) from the list below.
  - a Cooking and washing up is fine. It's a puzzle as to why anyone would complain.
  - b Housework does itself and can't be so bad. How can you complain?
  - c Going to work day in, day out is tough. I don't get to relax at home. Still, I have a good life.
  - d Washing and ironing is easy. There's no doubt.
  - e Doing the gardening is good for you!
- 2 Who are the two family members mentioned in the song?
- 3 Which words/phrases are repeated?
- 4 Find some household places or chores mentioned in the song.
- 5 With your classmates, choose a verse and try to translate the whole verse into English.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- When was this song written? What makes you say that?
- Who is responsible for the household chores in 'Das bisschen Haushalt'?
- Who is responsible for working outside the house?
- How do the different people feel about this? Find some evidence for your opinions.
- How would you change the song title to reflect the division of domestic labour in modern times?

## Schreibtipps

*Staub saugen* or *staubsaugen* and *Staub wischen* or *staubwischen*, but: *sauber machen*.

*Staub saugen*, *Staub wischen* and *sauber machen* are conjugated as separable verbs.

Ich **saug**e im Esszimmer **Staub**. Ich **wisch**e in der Küche **Staub**. Ich **mach**e das ganze Haus **sauber**.

*Staubsaugen* and *staubwischen* are conjugated the same as other non-separable verbs.

Ich **staubsaug**e im Esszimmer. Ich **staubwisch**e in der Küche. Ich **mach**e das ganze Haus **sauber**.





## Das Perfekt

### Schwache Verben

Most verbs form the perfect tense by using the correct form of *haben* and a **past participle**.

Some verbs use *sein* and a **past participle**, but you will study these in later chapters.

*Haben* is an **auxiliary verb**. As in English, it helps to form the perfect tense.

**Hast** du deine Hausarbeit **gemacht**? → *Have you done your chores?*

Ich **habe** das Badezimmer **geputzt**. → *I have cleaned the bathroom.*

Weak or regular verbs form the past participle by adding *ge + stem + t*.

Reminder: the **stem** of the verb is the **infinitive** of the verb with the 'en' taken off.

The past participle never changes!

	<b>kochen</b> to cook	<b>teilen</b> to share	<b>putzen</b> to clean
ich	habe ... gekocht	habe ... geteilt	habe ... geputzt
du	hast ... gekocht	hast ... geteilt	hast ... geputzt
er, sie, es	hat ... gekocht	hat ... geteilt	hat ... geputzt
wir	haben ... gekocht	haben ... geteilt	haben... geputzt
ihr	habt... gekocht	habt ...geteilt	habt ... geputzt
sie, Sie	haben ... gekocht	haben ... geteilt	haben ... geputzt

### Starke Verben

Many strong or irregular verbs also use *haben* as an auxiliary verb. They often have irregular past participles and need to be looked up in a verb table, which is often found in dictionaries. These verbs need to be memorised. See page 225 for a table of irregular verbs that you have learnt in *Ganz Klasse*.

Er hat die Fenster **gewaschen**. (infinitive: *waschen*)

Ihr habt der Lehrerin **geholfen**. (infinitive: *helfen*)

### Trennbare Verben im Perfekt

When using the past participle of separable verbs, *ge* needs to be inserted between the prefix and the stem.

*staubwischen*

Ich habe gestern staub**ge**wischt.

*rausbringen*

Hast du heute schon den Müll raus**ge**bracht, Kerstin?

Separable verbs can be weak or strong, and form the past participle accordingly.

Wir haben die Hausarbeit geteilt.  
Ich habe gekocht, das Badezimmer geputzt und den Müll rausgebracht.



Und ich habe staubgewischt und das Auto in der Garage gewaschen.

Shutterstock.com/WAYHOME studio



## Nouns

der Garten (~-)	garden
der Haushalt (e)	household
der Käfig (e)	cage
der Komposthaufen (-)	compost heap
der Kompromiss (e)	compromise
der Müll (-)	rubbish
der Rasen (-)	lawn
der Tisch (e)	table
der Wohnwagen (-)	caravan
die Arbeit (en)	work
die Einkaufstüte (n)	shopping bag
die Hausarbeit (en)	housework
die Küche (n)	kitchen
die Natur (no pl.)	nature
die Pflanze (n)	plant
die Putzfrau (en)	cleaning lady
die Spülmaschine (n)	dishwasher
das Auto (s)	car
das Badezimmer (-)	bathroom
das Bett (en)	bed
das Esszimmer (-)	dining room
das Fenster (-)	window
das Kino (s)	cinema
das Material (ien)	materials, products
das Rätsel	riddle
das Schlafzimmer (-)	bedroom
das Waschmittel (-)	washing detergent
das Waschtuch	wash cloth
das Wohnzimmer (-)	living room
das Zimmer (-)	room

## Verbs

abwaschen (abgewaschen)	to do the washing up
aufräumen (aufgeräumt)	to clean up
austräumen (ausgeräumt)	to unpack (dishwasher); to clean out (cupboard)
bügeln (gebügelt)	to iron
den Tisch decken (gedeckt)	to set (the table)
einräumen (eingeräumt)	to pack away
helfen (geholfen)	to help
kochen (gekocht)	to cook
mähen (gemäht)	to mow
putzen (geputzt)	to clean
rausbringen (rausgebracht)	to put out
recyclen (recycelt)	to recycle
sauber machen (sauber gemacht)	to clean
schaffen (geschafft)	to achieve, to manage
staubsaugen (staubgesaugt)	to vacuum
staubwischen (staubgewischt)	to dust
stimmen (gestimmt)	to be correct
stöhnen (gestöhnt)	to groan
teilen (geteilt)	to share
verzweifeln	to doubt
waschen (gewaschen)	to wash
werfen (geworfen)	to throw

## Adjectives

bequem	comfortable
fertig	finished, ready
haargenau	exactly right, spot on
sauber	clean
schlimm	terrible
umweltfreundlich	environmentally friendly
unfair	unfair
(von) allein	alone, itself
verwöhnt	spoiled

## Useful expressions

Das ist unfair!	That is unfair!
... geht mir auf die Nerven!	... get(s) on my nerves!
genauso gilt	is worth or is valid
So ein Mist!	Oh no! That's terrible!



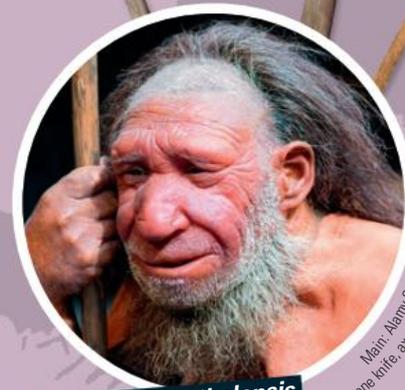
# KLASSE KULTUR 1

## GESCHICHTE UND POLITIK

### Early German history

The area that is now called Germany has been home to human beings for hundreds of thousands of years. Prehistoric remains of early humans were found in the Neander valley near Düsseldorf; hence the name 'Neanderthals'. These people are thought to have lived throughout Europe between 150 000 and 35 000 years ago.

Examining Germany's evolution into the country it is today isn't possible without talking about the movement of peoples and the shifts in power that happened throughout the centuries.



**Homo neanderthalensis**

Main: Alamy Stock Photo/urbanmyth; Stone knife, axe and spear: Shutterstock.com/pretapan



**An archaeological dig site in Germany**

Alamy Stock Photo/Agencia Fotograficzna Caro

### The coming of the tribes

The Romans played a key role in the development of European civilisation. Sometime after 1000 BCE (Before the Common Era), tribes began to migrate from Northern Europe into the area now known as Germany. Their people lived by hunting and farming. The Romans called these tribes Germani, though this term encompassed many other tribes, such as the Goths and the Franks. The Romans tried to conquer these tribes in the year 9 CE (Common Era), but were unsuccessful. Before this defeat, the Romans claimed much of what is now Western Europe, including Germany. Trier was near the northern border of the Roman Empire and is the oldest city in Germany. It was the residential seat of Maximian, ruler of the Western Roman Empire in the third century CE.



**The ruins of the Porta Nigra (Black Gate) in Trier, Germany. In Roman times, this was one of four large city gates.**

Shutterstock.com/Mikhail Markovskiy



**The Western Roman Empire, c. 284 CE, at the height of its power and influence**

### The Franks

One of the Germanic tribes, the Franks, expanded their homelands to include much of what was formerly part of the Western Roman Empire. In 486 CE, Clovis, a Frankish king, fought other Germanic tribes and gained territory. He became a Christian and introduced Roman systems. This resulted in relatively well-organised cities and a new level of stability.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What were the names of some of the other so-called Northern tribes, apart from the Germani?
- Have you heard any of these tribe names before? What do you know about them?
- Why do you think these people moved from one part of Europe (as we now call it) to another?
- What is the name for *Deutschland* in other languages/countries? Where do we get the name 'Germany'?

## Charlemagne and beyond

The most powerful of the Franks, Charlemagne (*Karl der Große*), came to power in 768 CE. He supported Christianity and during his reign agricultural methods and trade improved. Education, culture and art were encouraged. After the end of Charlemagne's reign, the Saxon royal families gained power and it was under a Saxon monarch, Frederick I, that the territories were called the Holy Roman Empire. Christianity, as the name of the empire suggests, underpinned its stability. It reinforced the feudal system, under which it had been developing since the reign of Clovis.

Alamy Stock Photo/Peter Horree



Charlemagne was King of the Franks from 768 CE, and Roman Emperor from 800 CE.



The Holy Roman Empire, c. 1100 CE

### PROJEKTE

#### PROJEKT 1

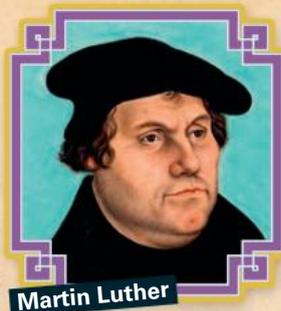
Use the research questions below to find out more about Clovis, Charlemagne and Frederick I. Present your research in a report that includes a timeline of their reigns, at least three changes they made to the previous administration, and ways that they improved their kingdoms (in your opinion).

- What happened to the Franks? Who ruled after them? Why did they lose their power?
- Who were the Prussians and where did they live? How did they gain importance and power? Find their territories and strongholds on a map.
- What other family groups arose and played a part in the history of Germany from the 12th to the 19th centuries?

#### PROJEKT 2

Religion, the arts and technology played a central role in the history of Germany and Austria. Use the research questions below to find out more about each of the influential people listed.

- Find out about Martin Luther and his impact on religion in the history of Germany.
- Which other religious leaders or movements were also important during Germany's development?
- What is Johannes Gutenberg known for?
- What impact do you think Gutenberg had on German or European civilisation?
- Find out about the work of Johann Wolfgang von Goethe.
- Choose a German or Austrian composer from the Classical period, such as Brahms or Mozart, and find out where they worked and what influenced them.



Martin Luther



Johannes Gutenberg



Johann Wolfgang von Goethe



Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart

Left to right: Alamy Stock Photo/FineArt; Getty Images/Heritage Images; Dreamstime.com/Biserko; Alamy Stock Photo/GL Archive



### TIMELINE 1

#### Early history to the creation of a nation

c. 1000 BCE	Tribes from northern Europe begin to arrive in what is now known as Germany.
486 CE	Clovis, a member of the Frankish tribe, comes to power and extends his territory.
786	Charlemagne comes to power.
800	Charlemagne is crowned emperor of the Romans.
962	Otto 1 is crowned emperor of what will later become the Holy Roman Empire.
1438	The Holy Roman Empire continues, but is taken over by the Habsburg family of Austria.
1517	The Reformation begins, with Martin Luther criticising the teachings of the Roman Catholic Church.
1618–48	Religious rivalries lead to the Thirty Years' War, which devastates much of Germany.
1740–86	Frederick the Great makes Prussia a great power.
1815	The German Confederation is established at the Congress of Vienna.
1866	Prussia forces Austria out of German affairs.
1870–1	Germany defeats France in the Franco-Prussian War and the German Empire is founded.

### Towards unification and the creation of the united Kingdom of Germany

It wasn't until the reign of Frederick the Great in the 18th century that Germany, in particular within Prussia, knew great power and extended its territory. Frederick the Great was a member of the Hohenzollern family, who had worked to develop a large, well-trained army, and improved infrastructure, industry and agriculture.

By the late 18th century, the French Revolution had resulted in many changes and conflicts in Europe. After the revolution, and Napoleon's rise to power, Prussia became involved in these conflicts and suffered great territorial losses in 1806. The geographical size of Germany evolved during each different era. Under Prussia, it extended much further to the east into what is modern-day Poland and Russia.

In 1815, after the defeat of Napoleon, the Congress of Vienna redrew the European borders that had been created by Napoleon's empire to create a German confederation of 39 states, which included Prussia. Austria remained a dominant power and helped the Prussians gain the territories of Schleswig-Holstein from Denmark. Austrian interference led to a war with the Prussians, which it lost, and later, Austria was excluded from the Federation.

Otto von Bismarck, as the German prime minister, was a key player in the military and political actions that led to the unification of Germany in 1871. The Franco-Prussian war, largely engineered by Bismarck, led to Prussia gaining the territories of Alsace-Lorraine in south-west France.

In 1871, the king of Prussia, Wilhelm I, was declared emperor of a united Germany.



Otto von Bismarck

Shutterstock.com/Everett Historical



The German Empire, 1871

### Outbreak of World War I

During Wilhelm II's reign (1888–1914), two European alliances formed, pitting Germany and Austria-Hungary against Britain, France and Russia. Tensions were high and World War I broke out after the assassination of the Austrian Archduke Franz Ferdinand in Sarajevo (in modern day Bosnia-Herzegovina). Germany supported Austria in its war against Serbia, while Russia supported Serbia. All the countries in both alliances were soon involved.



World War I led to devastation across Europe and the Middle East. Germany's efforts in the war were partly successful but, eventually, its armies were exhausted, supplies were low and on the home front, there was social unrest. This economic and social disorder destabilised Kaiser Wilhelm's reign and he lost the support of the military. He abdicated only days before Germany signed the Armistice ending World War I. This Armistice, ending active fighting, was followed by the Treaty of Versailles, the peace treaty that ended the state of war between the two sides while directing the way forward for all countries.

Following World War I, Germany lost some of its territories and had to pay financial compensation to its opponents. The young Weimar Republic had to deal with the financial difficulties brought about by the war, including the personal devastation it had brought to its citizens. Many feared the rise of communism. The political confusion and the stresses on daily life paved the way for the rise of Hitler, especially after the Great Depression struck in 1929, with devastating impacts around the world.

PROJEKTE

PROJEKT 3

Find out more about one of these important historical figures: Frederick the Great, Napoleon Bonaparte, Otto von Bismarck or Kaiser Wilhelm I or II.

Towards reunification in the 20th century

World War II

Hitler was elected to the position of Chancellor of Germany in 1933. After that, political opponents of his regime were silenced. The attacks against Jews and other vulnerable groups, including the Roma people and homosexuals, intensified. At the same time, Germany was increasing its military power. Austria was annexed in 1938, becoming a part of the German Empire. Despite negotiations with the British, tensions in Europe were increasing. Germany invaded Poland in September 1939 and, shortly after, the United Kingdom declared war on Germany. The deadly conflict lasted until 1945 and had many consequences for Europe and the rest of the world.

A divided and reunified Germany

After Germany was divided in 1945 and West Germany and East Germany were created in 1949, Berlin was divided by a wall, which became symbolic of the split between the two countries. You will learn more about this in *Thema 9*.

The collapse of communist East Germany became a reality in the late 1980s and Germany was officially reunified on 3 October 1990.

TIMELINE 2

Wars and unrest in the 20th century

1914	Archduke Franz Ferdinand is assassinated, prompting the start of World War I.
1918	There is unrest in the German military, and losses on the battle fields. On 9 November, Kaiser Wilhelm I abdicates. Germany surrenders to the Allies and an armistice is signed on 11 November.
1919	The Treaty of Versailles is signed and the Weimar Republic is established. Germany is forced to pay financial penalties to the countries in the winning alliance.
1920s–1933	German inflation crisis hits, along with the Great Depression.
1933	Hitler is elected Chancellor.
1933–39	Hitler silences his opponents. Persecution of vulnerable groups, such as Jews and Roma people, continues. Fear of communism is fostered.
1938	Austria is annexed. Anti-semitism becomes violent during the 48 hours that became known as 'Kristallnacht'.
1939	Germany invades Poland. World War II begins.
1942–43	Die Weiße Rose (a student-based resistance group) forms to oppose the Nazis.
1945	World War II ends in Europe.
1949	Germany is divided into two countries: East and West.
1961	Berlin is divided into east and west.
1989	Germany reunifies, after the collapse of the communist regime in East Germany.

Getty Images/ullstein bild Dtl



The German city of Dresden was destroyed by bombing during World War II.



### The European Union

It is impossible to study the German-speaking countries without examining their relationship with the rest of Europe. Unlike Australia and New Zealand, none of the German-speaking nations are islands, nor are they geographically separate from other countries.

German-speaking countries are economically, politically and culturally linked with other European nations, with the added complexity of sharing land borders with multiple neighbouring countries (and with people of many cultures).



The European Union flag

Shutterstock.com/lazyllama

### Why create a European Union?

The European Union (EU) grew out of Europe's turbulent past and a desire to move towards greater peace and prosperity through greater cooperation and shared economic priorities. On 9 May 1950, then French Foreign Minister Robert Schuman made a speech proposing greater unity, acknowledging the hardships that were a result of World War II. This date has since been considered the EU's 'birthday' and is celebrated annually as *Europatag* (Europe Day).

The EU evolved from a primarily industrial treaty, with six members forming the European Coal and Steel Community (ECSC) in 1951. This became the European Economic Community (EEC) in 1957, then the 15-member European Union in 1995. Ten more member-states were added in 2004, and the European Union has since grown to 28 member-states (at the time of printing), with each new member country hoping that joining the Union will bring greater prosperity and flexibility, such as open borders, with no need for EU citizens to carry passports.

The European Union has also established some unique governmental, judicial and financial bodies to help with the overall functioning of the Union, including:

- the European Parliament (*das Europäische Parlament*)
- the European Court of Justice (*der Europäische Gerichtshof*).



Euro currency

Shutterstock.com/Malilover3

The European Central Bank is located in Frankfurt am Main.

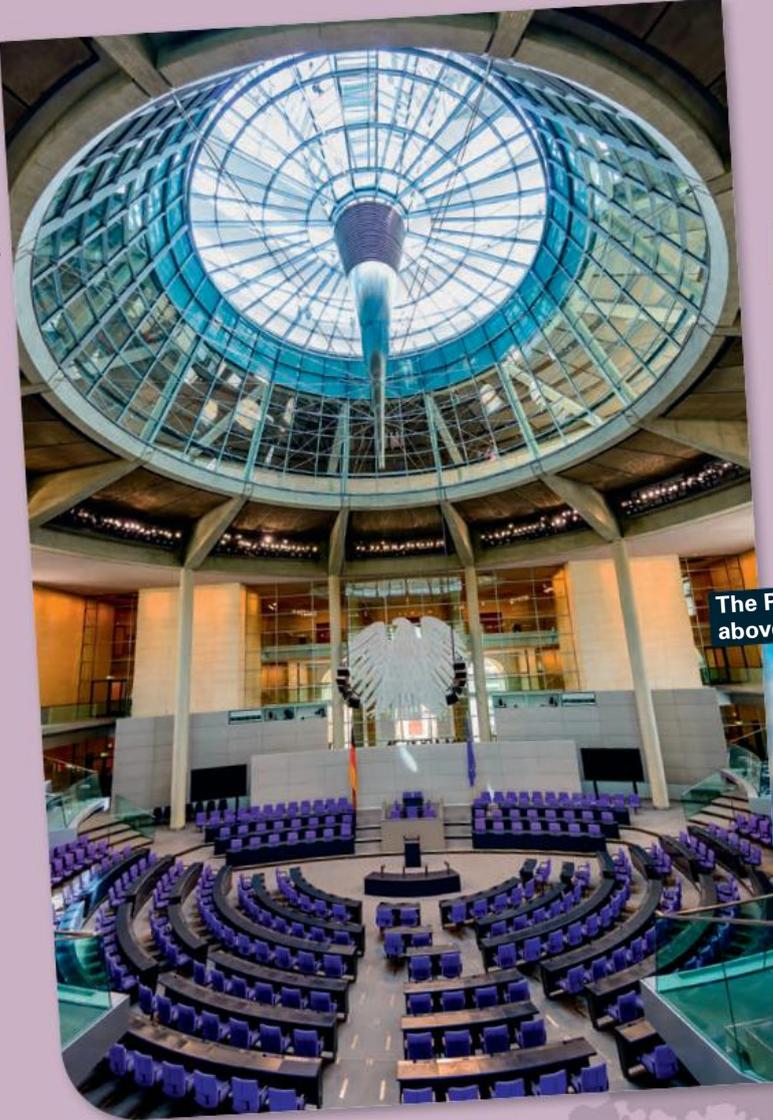


Getty Images/ullstein bild

### Das Euroland

The European Union remains the world's largest trading bloc. Germany is the economic powerhouse at the centre of this bloc, and by far the largest economy. The European Central Bank is located in Frankfurt am Main, which is also home to a multitude of international companies.

On 1 January 2002, Germany and Austria abandoned the Deutsche Mark and Schilling, and adopted the new euro notes and coins, as did most of the other EU members. This European Monetary Union (*die Europäische Währungsunion*) became a great convenience to businesses and travellers in Europe, who no longer needed to worry about the expense and inconvenience of exchanging currencies across the continent.



## Government in Germany

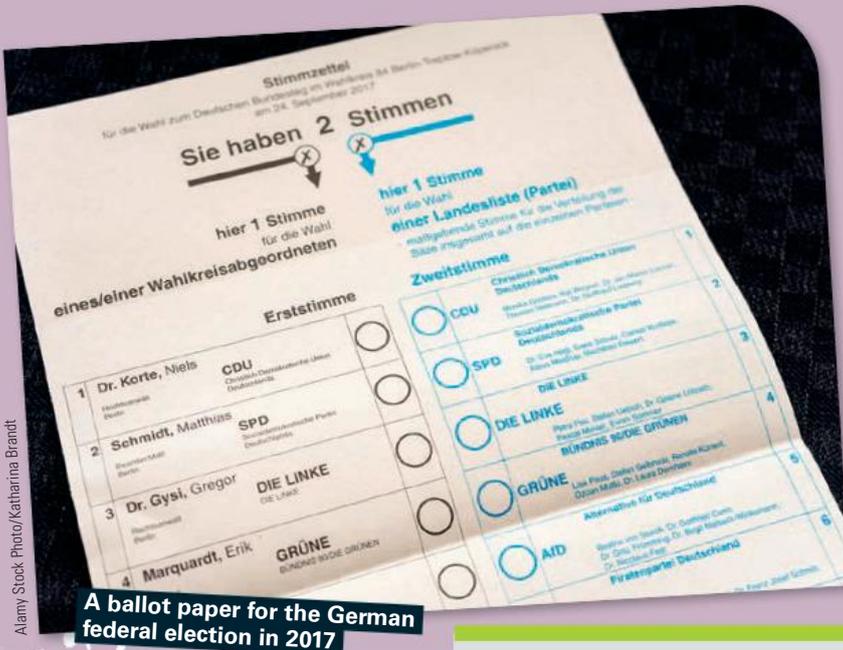
The system of government in Germany today was set up during the days of the Weimar Republic. Germany is a federation of a number of states (*Bundesstaaten*) and the Reichstag is where the federal government meets and makes decisions.

The Reichstag features an impressive glass dome above the parliamentary sitting rooms.



Shutterstock.com/Mikhail Markovskiy

Every four years, Germans over the age of 18 have the right to vote. Germans cast two votes: one direct vote for a candidate in their electorate/district, and one for a party. Of the 598 seats in the German parliament, which is called the *Bundestag*, there are 299 seats available for directly elected candidates and 299 seats available to parties that receive at least 5 per cent of the vote. Members of the *Bundestag* elect the Chancellor. Parties such as the SPD (*Sozialdemokratische Partei Deutschlands*), the CDU (*Christlich-Demokratische Union*) and the FDP (*Freie Demokratische Partei*) have been in existence since just after World War II. The Greens (*die Grünen*) and the PDS (*Partei des Demokratischen Sozialismus*) are more recent additions to German politics.



Alamy Stock Photo/Katharina Brannt

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What is the voting age where you live? Do you think this age is suitable?
- Find out about the system of elections and government where you live. Compare it to the German, Austrian or Swiss system.
- Research the big political parties in your country and compare their policies to the political parties in German-speaking countries. What similarities and differences do you notice? Why do you think this is?

# Einkaufen bis zum Umfallen

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ talk about going shopping
- ✓ talk about different parts of a department store and what you would find there
- ✓ use direct object/accusative pronouns
- ✓ form more past participles of verbs in the perfect tense.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ how people do their shopping in German-speaking countries
- ✓ where people in German-speaking countries shop
- ✓ which retailers and brands are popular
- ✓ different sizing of clothing and shoes
- ✓ different opening hours for shops in German-speaking countries.

Shopping is part of people's daily lives around the world. We all need to shop for essentials, such as groceries and basic clothing. After that, there are hobbies, gifts, pets and numerous other non-essential items or experiences that we can shop for. What we buy and how we buy things depends not only on our interests, but also on our personal situations. Not everyone has extra income to spend on non-essentials.

There is a lot of competition from different companies, and they all want us to shop with them, as shown by the amount of advertising we see every day of our lives. In German-speaking countries, as in Australia and New Zealand, there are many places and ways to shop, and many companies are vying for a shopper's attention.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- When you need to buy things, where do you go?
- Do you have a budget when you go shopping?
- What items do you buy because you have to, and what items do you buy because they relate to a hobby or an enjoyable experience?
- Where does your family shop for essential items?

Lecker! Frisches  
Brot zum Frühstück!



age fotostock/Dario Secen

Alamy Stock Photo/Danita Delimont

Zu Hause ist einkaufen schnell und leicht. Ich kann fast alles im Internet kaufen.



Man kann im Einkaufszentrum alles finden.



Hier kann man einen neuen Fotoapparat kaufen.

Wir kaufen lieber Lebensmittel auf dem Markt.



Im Supermarkt können wir alles billiger kaufen.

Wir brauchen Rindfleisch und Weisswürste.



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Where do the people in your household shop? Online, at a shopping centre or in specialist shops? What influences these choices?
- What is the favourite way for people in your household to shop? Why do you think this is?
- Has the way your family shops changed over time? What factors influence changes in shopping habits?

## EINKAUFEN IN DEUTSCHLAND

In general, people in German-speaking countries prefer smaller shops to large supermarkets. Germans generally do their grocery shopping a few days at a time and only buy what they need for those few days. Sometimes retailers are gathered together in shopping streets (*Einkaufsstraßen*) or pedestrian malls (*Fußgängerzonen*); for example, *Ku'Damm* in Berlin, *Schildergasse* in Köln, *Mariahilferstraße* in Wien, die *Bahnhofstraße* in Zürich. Such shopping streets are more common in bigger cities, as are the shopping centres (*Einkaufszentren*), such as the Mall of Berlin.



Dreamstime.com/Tupungato

Der Kurfürstendamm in Berlin

There are some department stores that originated in German-speaking countries; for example, *Kaufhof* and *Karstadt* in Germany, *Kastner & Öhler* in Austria and *Loeb* in Switzerland. International retailers such as *Ikea*, *Zara*, *Pandora*, *Lush* and *Hennes & Mauritz AB* (better known as *H&M*) are usually also located in the large cities.

The most famous and largest department store in Germany is the *Kaufhaus des Westens*, or *KaDeWe* for short. It is located in Berlin and has more than 60 000 square metres of floor space.



Das KaDeWe, oder Kaufhaus des Westens

Most towns and suburbs have small German supermarkets, such as *Edeka*, *Aldi* and *Lidl*. These 'no-frills' discount supermarkets have long been popular in German-speaking countries.

Specialty stores are also common, such as organic shops (*Bioläden* or *Biomärkte*), butchers (*Metzgereien/Fleischereien*), pharmacies (*Apotheken*), drugstores selling personal items but not medication (*Drogerien*), bakeries (*Bäckereien*) and cake/pastry shops (*Konditoreien*).



Ein Bioladen



Eine Konditorei

As in Australia and New Zealand, people in German-speaking countries don't have to leave their home to do their shopping. Mail-order catalogues – such as *Quelle* and *Otto* in Germany – are still in use, but have largely been replaced by online shopping.



Clockwise from top left: All Shutterstock.com; n/soft; Joerg Huettenehlscher, dennis; MDOGAN; Cl-Meilen

**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- What kinds of shops are in your area? Is there a shopping strip of local businesses or a shopping centre?
- Who shops in these different places? Why do think this is?
- Choose a shopping area near you. What features does it have?
- Think of a specialty shop in your local town, shopping centre or online. Does someone in your family shop there?

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Geschenke kaufen**

Imagine that you are in Germany or Austria. You have been given €200 to buy birthday or Christmas presents for your family and friends.

- Check online shopping sites from German-speaking countries such as Galeria Kaufhof or eBay (the German-language site), and choose suitable presents that are within your budget.
- Present your list electronically or in poster form, with a picture of each item, its cost, and the website from which you would purchase it.
- Remember to keep a running total of how much you have spent.
- In your presentation include details of exchange rates, and show how much each item would cost in your local currency.

**PROJEKT 3 Einkaufsbummel im KaDeWe**

Imagine that you have won a €500 shopping spree at the Kaufhaus des Westens in Berlin. You must spend this money in five different departments. Go to the KaDeWe website and work out what you would buy with the prize money.

**PROJEKT 2 Einkaufsliste für eine Party**

Imagine that you are on exchange in a German-speaking country. Your host family is shopping for a party, and they want your ideas. They ask you to choose a theme, and give you €150 to spend on special food, drinks, decorations, etc.

Check the online shopping sites and make a list of the items that you wish to buy. Present this list as if you were showing it to your host family. Include details about what you wish to buy, from where and why. Remember to tailor your shopping to the theme of the party.

**PROJEKT 4 Mein lokales Einkaufszentrum**

Draw a plan of your local shopping mall or street. Label the shops in German.



## Im Kaufhaus



**Max** Was machen wir zuerst?

**Christian** Suchen wir die Sportabteilung! Ich brauche einen neuen Skateboardhelm.

**Max** Wir müssen in den dritten Stock. Nehmen wir die Rolltreppe!

**Christian** Na los!

## Fünf Minuten später



**Anna** Oh, klasse! Schlussverkauf! Da sind viele Sachen billiger.

**Julia** Toll, einkaufen bis zum Umfallen! Los geht's, ich brauche neue Turnschuhe und auch eine Jeansjacke. Und ich möchte einen Pulli kaufen!

**Sibel** Na, super!

## Zwanzig Minuten später



**Julia** Dort ist eine tolle Hose! Und sie ist reduziert! Kaufst du sie?

**Sibel** Ich möchte schon, aber sie ist wirklich zu teuer für mich! Vielleicht ist sie im Internet billiger.

**Anna** He ... Christian! Max! Was macht ihr denn hier?

**Max** Tag! Wir kaufen ein. Der Schlussverkauf ist wirklich super, alles ist viel billiger.

**Christian** He, Julia. Du möchtest wohl das ganze Kaufhaus kaufen.

**Sibel** Nein, Julia trainiert für den Kaufklug Wettbewerb: Der schnellste Shopper!

**Julia** Ich muss unbedingt das lange Kleid dort anprobieren! Ich finde es richtig schön.

**Anna** Aber der Rock dort ist schick. Probier ihn an!



**Anna** Ach, der Rock und das Kleid sind zu groß. Schade! Was hast du denn gekauft, Christian?

**Christian** Einen Skateboardhelm.

**Sibel** Und du Max, was hast du denn da?

**Max** Ach, nur drei T-Shirts und ein Buch.

**Später**



**Max** Trinken wir einen Kaffee.

**Sibel** Ich kann leider nicht. Ich muss nach Hause.

**Anna** Ich kann auch nicht. Ich treffe meinen Vater in der Lebensmittelabteilung. Bis Morgen!

**Alle** Okay, tschüs!

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Christian muss einen Skateboardhelm kaufen.
- 2 Julia braucht ein Sommerkleid.
- 3 Sibel will die Hose im Internet kaufen.
- 4 Max hat Hemden und ein Buch gekauft.
- 5 Alle gehen mit Max und trinken einen Kaffee.

## 1 Im Kaufhaus



die Sportabteilung	die Buchabteilung	die Damenabteilung	die Herrenabteilung	die Lebensmittelabteilung
Turnschuhe	ein Buch	einen Rock	Jeans	Äpfel
einen Skateboardhelm	ein Magazin	ein Kleid	ein T-Shirt	einen Liter Milch
einen neuen Fußball	einen Roman	eine Hose	eine Jacke	Käse

### MACH MIT!

Read the dialogue and practise it with three different classmates. Then replace the elements in **bold** with words from the table (i.e. purchase different things from the five departments). When you have used all the items in the table, add your own suggestions from the vocabulary lists in *Auf einen Blick*.

## 2 Was hast du gekauft?

Was habt ihr im Kaufhaus gesehen?

Wir haben **billige Röcke** gesehen.



Was hast du gekauft?

Ich habe **eine Hose** gekauft.



Welche Schnäppchen hast du gefunden?

Ich habe eine **Jeansjacke** und **Jeans** gefunden.



Was hast du anprobiert?

Ich habe **einen Pullover** anprobiert.

Hast du **ihn** gekauft?

**Ja, er** ist **perfekt** für mich.



Was hast du anprobiert?

Ich habe **zwei Jeansjacken** anprobiert.

Hast du **sie** gekauft?

**Nein, sie** sind **zu groß** für mich.



### MACH MIT!

Read the dialogues and practise them with a partner. Then replace the elements in bold with different items.

## What's the rule?

Study these question and answer pairs, paying close attention to the **pronouns**. Discuss what you observe with a classmate.

Magst **du** die Mütze?

Ja, **ich** mag **sie**.

Do **you** like the cap?

Yes, I like **it**.

Siehst **du** Frau Berthold?

Ja, **ich** sehe **sie**.

Can **you** see Mrs Berthold?

Yes, I see **her**.

Seht **ihr** den Badeanzug?

Ja, **wir** sehen **ihn**.

Can **you** see the swimsuit?

Yes, **we** see **it**.

Besuchst **du** deinen Papa?

Nein, **ich** besuche **ihn** nicht.

Are **you** visiting your dad?

No, I'm not visiting **him**.

Kauft **sie** das Kleid?

Nein, **sie** kauft **es** nicht.

Is **she** buying the dress?

No, **she's** not buying **it**.

Die Mädchen suchen viele Klamotten für ihren Urlaub.

**Sie** suchen **sie** im Internet.

The girls are looking for lots of clothes for their holiday.

**They** are looking for **them** on the Internet.

- Which pronouns are subject/nominative pronouns and which are direct object/accusative pronouns?
- What German words are used where 'it' is used in English? Can you work out why there is more than one?
- How does the plural form of the pronouns differ from the singular form(s) in German and English?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Read the following German sentences.

Na los!

Los geht's!

Du möchtest wohl das ganze Kaufhaus kaufen.

Ich möchte schon, aber sie ist wirklich zu teuer für mich.

Was macht ihr denn hier?

- 1 Is a word-for-word translation possible for these sentences? What makes you say that?
- 2 Which words are hard to translate precisely into English? Which words seem to have a different meaning from the meaning in a German–English word list or dictionary?

## What's different about German?

**Suchen wir** die Sportabteilung.

**Trinken wir** einen Kaffee.

If you want to suggest an action in German to the people you're with, instead of using **let's** + the verb, (e.g. 'let's look for the sport department'), you reverse the subject (*wir*) with the verb (in these sentences, *suchen* and *trinken*). Even though this is the structure used to ask questions in German, the intonation is different. That is, there is no rising tone at the end of the sentence.



### Kandidat 1

Hier ist Ulli Unglaublich. Ich berichte heute live über den großen Preis für mutige Einkäufer. Im Kaufhaus ‚Kaufklug‘ kann man 200 Euro gewinnen. Zwei mutige Teilnehmer geben ihr Bestes. Sie wollen gewinnen. Jeder Teilnehmer muss alle Sachen auf der Liste so schnell wie möglich finden. Wer wird gewinnen? Jens, hier im Kaufhaus oder Jana, zu Hause vor ihrem Laptop?

### Kandidat 2



### Jeder muss diese Sachen finden ...

In der Sportabteilung	In der Damenabteilung	In der Herrenabteilung	In der Lebensmittelabteilung
einen Pulli ein T-Shirt	einen Rock ein Top	einen Schlips ein Hemd	500 g gefrorene Erbsen eine Flasche Ketchup 250 ml Honig



### Kandidat 1



Jens beginnt. Er geht direkt zur Rolltreppe und in die Damenabteilung. Schnell findet er einen Rock und legt ihn in den Korb. Kurz danach das Top. In der Herrenabteilung ist er sehr schnell, aber in der Sportabteilung kann er die T-Shirts nicht finden! Fast drei Minuten sind vorbei! Ach, da sind sie! Danach joggt er zur Lebensmittelabteilung. Er nimmt einen Wagen und sucht den Honig. Da ist er! Toll! Vier Minuten zehn Sekunden ... Er nimmt eine Flasche Ketchup. Weiter läuft er. Er nimmt 1 Kilogramm gefrorene Erbsen! Oh, nein! Ja, Jens, nehmen Sie 500 Gramm Erbsen. Jens läuft zur Kasse! Alles ist da! Fünf Minuten, achtundfünfzig Sekunden!



Und jetzt zu Jana!



## Kandidat 2



Jana beginnt. Sie klickt auf der Kaufklugseinkaufsseite. Sie sucht zuerst die Sportabteilung. Also, wo sind die Pullis? Sie klickt. Nein, Jana! Das sind die Trainingsanzüge! Sie klickt noch einmal und sieht einen Pulli! Toll! Und dann findet sie die T-Shirts. Klick! Zwei Minuten zwanzig Sekunden sind vorbei! Sie findet dann die Damenabteilung im Internet. Ach, sie will kein Kleid kaufen. Klick! Da sind die Röcke und mit noch einem Klick kauft sie ein Top. Drei Minuten vierzig! Schnell, schnell! Dann muss Jana zur Lebensmittelabteilung.

Was?! Oh, nein. Sie hat den Internetanschluss verloren! Sie klickt und klickt! Sie braucht Hilfe! Sechs Minuten sind vorbei! Jens gewinnt!

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Jens beginnt in der Herrenabteilung.
- 2 Jens findet die T-Shirts in der Sportabteilung.
- 3 Jana kauft ein Top und einen Rock in der Damenabteilung.
- 4 Jana kauft alles auf der Liste.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Which shopper, Jens or Jana, had the best chance to win? Why do you think so?
- What aspects of the shopping experience were more difficult for Jens? How did he overcome these issues?
- Have you had the same experiences as Jana? How did you overcome them? What would you do if this happened to you?
- Which would be your preferred shopping method? Does your answer change depending on what you are buying?

## Einkaufen in Deutschland

Shoppers in Germany need to be aware of these things:

### Öffnungszeiten

Specialist stores have shorter opening hours than large supermarkets – they often close around 6 p.m. Opening hours are generally longer in the central areas of the big cities, although some smaller supermarkets in German-speaking countries stay open later than 6 p.m. these days, even away from the main city areas. Shops in big train stations are open longer and, unlike in other locations, often seven days a week. Convenience stores can be found in service stations.

### Verkaufsoffene Sonntage

Most shops are shut on Sunday, except for special shopping events. These happen at least four times a year and more often in big cities such as Berlin. These occasions are often quite festive and there can be buskers, special stalls, outdoor displays and other entertainment on offer.

### Bezahlen

Cash (*Bargeld*) is still widely used in Germany, particularly in small shops and in small towns. Online purchases are often paid for by bank transfer or cash on delivery. It is important to check what forms of payment are accepted where you will be shopping.

### Einkaufen ohne Plastik!

Most Germans do their grocery shopping with reusable cloth bags (*Stofftaschen*). You will learn more about these and other environmentally friendly practices in *Thema 10*.

### Klamotten und Schuhe kaufen: welche Größe?

How are clothes and shoes sized? Shopping for clothes and shoes means checking size charts. Fortunately, these are readily available, and many items of clothing already show the sizing in different systems. For online and in-person shopping, size guides such as this are common.

	Internationale Schuhgrößentabelle							
EU	35	36	37	37	38	39	40	41
US/AU	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
UK	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9



Alamy Stock Photo/Europix



Alamy Stock Photo/Peter Forsberg



Alamy Stock Photo/Maciej Wojtowiak

Öffnungszeiten  
Läden 07:00–14:00 Uhr  
Cafés 05:00–24:00 Uhr

### Berlin Hauptbahnhof



istock.com/LianeM

Weihnachtsmärkte sind ein beliebtes Sonntagseinkaufereignis.

## So ist Deutsch!

In German, verbs can be converted into nouns by placing *das* in front of the noun. The verb *einkaufen* means 'to go shopping'; the noun *das Einkaufen* means '(the) shopping'. Can you find other examples of nouns in verb–infinitive form in *Ganz Klasse 2*?

## Sprachtipps

- au** Kaufhaus, überhaupt, brauchen
- eu** neu, teuer, Euro
- äu** Kaufhäuser, Mäuse

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How do think the shops being shut on Sundays would affect you? Why?
- When is the most convenient time for your family to shop? Why?
- How do you usually pay for the items you buy?
- What does your family do to be environmentally friendly shoppers?
- What is your opinion of shopping without plastic bags?
- What could goods and food be packaged in, if plastic were not used? In your opinion, would this be better? State your reasoning.

## ACHTUNG!

Don't forget that **eu** and **äu** are pronounced the same!



## 1 Das direkte Objekt

As we saw in *Thema 2*, nouns that are immediately affected or influenced by the action of the verb are called **direct objects**. Direct objects always take the **accusative case**. You can find the direct object by asking the question, 'subject + verb + who or what?' These examples show the **subject** and **direct object**.

**Wir** kaufen **den Rock**.

*We buy what? den Rock*

**Die Frau** möchte **eine Jacke** anprobieren.

*The woman wants to try on what? eine Jacke*

Study the table below, paying particular attention to the English meanings.

Subject pronouns	Nominative Pronomen	Direct object pronouns	Akkusative Pronomen
I	ich	me	mich
you	du	you	dich
he	er	him/it	ihn
she	sie	her/it	sie
it	es	it	es
we	wir	us	uns
you (plural)	ihr	you	euch
they	sie	them	sie
you (formal)	Sie	you	Sie

In German, as in English, there are direct object pronouns. They are immediately affected by the verb. Study these sentences.

**Ich** sehe **dich** im Foto.

Findest du **uns**?

**Wir** kaufen **den Rock**

**Die Frau** möchte **eine Jacke** anprobieren.

*Who or what is being seen in the photo? dich (you).*

*Who or what is being found? uns (us)*

*Wir kaufen ihn.*

*Die Frau möchte sie anprobieren.*

## 2 Das Perfekt



Verbs beginning with the prefixes that are not prepositions (for example *be-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*) do not use a 'ge' to make their past participles.

Some are weak verbs, such as *besuchen* (*besucht*) and *entsetzen* (*entsetzt*). Some are strong, such as *beginnen* (*begonnen*), *entwerfen* (*entworfen*), *gewinnen* (*gewonnen*) and *verlieren* (*verloren*).

Verbs ending in *-ieren*, which are not strong verbs, have no 'ge' at the beginning of their past participles. They end in 't', like other weak verbs; for example, *studieren* (*studiert*) and *anprobieren* (*anprobiert*).

As we saw in *Thema 5*, separable verbs place the 'ge' in between the prefix and the verb for a past participle; for example, *an|sehen* (to look at) – *anGEsehen*.



## Nouns

der Badeanzug (˚e)	bathing suit
der Einkaufswagen (-)	shopping trolley
der Ketchup (s)	tomato sauce
der Korb (˚e)	basket
der Preis (e)	prize, price
der Pulli (s)	jumper
der Rock (˚e)	skirt
der Roman (e)	novel
der Schlips (e)	tie
der Schlussverkauf	sale
der Skateboardhelm (e)	skateboard helmet
der Turnschuh (e)	runners, trainers

die Abteilung (en)	department
die Buchabteilung (en)	book department
die Damenabteilung (en)	women's department
die Einkaufstraße (n)	shopping street
die Fußgängerzone (n)	pedestrian mall
die gefrorenen Erbsen	frozen peas
die Größe (n)	size (of clothing)
die Herrenabteilung (en)	men's department
die Hose (n)	pants
die Jacke (n)	jacket
die Kasse (n)	cash register
die Lebensmittelabteilung (en)	food department
die Mütze (n)	cap
die Öffnungszeiten (en)	opening time
die Rolltreppe (n)	escalator
die Sache (n)	thing, item
die Sportabteilung (en)	sport department
die Stofftüte (n)	cloth bag

das Bar(geld) (no pl.)	cash
das Einkaufen (-)	shopping
das Hemd (en)	man's shirt
das Kaufhaus (˚er)	department store
das Kleid (er)	dress
das Magazin (e)	magazine
das Schnäppchen (-)	bargain
die Klamotten (pl. only)	clothes (colloquial)
die Kleider (pl. only)	clothes

## Types of shops

der Bioladen (˚)	organic shop
der Biomarkt (˚e)	organic shop
der Laden (˚)	shop
der Markt (˚e)	market
der Supermarkt (˚e)	supermarket
die Apotheke (n)	pharmacy

die Bäckerei (en)	bakery
die Buchhandlung (en)	bookshop
die Drogerie (n)	drug store (not a pharmacy)
die Fleischerei (en)	butcher shop
die Handlung (en)	shop
die Konditorei (en)	cake shop
die Metzgerei (en)	butcher shop
die Post	post office
die Tankstelle (n)	petrol station

das Einkaufszentrum (-zentren)	shopping centre/mall
das Geschäft (e)	shop
das Schuhgeschäft (e)	shoe shop
das Musikgeschäft (e)	music shop

## Verbs

anprobieren (anprobiert)	to try on (tried on)
beginnen (begonnen)	to begin (begun)
berichten (berichtet)	to report (reported)
besuchen (besucht)	to visit (visited)
bezahlen (bezahlt)	to pay (paid)
brauchen (gebraucht)	to need (needed)
einkaufen (eingekauft)	to shop (shopped)
finden (gefunden)	to find (found)
gewinnen (gewonnen)	to win (won)
möchten (gemocht)	would like (would have liked)
sehen (gesehen)	to see (have seen)
stellen (gestellt)	to put (have put)
suchen (gesucht)	to look for (have looked for)
verlieren (verloren)	to lose (have lost)

## Adjectives and adverbs

(ihr) Bestes	(their) best
billig	cheap
klug	clever
mutig	brave
perfekt	perfect
reduziert	reduced
teuer	expensive
unbedingt	absolutely
richtig	right, really
schick	stylish
wirklich	really
zu	too (+ adjective)

## Useful expressions

Einkaufen bis zum Umfallen!	Shop 'til you drop!
im Kaufhaus einkaufen	shopping in the department store
Lebensmittel einkaufen	shopping for food

# In Australien

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ talk about the school system in Germany
- ✓ talk about what young people are allowed or not allowed to do in German-speaking countries
- ✓ say numbers from 100 to one million
- ✓ use the dative case
- ✓ describe people and things.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ the dative pronouns
- ✓ dative prepositions
- ✓ how to use the dative case with verbs *gefallen*, *passen* and *stehen*
- ✓ question words using interrogative pronouns, such as 'What?' and 'How?'.

Education for children of all ages is just as much a priority in German-speaking countries as it is in Australia and New Zealand. Schooling and development of the younger generation is seen as necessary to a healthy, informed society.

School life in the northern hemisphere is, however, somewhat different from what you may have experienced. School buildings are usually multi-storey, and the school grounds generally have limited outdoor space and no sporting fields. In Germany, the school day starts early, and finishes at 1 p.m. or 2 p.m., although this is gradually changing to the later time of 3.30 p.m. or 4 p.m. Students don't wear school uniforms and get themselves to school either by walking, catching public transport or cycling. Particularly in the senior years of secondary school, young adults are given a lot of freedom and personal responsibility.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What is your understanding of education/schooling?
- What role does formal schooling play in your life?
- What do you like about your school life? What would you change and why?
- Compare the four pairs of pictures. What differences do you see?
- Where would you prefer to go to school (in your home country or in a German-speaking country) and why? What influences your decisions?



Alamy Stock Photo/RosalreneBetancourt 6



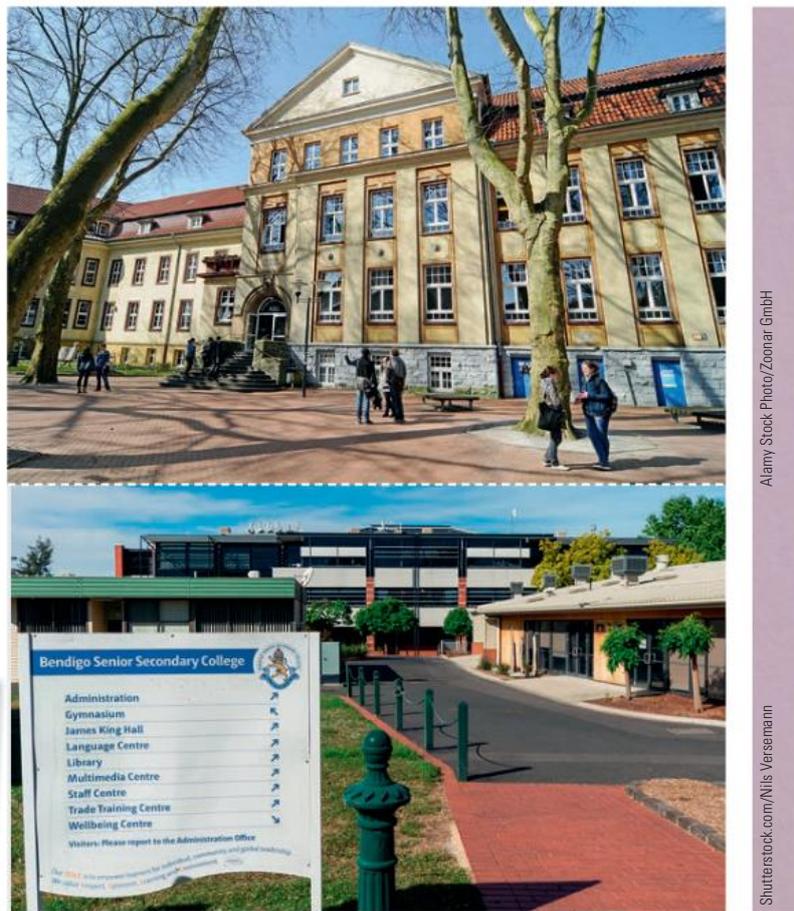
Getty Images/PhotoAlto/Eric Audras

Fairfax Syndication/Tamara Voninski



Shutterstock.com/Dan76

Getty Images/Westend61



Alamy Stock Photo/Zoomar GmbH

Shutterstock.com/Wlts Versemann



Bundesland Deutschlands

Albert-Einstein Schule  
Musterhausen

Name der Schule

### Jahreszeugnis

Klasse: 9

Vor- und Zuname: Hans Mustermann

Betragen:	2	Mitarbeit:	2
Fleiß:	2	Ordnung:	2

Arbeitsgemeinschaften: Presseklub, Informatik.

Noten:

Deutsch:	2	Mathematik:	3
Englisch:	2	Physik:	4
Französisch:	2	Chemie:	3
Musik:	3	Informatik:	1
Geografie:	4	Sport:	1

**Notenstufen:** 1 = sehr gut, 2 = gut, 3 = befriedigend, 4 = ausreichend, 5 = mangelhaft, 6 = ungenügend

Unterschrift Klassenlehrer

Unterschrift Eltern

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Look at the picture of the school report. What extra or different features do the reports at your school have, compared to a German report?
- Germans use the numbers 1–6 in their reports. One is the highest mark and 6 is the lowest. What are the equivalent marks or grades on your reports?
- Rewrite one of your recent reports in the German style, using the numbers 1–6.

## DAS DEUTSCHE SCHULSYSTEM

Education in German-speaking countries follows a similar pathway to that in Australia and New Zealand. In Germany, children usually start their education in child care and preschool, going on to four years of primary school (*Grundschule*).

German students start primary school at the age of six or seven. After that, at the age of 10–11 (Year 5), they go to secondary school. This is when the choice between four different educational options is made.

Secondary school in Germany offers a choice of three types of education, depending on whether the student wishes to pursue an academic or a vocational pathway. These types are *Hauptschulen*, *Realschulen* and *Gymnasien*. There are also *Gesamtschulen*, which offer a combination of all three types of education.

While German students have physical education classes, little school time is devoted to activities such as interschool sport, debating and music. These activities are generally undertaken out of school time. Schools in Germany have out-of-hours study and hobby groups called *Arbeitsgemeinschaften*.

Germany is also well known for its interest in educational models that promote the health, wellbeing and development of children outside the classroom. The *Waldorfschulen* movement is over 100 years old and grew out of a desire to take children into nature, especially forests, hence the original name *Waldschulen* (forest schools). Steiner schools (part of the *Waldorfschulen* movement) can be found worldwide and focus on a curriculum that places equal emphasis on artistic and academic pursuits. Even though these educational models are quite different from the standard types of education, they are nonetheless part of mainstream education. Home schooling is not permitted in Germany.

## BILDUNGSOPTIONEN IN DEUTSCHLAND

### HAUPTSCHULE

*Die Hauptschule* is a basic secondary school for Years 5 to 9 or 10. Students who like working with their hands or students who have academic difficulties in primary school attend this type of school.

### REALSCHULE

*Die Realschule* is an intermediate secondary school for Years 5 to 10. Students who wish to do an apprenticeship attend this type of school, along with those who are not sure whether they can cope with the high academic standards of the *Gymnasium*, but don't want to rule out going to university.

### GYMNASIUM

*Das Gymnasium* is an academic secondary school for Years 5 to 12 or 13 (some German states have a grade 13). Students who wish to go to university must first achieve their *Abitur*, a high school leaving certificate.

Once students and their parents have decided on a certain type of secondary school, it does not mean they cannot change their minds. Students can always change the type of secondary school they go to, depending on whether they find the work too challenging or too easy. In order to avoid the physical move from one school to the next, a fourth option has been created.

### GESAMTSCHULE

*Die Gesamtschule* is a comprehensive school for all students. This school is very similar to the types of high schools we are used to in Australia and New Zealand. It includes all three German school types under one roof.

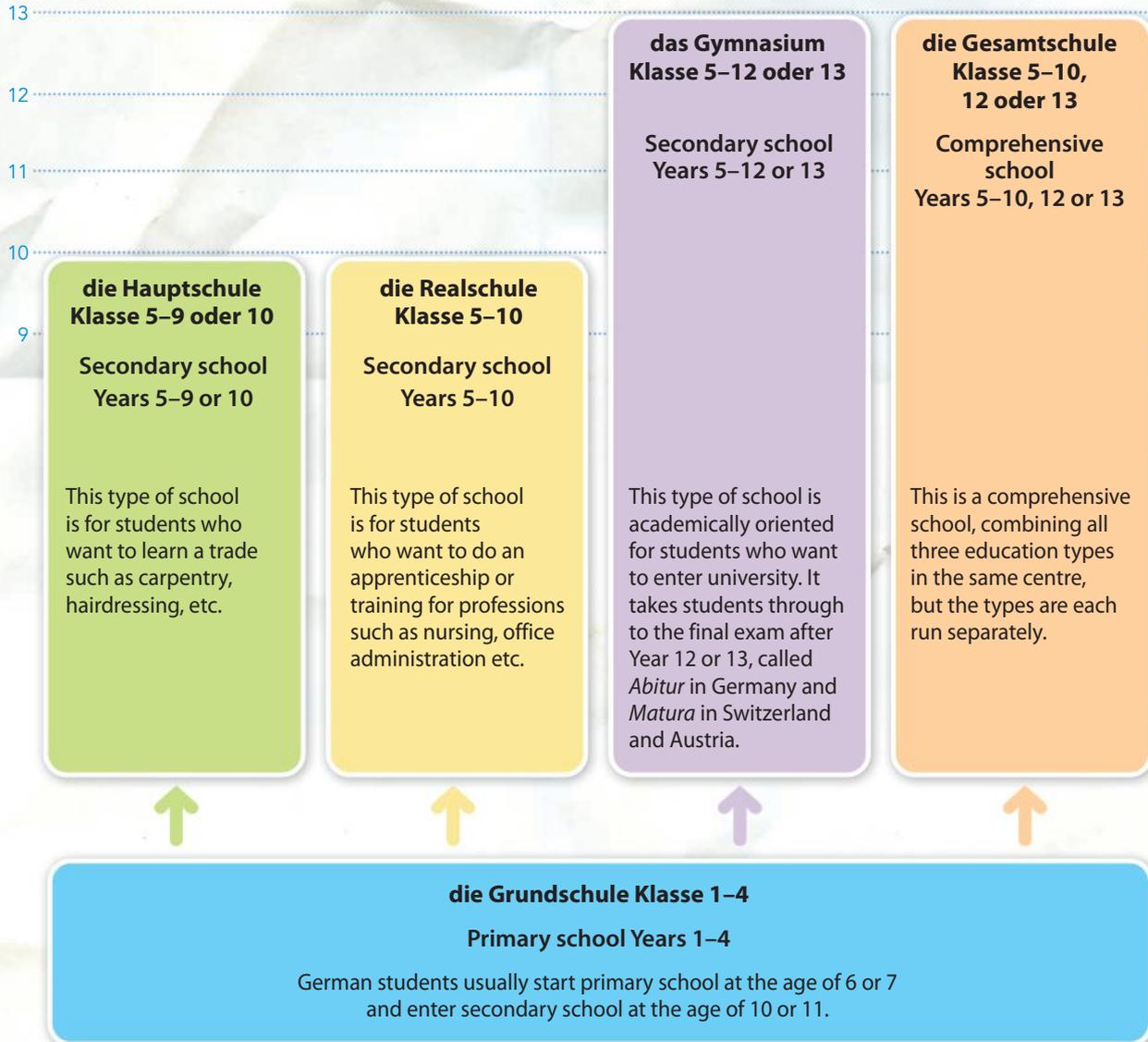


Eine Hauptschule in Straubing, Bayern



Eine Realschule in Hannover, Niedersachsen

**BILDUNGSOPTIONEN IN DEUTSCHLAND**



**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Meine ideale Schule**

Design your ideal secondary school. You are going to try to convince a community group of parents, teachers and others why your model should be adopted. Present your work as a slide show or poster.

Include any information that is relevant, such as your school's:

- classrooms
- social spaces
- grounds
- decor
- subjects
- timetable
- rules/regulations.

Also include information about:

- what types of students it would cater to
- why it would offer a good education.

Use pictures/graphics to make your presentation more interesting and persuasive.

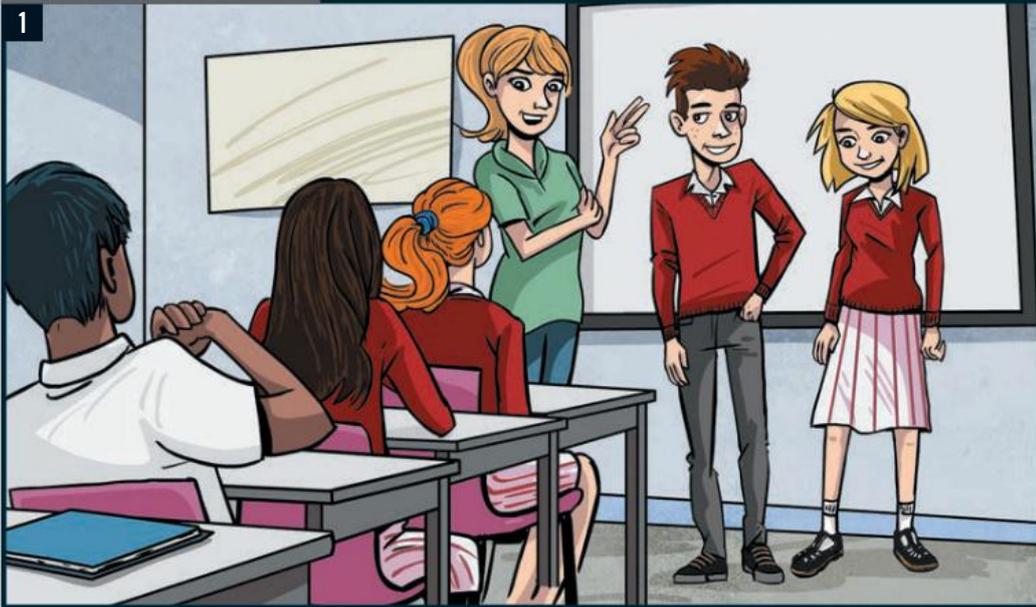
**PROJEKT 2 Welches Schulsystem findest du besser?**

You have the opportunity to attend a school that offers a different type of education from the school you are currently attending. Do some research into the different types of schooling, including independent schools, offered in German-speaking countries and where you live in Australia or New Zealand.

- Would you choose to stay where you are or attend another type of school with a different method of education? Explain why.
- Support your argument with evidence. You can present your information as a chart or poster, or even as a speech or letter.



## Im Deutschunterricht



**Frau Irwin**

Guten Morgen, Klasse! Herzlich Willkommen, Anna und Max. Anna und Max sind unsere Austauschschüler und sind erst gestern aus Göttingen angekommen. Sie wohnen bei ihren Austauschpartnern, Nick und Jessie. Ihr dürft ihnen nun Fragen stellen. Bitte bildet zwei Gruppen: die erste Gruppe macht ein Interview mit Anna und die andere Gruppe mit Max.



**Ping** Ist Göttingen so groß wie Melbourne?

**Max** Wie viele Einwohner hat Melbourne?

**Ping** Etwa fünf Millionen.

**Max** Göttingen ist nur eine kleine Universitätsstadt mit etwa hundertfünfzigtausend Einwohnern! Melbourne ist ja eine Großstadt.



**Tina** Welche Fremdsprachen lernt man in Deutschland?

**Anna** Natürlich Englisch, aber auch Französisch, manchmal Spanisch, Italienisch oder Russisch. Viele Schüler lernen auch Latein. Man kann bis zu drei Fremdsprachen lernen.

**Matthew** Drei Sprachen?

**Anna** Aber natürlich. Sprachen sind wichtig.



**Nick** Wie findest du unsere Schuluniform?

**Max** Es geht, aber ich trage lieber meine schwarze Jeans und einen grauen Pulli.

**Imogen** In der Schule darf man leider keine Jeans tragen. Wir müssen immer unsere Schuluniform tragen und sie steht mir überhaupt nicht!

**Madeleine** Mir auch nicht. Ich finde den roten Pulli häßlich! Aber die Sportuniform passt mir gut.

**Jack** Ich finde, dass die weissen Schulhemden zu kurz sind und uns nicht so gut passen. Aber, die Sportuniform ist eine gute Idee! So praktisch.



**Tom** Und ... hast du einen Freund?

**Anna** Ja ... ich habe seit ein paar Monaten einen Freund.

**Tom** Wirklich! Oh wie schade! Kommt er aus Deutschland?

**Anna** Nein, er kommt aus ... Australien.

**Jessie** Ach ...

**Voula** Dürft ihr wirklich Alkohol trinken?

**Anna** Ja, bei uns darf man mit sechzehn schon Wein und Bier trinken. Aber Schnaps darf man erst mit achtzehn trinken.

**Voula** Hier muss man auch achtzehn Jahre sein, wenn man Wein und Bier trinken möchte.

### Später



**Max** Komm, gehen wir ins Einkaufszentrum? Ich möchte ein neues T-Shirt kaufen.

**Madeleine** In Australien darf man während der Pause die Schule nicht verlassen!

**Max** Ach ja, das habe ich vergessen.

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Max und Anna sind in der Schule in Göttingen.
- 2 Max trägt gern schwarze Jeans und einen grauen Pulli.
- 3 Die Schüler in dieser Schule müssen eine Schuluniform tragen.
- 4 Jack findet, dass die Sportuniform praktisch ist.
- 5 Annas Freund heißt Tom.
- 6 Die Schüler in Deutschland dürfen während der Pause die Schule nicht verlassen.

## 1 Was darf man in Deutschland machen?



In der Schule braucht man keine Schuluniform tragen.



Mit sechzehn Jahren darf man Wein und Bier trinken.



Mit achtzehn darf man alleine ein Auto fahren.



Mit achtzehn Jahren darf man Schnaps trinken.



In Deutschland braucht man keinen Fahrradhelm tragen.



Während der Pause dürfen ältere Schüler die Schule verlassen.



Mit fünfzehn Jahren darf man Mofa fahren.



Mit sechzehn Jahren muss man einen Personalausweis haben.

## Stadt- und Gemeindetypen



eine Kleinstadt (a small town)



eine Großstadt (big city)



ein Vorort (a suburb)



ein Dorf (a village)



eine Universitätsstadt (a university town)

Clockwise from top left: iStock.com/MichalRenee; Alamy Stock Photo/brickwinkel; iStock.com/B&M\_Noskowski; iStock.com/Nikada; Shutterstock.com/Jan\_Schneckenhaus

Hallo! Ich heiße **John**. Ich finde **Deutschland** interessant. Darf ich dich was fragen?

Woher kommst du, **Alexander**?

**Muss** man in **Deutschland** eine **Schuluniform** tragen?

Ja, natürlich. Ich heiße **Alexander**.

Ich komme aus **Göttingen**. Das ist **eine Universitätsstadt** in Deutschland. Sie hat etwa **hundertfünfzigtausend** Einwohner.

**Nein**, man **trägt Jeans** und **so weiter ...**



### MACH MIT!

- 1 With a partner, take turns to read the dialogue.
- 2 Vary your conversation by substituting different words for the bold words. (Try changing the country of origin to Austria or Switzerland.)

## 2 Was trägst du zur Schule? Was trägst du am Wochenende?



Was trägst du zur Schule?

Was trägst du am Wochenende?

Ich trage ein **weißes Hemd**, **graue Shorts**, einen **grünen Pulli** und **schwarze Schuhe**.

Ich trage oft **alte Jeans**, ein **cooles T-shirt**, eine **blaue Hose** und **braune Stiefel**.



Table 1 Clothing vocabulary list

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Rock	Hose	Kleid	Jeans
Pulli	Mütze	Sweatshirt	Shorts
Mantel	Jacke	Hemd	Turnschuhe
Schal	Jeansjacke	T-Shirt	Stiefel
Schlips		Top	Sandalen
Jogginganzug			Flip-Flops
Badeanzug			

### MACH MIT!

Read and listen to the above dialogue and practise it with a partner. Then replace the words in bold with your own choices from Tables 1 and 2.

Table 2 Adjectives with indefinite articles in the accusative (direct object) case

Adjektiven	Maskulinum (einen)	Femininum (eine)	Neutrum (ein)	Plural (-)
rot	roten	rote	rotes	rote
kurz	kurzen	kurze	kurzes	kurze
alt	alten	alte	altes	alte
hässlich	hässlichen	hässliche	hässliches	hässliche
gelb	gelben	gelbe	gelbes	gelbe
lang	langen	lange	langes	lange
neu	neuen	neue	neues	neue
cool	coolen	coole	cooles	coole

### 3 Was will er/sie ...



Was will er zur Party tragen?

Was will sie zur Party tragen?

Was will Max zur Schule tragen?

Was muss man in der Schule in Australien tragen?

Er will die **schwarze Hose** tragen.

Sie will das **gelbe Sweatshirt** tragen.

Er will die **schwarzen Jeans** tragen.

Man muss die **alte Uniform** tragen.



**Table 3** Adjectives with definite articles in the accusative (direct object) case

Adjektiven	Maskulinum (den)	Femininum (die)	Neutrum (das)	Plural (die)
rot	roten	rote	rote	roten
kurz	kurzen	kurze	kurze	kurzen
alt	alten	alte	alte	alten
hässlich	hässlichen	hässliche	hässliche	hässlichen
gelb	gelben	gelbe	gelbe	gelben
lang	langen	lange	lange	langen
neu	neuen	neue	neue	neuen
cool	coolen	coole	coole	coolen

#### MACH MIT!

Read and listen to the above dialogue and practise it with a partner. Then replace the words in bold with your own choices from Tables 1 and 3.

## What's the rule?

Study these German and English sentences, paying close attention to the **adjectives**. Discuss what you observe with a classmate.

Ein **graues** Hemd ist im Schrank.

A **grey** shirt is in the wardrobe.

Eine **schwarze** Jacke ist da.

A **black** jacket is there.

**Alte** Jeans sind überall.

**Old** jeans are everywhere.

Ich trage ein **weißes** Hemd, einen **grauen** Pulli, eine **schwarze** Jacke und **alte** Jeans.

I wear a **white** shirt, a **grey** jumper, a **black** jacket and **old** jeans.

Sie kauft ein **interessantes** Buch, ein **neues** Magazin und zwei **schöne** Geburtstagskarten.

She buys an **interesting** book, a **new** magazine and two **beautiful** birthday cards.

Das Hemd ist **weiss**, der Pulli ist **grau**, die Jacke ist **schwarz** und die Jeans sind **altmodisch**.

The shirt is **white**, the jumper is **grey**, the jacket is **black** and the jeans are **old-fashioned**.

Ich möchte das **weisse** Hemd, den **grauen** Pulli und die **schwarze** Jacke kaufen, aber nicht die **altmodischen** Jeans.

I want to buy the **white** shirt, the **grey** jumper and the **black** jacket, but not the **old-fashioned** jeans.

- How does the position of the adjectives influence their form?
- What else affects the way the adjectives are written?
- Try to write down a rule for how indefinite and definite articles affect the form of adjectives that come before the noun. What difference does case (nominative or accusative) make to the form of the adjectives?
- Find five sentences from the cartoon story and underline the adjectives.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

- 1 Study the two sentences and work out what they mean in English.

Sie sind erst gestern aus Göttingen angekommen.

Aber Schnaps darf man erst mit 18 trinken.

- 2 What meaning does the word *erst* convey? Is it the same in both sentences?

## What's different about German?

Not all words in German sentences have a direct English match. Study the following expression.

Nun hört aber auf!

This expression may be used to tell someone to stop arguing, for example. It emphasises annoyance with the person or people arguing. Focus on the use of *nun* in this sentence and discuss what you discover with a classmate.

In the cartoon story in this unit, Frau Irwin tells her students that they may ask the exchange students questions: 'Ihr dürft ihnen *nun* Fragen stellen'. What do you think the word *nun* brings to the sentence?

Study the following sentence and discuss your observations with a classmate.

Melbourne ist ja eine Großstadt.

How is this sentence different from *Melbourne ist eine Großstadt*?

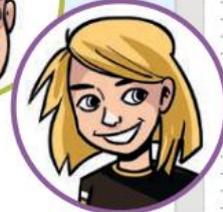
## Eine Mail von Max und Anna



**Botschaft**

**Von:** Max und Anna, Yarradale College

**An:** die Klasse von Frau Luther

Liebe Klasse,

wir sind seit zwei Wochen in Australien. Unsere Gastfamilien sind sehr nett und wir fühlen uns bei ihnen zu Hause.

Die Schule ist etwas anders, aber richtig toll. Anna und ich gehen in die selbe Schule. Unsere Klassenlehrerin heißt Frau Irwin. Sie ist auch die Deutschlehrerin. Sie hat uns geholfen, die anderen Schüler kennenzulernen. Sie hat uns auch die Schulroutinen erklärt. Der Schultag ist lang hier in Australien. Die Schule fängt um acht Uhr fünfundvierzig an und ist um fünfzehn Uhr zu Ende, mit einer kurzen Pause um elf Uhr und einer langen Pause (für das Mittagessen) um dreizehn Uhr. Aber Anna und ich finden das gut. Wir essen gern unser Mittagessen mit unseren Freunden.

Hier müssen wir eine Schuluniform tragen. Anna trägt ein gestreiftes Sommerkleid und schwarze Schuhe. Ich trage graue Shorts, ein weißes Hemd und schwarze Schuhe. Wir können auch einen roten Pulli oder eine rote Jacke tragen. In den Sportstunden tragen wir auch eine Uniform. Das ist praktisch. Auch anders ist, dass die Schüler während der Pause die Schule nicht verlassen dürfen. Ich vergesse das immer!

In Australien lernt man Mathe, Geschichte, Erdkunde, Fremdsprachen, Sport, Englisch (natürlich) und andere Fächer wie bei uns.

Aber in Australien lernt man Sprachen wie Chinesisch, Indonesisch und Japanisch. Auch kann man manchmal Ureinwohnersprachen lernen.

Auf dem Yarradale College können die Schüler Deutsch und Indonesisch lernen.

Die Schulen hier sind normalerweise Gesamtschulen und nach dem Abitur (der zwölften Klasse) kann man arbeiten oder studieren.

Wenn wir Freizeit haben, trinken wir einen Kaffee oder treiben Sport, zum Beispiel Fußball oder Cricket oder Rugby. Viele Australier sind sehr sportlich, aber manche spielen lieber im Internet. Fast jeder Schüler und jede Schülerin hat ein Handy und benutzt es sehr oft!

Hier darf man erst mit achtzehn Bier oder Wein trinken. Manche Schüler arbeiten am Wochenende.

Wir finden es ganz super hier, obwohl wir uns an alles gewöhnen müssen.

Bis bald  
Max und Anna

senden






### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Die Klassenlehrerin, Frau Irwin, ist Deutschlehrerin.
- 2 Die Schule gefällt Max und Anna nicht.
- 3 In ihrer Freizeit trinken Max und seine Freunde Bier oder Wein zusammen.
- 4 Anna, Max und ihre Klassenkameraden treiben manchmal Sport zusammen.
- 5 Die Schüler und Schülerinnen müssen eine Uniform in der Sportstunde tragen.
- 6 Max findet Sportuniformen blöd.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you wear a school uniform at your school? What is it like? What is your opinion of school uniforms?
- What would you wear to school if you had a choice?
- What breaks do you have during the day at your school? What would you change if you were able to?
- What are the rules for leaving the school grounds at your school? Why do you think these rules are in place? Is this sensible, in your opinion?

## So ist Deutsch!

### Man

*Man* is used to refer to one, to you or to people in general, and can replace all personal pronouns. It makes a sentence less personal and more distant, and is often used in rules and regulations, which apply to everyone. *Man* requires the same verb ending as *er, sie, es*.

In der Stadt fährt **man** nicht so schnell.

Bei uns darf **man** schon mit sechzehn Wein und Bier trinken.

Man darf die Straße überqueren!



### ACHTUNG!

Do not confuse *man* with *Mann*!

## Die Zahlen 100–1 000 000



100	hundert	10 000	zehntausend
101	<b>hunder</b> teins	21 000	einundzwanzig <b>tausend</b>
200	zwei <b>hundert</b>	32 500	zweiunddreißig <b>tausend</b> fün <b>hundert</b>
300	drei <b>hundert</b>	100 000	hundert <b>tausend</b>
1000	tausend	250 000	zweihundertfünfzig <b>tausend</b>
1001	<b>tausend</b> eins	350 500	drei <b>hundert</b> fünfzig <b>tausend</b> fün <b>hundert</b>
2100	zwei <b>tausend</b> ein <b>hundert</b>	1 000 000	eine <b>Million</b>
2201	zwei <b>tausend</b> zwei <b>hundert</b> eins	<b>2 000 000</b>	<b>zwei Millionen</b>

### ACHTUNG!

In German, **die Million** is a proper noun with a gender (feminine) and a plural: **die Millionen**.

## Sprachtipps



### w, f, v

As we saw in *Thema 1*, the German pronunciation of the letters 'w', 'v' and 'f' can be a little tricky. Listen to the audio and practise saying the following words to help perfect your pronunciation.

**w** wie, während, **W**ohnung  
**v** viele, **V**ater, **V**olleyball  
**f** Fach, **F**reunde, **F**ußball

Now try these words.

wie viel, werfen, Vielfraß

### ie, ei

The sounds *ie* and *ei* can be easily confused. Practise saying these words.

**ie** Bier, viel, Biologie  
**ei** Wein, meine, heißen

Now try these words.

vielleicht, Liechtenstein, Weihnachtslied



## 1 Adjektivendungen

Adjectives can be used in two different ways. They can stand alone in a sentence and answer the question: 'How is the subject?'

Der Rock ist **rot**.  
Die Hose ist **gestreift**.  
Das Haus ist **groß**.

They can also be placed immediately before the noun. As a result, the adjective requires an ending.

Der **rote** Rock gefällt mir.  
Die **gestreifte** Hose passt mir.  
Das **große** Haus ist in Frankfurt.

### Definite article (*der, die, das, die*) + adjective + noun

Die **erste** Gruppe macht ein Interview mit Anna.  
Ich finde den **roten** Pulli hässlich.

If an adjective directly precedes a noun, it takes on the same gender and case as the noun. For example, if the masculine noun is in the **nominative case**, so is the adjective. If the plural noun is in the **accusative case**, so is the adjective.

Remember that colours are adjectives and can be influenced by cases!

When following the definite article, the adjectival endings are as follows.

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Nominativ	der <b>rote</b> Rock	die <b>rote</b> Jacke	das <b>rote</b> T-Shirt	die <b>roten</b> Jacken
Akkusativ	<b>den roten</b> Rock	die <b>rote</b> Jacke	das <b>rote</b> T-Shirt	die <b>roten</b> Röcke

#### Nominativ

Der **rote** Apfel schmeckt gut.  
Die **billige** Jeansjacke sieht gut aus.  
Das **blaue** T-Shirt ist reduziert.  
Die **neuen** Schuhe sind warm.

#### Akkusativ

Ich möchte den **warmen** Pulli kaufen.  
Tom braucht die **neue** Jacke für das Wochenende.  
Murat zieht das **enge** T-Shirt an.  
Mama, hast du die **neuen** Schuhe gesehen?

### Indefinite article or possessive adjective (*ein, mein, kein ...*) + adjective + noun

Die Sportuniform ist eine **gute** Idee.  
Ich trage lieber einen **grauen** Pulli.

#### ACHTUNG!

Remember that **ein** and possessive adjectives such as **mein**, **dein** and **kein** all follow the same pattern of endings for indefinite articles.



### 3 Präpositionen + Dativ



The prepositions below require the following **noun/pronoun** to take the **dative case**. We will learn more about the dative case in later units.

Sie wohnen **bei** ihren Austauschpartnern, Nick und Jessie.

Wir fliegen in den Ferien **mit** unseren Freunden **nach** Port Douglas.

#### Dative prepositions

<b>aus</b>	out of, from
<b>außer</b>	except (for)
<b>bei</b>	with, at
<b>gegenüber</b>	opposite, across
<b>mit</b>	with

<b>nach</b>	to, after
<b>seit</b>	since, for
<b>von</b>	from, by
<b>zu</b>	to, towards

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>dem</b> Mann	<b>der</b> Frau	<b>dem</b> Kind	<b>den</b> Eltern
<b>einem</b> Mann	<b>einer</b> Frau	<b>einem</b> Kind	<b>keinen</b> Eltern
<b>meinem</b> Mann	<b>meiner</b> Frau	<b>meinem</b> Kind	<b>meinen</b> Eltern

Ich fahre **mit meinem** Mann in Urlaub.  
Moritz kommt um drei Uhr **aus der** Stadt zurück.  
Die Schüler lernen **seit einem** Jahr Deutsch.  
Cara bekommt **von ihren** Eltern einen Hund.

#### ACHTUNG!

Use these contractions:

**bei + dem = beim**    **Aber: bei der**

**zu + dem = zum**

**zu + der = zur**

**von + dem = vom**    **Aber: von der**



Wir haben von unseren Eltern einen Hund bekommen.

Shutterstock.com/wavebreakmedia



## Nouns

der Alkohol (e)	alcohol
der Einwohner (-)	inhabitant (male)
der Fahrradhelm (e)	bicycle helmet
der Personalausweis (e)	identity card
der Schnaps ("e)	liquor, spirits
der Wein (e)	wine
die Einwohnerin (nen)	inhabitant (female)
die Fremdsprache (n)	foreign language
die Stadt ("e)	city
die Großstadt ("e)	major city
die Kleinstadt ("e)	small town
die Million (en)	million
die Universitätsstadt ("e)	university city
das Auto (s)	car
das Bier (e)	beer
das Dorf ("er)	village
das Mofa (s)	moped
die Ferien (pl. only)	holidays

## School

der Unterricht (no pl.)	lessons
die Arbeitsgemeinschaft (en)	school club or hobby group
die Gesamtschule (n)	comprehensive school
die Grundschule (n)	primary school
die Realschule (n)	high school (less academic)
die Schuluniform (en)	school uniform
das Abitur (en)	end of school certificate
das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)	academic high school
das Schulsystem (en)	school system
das Zeugnis (se)	school report

## Verbs + dative

gefallen (es gefällt mir)	to appeal to
passen (es passt ihm)	to fit
stehen (es steht mir)	to suit

## Dative prepositions

aus	out of, from
außer	except (for)
bei	with, at
gegenüber	opposite, across
mit	with
nach	to, after
seit	since, for
von	from, by
während	during
zu	to, towards

## Question words

wann?	when?
warum?	why?
was?	what?
wer?	who?
wie?	how?
wo?	where?

## Useful expression

während der Pause	during recess
-------------------	---------------

# Die Ferien

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ use prepositions with the accusative case (revision)
- ✓ use prepositions with the dative case (revision)
- ✓ use the perfect tense with *sein*
- ✓ use *ss* versus *ß*
- ✓ differentiate between 'a pair' and 'a few'.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ holiday destinations and activities
- ✓ German-speaking migrants in Australia and New Zealand
- ✓ different exchange programs
- ✓ au pairs
- ✓ the spelling reform.

People from German-speaking countries love to travel. Owning a house is not as common in those countries as it is in Australia and New Zealand, and rent is usually less expensive than a mortgage. General costs of living such as education and even groceries are much more affordable. These two factors mean that many people have more money to spend on other things, such as seeing the world – and they love doing exactly that. Wherever you go in the world, you are likely to bump into a German speaker.

Extensive travel is a popular activity and many families go overseas more often than once a year, including to exotic and faraway destinations.

Australia and New Zealand are particularly popular destinations for many German speakers; they are seen as dream holiday locations. So next time you go to your local city or town centre, listen out for any German being spoken.

What are popular international destinations among people in your region? Would you consider German-speaking countries a dream destination for Australians and New Zealanders? Justify your answer.

**Na, Marianne, du hast doch bestimmt schon deine nächste Reise geplant. Wo soll es denn dieses Mal hingehen?**

**Ja, ich mache mit einer Reisegruppe eine Rundreise durch Indien.**



iStock.com/fotografix

iStock.com/freemixer

iStock.com/warnermau

Hallo alle zusammen! Wir sind die Familie Winter und wir fliegen in den Ferien für vier Wochen nach Christchurch.



Na, was machst du in den Sommerferien?



Ich fliege für einen Austausch nach Argentinien. Mein Spanisch muss unbedingt besser werden!

OK, wo soll's denn in den Herbstferien hingehen?

Hast du auch deinen Reisepass, Ilse? Sonst lassen die dich in Nairobi nicht ins Land.



Spinnst du! Finnland ist doch im Herbst viel zu kalt. Nein, lass uns nach Malta fliegen.

Ich will unbedingt nach Finnland fahren.



Ich will nach Disneyland!

Hey, Erik, gehst du im Urlaub wieder in der Schweiz wandern?



Ne, dieses Jahr fahre ich mit dem Bus nach Marseille. Städtetourismus ist ja auch nicht schlecht.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you notice something about the verbs being used in some of these sentences? Is this different from how we talk about travelling on various modes of transport in English? If so, why do you think that is?
- What do you know about the travel habits of people in your country? Do they differ from people in German-speaking countries? If so, how?
- Why do you think people from German-speaking countries like the thought of travelling to Australia and New Zealand?
- Do you notice anything about the travellers?

## WIR LIEBEN REISEN!

Alamy Stock Photo/Andrew Watson



Es gibt viele deutsche Touristen in Australien und Neuseeland.

OK, you get it: German speakers love to travel! Have you ever been in a really remote or rural part of Australia or New Zealand and stumbled across a German-speaking tourist? You can come across them anywhere.

Sometimes their love of travel even leads to migration. It is not uncommon for Germans to settle in other parts of the world as a result of enjoying the lifestyle they experienced there during a previous trip. There is even a popular German TV show that follows the experiences of individuals and families who have settled in different countries. Professional qualifications from German-speaking countries are highly regarded and widely accepted all over the world, which eases the transition for migrants who wish to live and work in a different country.

## DEUTSCHSPRACHIGE MIGRANTEN IN AUSTRALIEN UND NEUSEELAND

Migration of German people to Australia and New Zealand dates back to a mid-19th-century bid by the British Government to attract vineyard workers and farmers. A few years later, the gold rush attracted many more Germans, who quickly became the second-largest foreign population in Australia after the British. This was also aided by political unrest in Germany at the time, generating fear and dissatisfaction among the people.

Deutsche, die 1959 nach Australien auswanderten

During World Wars I and II, anti-German attitudes meant Germans were banned from immigrating to Australia and were met with fear and suspicion in New Zealand. Some were even imprisoned and interned. However, between 1945 and 1961, almost 40 000 Germans arrived in Victoria alone. These days, about 200 000 New Zealanders and almost 900 000 Australians are thought to have German heritage.

Die Bäckerei Wunderbar in Hahndorf, Südaustralien



Alamy Stock Photo/Sueddeutsche Zeitung Photo



Alamy Stock Photo/fooma

**AUSTAUSCHPROGRAMME UND AU PAIRS**



Als Au Pair zu arbeiten ist eine gute Möglichkeit, die Welt zu sehen.

Exchange programs are very popular among German students. They are often designed to help improve linguistic skills and can last up to one year. Students are placed with a family and often attend school with a host sibling. Many schools organise their own exchange programs, and students can apply to several other organisations in Australia and New Zealand that run exchange programs. Popular programs are EF Student Exchange, Scholarships for Australian-German Student Exchange (SAGSE), Deutscher Akademischer Austauschdienst (DAAD – German Academic Exchange Service) and Bayerischer Jugendring. There are many other programs; some even offer scholarships for successful applicants.

Alternatively, many German students decide to work as au pairs overseas after finishing school. Au pairs are live-in nannies who also perform light household duties while looking after the child/children of a family. In return, they get free accommodation and food, and even a weekly allowance. Au pair agencies match families with a suitable au pair, and an au pair may stay with a family for between four weeks and a year. It's an affordable way to travel virtually anywhere in the world.

**PROJEKTE**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into one of the following.

**PROJEKT 1 Migration**

- What can you find out about prominent German-speaking communities across the globe? Where are they and why did they settle there?
- What can you find out about people from your country settling elsewhere? Where are they and why did they settle there?
- Are there areas in your country that are more popular than others for migrants? Why do you think this is?
- Do you know about your own heritage? How do you feel about that?
- How would you describe your cultural identity? What makes you say that?

**PROJEKT 2 Austauschprogramme**

- What can you find out about the exchange organisations mentioned in the text?
- What do you think would be the challenges of going on an exchange? How could you overcome them?
- Would you go on an exchange trip? What makes you say that? What type of program would be your preferred exchange?
- State five reasons why German-speaking students might come to your country. Which do you think would be the most popular reason?
- Do you know an exchange student? If so, what was their experience?
- What do you think are the advantages of being an au pair? What could be the challenges? Why do you think that?

**PROJEKT 3 Deutschsprachige Migranten in Australien und Neuseeland**

- What is the meaning of the words 'emigrant', 'immigrant' and 'migrant'?
- What can you find out about the German-speaking community in your country?
- What can you find out about the German-speaking community closest to your area? Choose one settlement and write a detailed description of it.
- Do you think German-speaking migrants have influenced the culture in your country? What makes you say that?
- Several waves of migration occurred between 1840 and 1960. Why do you think that was?
- Have there been similar waves of emigration of people from your country?
- How do you think migration, in general, influences a nation? Why do you say that?
- What is the difference between imprisonment and internment? What type of German immigrants were in each situation?



Anna

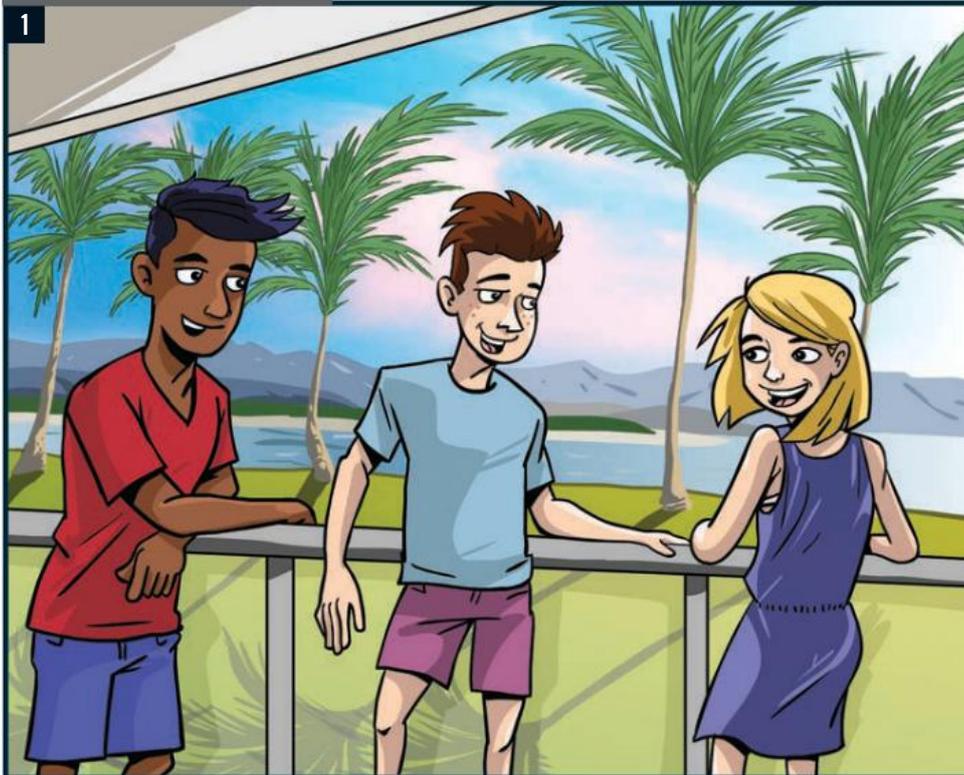


Max



Nick

## In der Ferienwohnung



1

**Anna** Toll! Unsere Ferienwohnung ist direkt am Strand.

**Max** Ja, man braucht nur durch den Park gehen und dann ist man am Meer.

**Anna** Und schau mal die Palmen. Das ist ja wie im Paradies! Ich muss unbedingt Fotos für meine Familie machen.

**Nick** Ich bin schon oft hier gewesen. Meine Familie kommt jedes Jahr nach den Weihnachtstagen nach Port Douglas.

**Max** Super cool!

**Nick** Lass uns erst zum Fluss gehen.

## Am Fluss

**Anna** Gut, dass ich meinen Bikini eingepackt habe. Ich bin schon lange nicht mehr schwimmen gegangen. Wer kommt mit?

**Nick** Halt!! Nicht so schnell. Seht ihr nicht das Schild? Man darf hier nicht schwimmen.

**Anna** Aber warum denn nicht?

**Max** Wo sind Bindi und Bob Irwin, wenn man sie braucht?



2

## Am nächsten Tag

3



**Nick** Hier können wir tauchen.

**Anna** Bist du hier schon mal tauchen gegangen?

**Nick** Ja, in den letzten Ferien.

**Max** Nun kommt doch! Ich will endlich schnorcheln gehen.

**Nick** Guckt mal, da schwimmt ein kleiner Hai um das Boot!

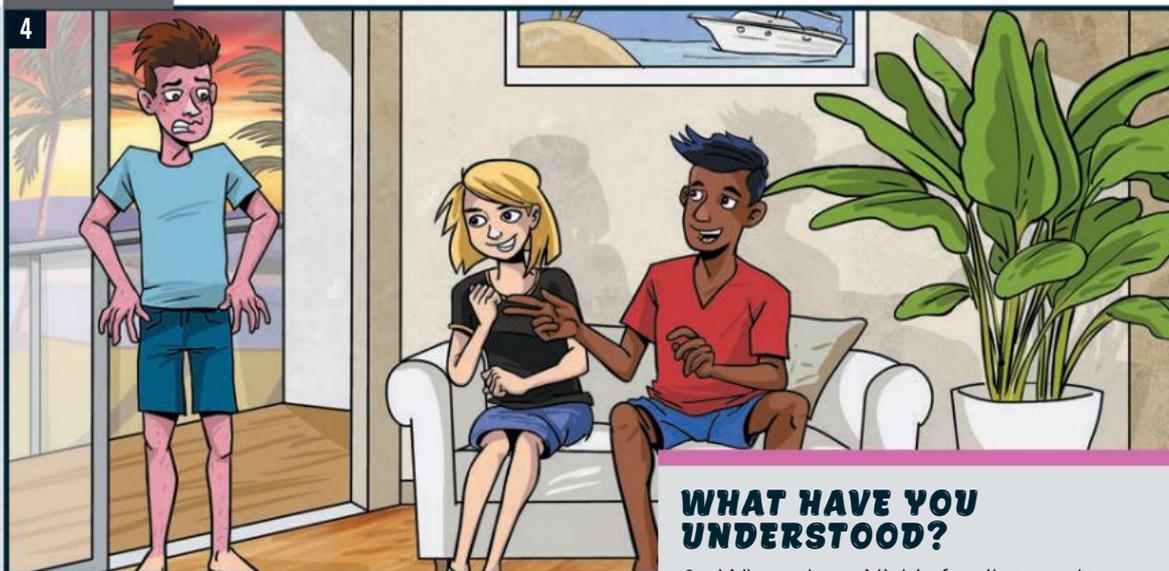
**Max** Hilfe! Ich habe ja nichts gegen den Hai, aber ich bin doch kein Fischfutter.

**Nick** Keine Panik! So kleine Haie sind wirklich sehr freundlich und sie beißen auch nicht.

**Anna** Dann kannst du im Wasser bleiben und mit dem Hai spielen! Ich will wieder ins Boot!!!

## Am Abend

4



**Nick** Mensch, Max, du bist ja so rot wie ein Krebs. Du bist viel zu lange in der Sonne geblieben.

**Max** Autsch, das tut aber weh.

**Anna** Du weißt doch, dass die Sonne hier sehr stark ist. Wo ist denn deine Sonnencreme?

**Max** In Deutschland.

**Anna** Du bist ohne deinen Sonnenhut, deine Sonnenbrille und Sonnencreme nach Australien gekommen? Jetzt hast du einen Sonnenbrand, du Idiot!

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 When does Nick's family travel to Port Douglas?
- 2 Where is the holiday apartment located?
- 3 Do the friends go swimming on the first day? Why or why not?
- 4 What does Nick say about the shark? Do Anna and Max believe him? What makes you say that?
- 5 Name all the items Max forgot in Germany. What does Anna think about that? Why do you say that?

## 1 The perfect tense with *sein*



Er ist schnorcheln gegangen.



Du bist nach Adelaide gefahren.



Wir sind schwimmen gegangen.



Ich bin tauchen gegangen.



Sie ist gewandert.



Sie ist spazieren gegangen.



Ich bin Rad gefahren.



Du bist Wasserski gefahren.



Ich bin zu Hause geblieben.



Sie sind in Frankreich gewesen.

A: Hi, **Paul**!

B: Hallo, **Sofia**.

A: Was hast du in den Ferien gemacht?

B: Ich bin **mit Andrea nach Port Douglas** gefahren.

A: Wie bist du nach Port Douglas gefahren?

B: Wir sind mit dem Auto gefahren. Und du? Was hast du gemacht?

A: Ich bin **zu meiner Oma nach Hamburg** gegangen. Ich bin mit dem Flugzeug geflogen.

B: Aha, und was hast du **in Hamburg** gemacht?

A: Ich bin **viel Rad gefahren** und ein bisschen **gewandert**. Was hast du in Port Douglas gemacht?

B: Also, wir sind ganz viel **schwimmen** und **schnorcheln gegangen**.



**MACH MIT!**

- 1 Take turns to act out the conversation on page 116 with a partner, then create new dialogues by replacing the coloured words with words from the table. Make sure your answers are from your character: watch the possessive adjectives!

a	Michael	mit meiner Schwester	nach Österreich	wandern und Ski fahren
	Susanne	zu meinem Vater	nach Italien	schwimmen und Rad fahren
b	Abdul	mit meinem Onkel	nach Neuseeland	schnorcheln und tauchen
	Almira	alleine	in die Türkei	spazieren und schwimmen

- 2 Make up your own dialogues, replacing the coloured words with suggested options below.

nach Italien	mit meinen Freundinnen	
in die USA	mit meinem Cousin	
nach Kambodscha	mit meinem Opa	
nach Mexiko	mit meinen Tanten	
nach Paris	mit meiner Schwester	

Tip to bottom: Shutterstock.com/Mostovyi; Sergii; Igoevich; Shutterstock.com/carstenbrandt; Shutterstock.com/Phovoir; Shutterstock.com/alvarez.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Wir **haben** in den Ferien Monopoly **gespielt**.  
 Esther **hat** am Samstag Klavier **geübt**.  
 Herr Simon und Frau Rohe **haben** gestern ein Konzert **besucht**.  
 Du **hast** hoffentlich schon deine Hausaufgaben **gemacht**.  
**Habt** ihr letzte Woche den neuen Actionfilm **gesehen**?  
 Ich **habe** noch keine Zeit für eine Email an Jordan **gehabt**.

But:

Wir **sind** in den Ferien **geschwommen**.  
 Esther **ist** am Samstag **ausgegangen**.  
 Herr Simon und Frau Rohde **sind** gestern in Urlaub **gefahren**.  
 Du **bist** hoffentlich schon **aufgestanden**.  
**Seid** ihr letzte Woche ins Kino **gegangen**?  
 Ich **bin** noch nicht auf der Post **gewesen**.

And what about:

Wir **sind** in den Ferien zuhause **geblieben**.  
 Esther **ist** gerade erst **aufgewacht**.  
 Herr Simon und Frau Rohde **sind** leider **gestorben**.  
**Bist** du **gewachsen**?  
**Seid** ihr letzte Woche **umgezogen**?  
 Ich **bin** richtig früh **eingeschlafen**.

Can you figure out what the rule is here?  
 Can you spot a difference between the first, second and third groups of sentences? If so, what is it?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Look at the following sentences and translate them into English.

- a** Sie haben das Buch schon gelesen.

**b** Marius ist gestern spät nach Hause gekommen.

**c** Das habe ich noch nie gehört.

**d** Oh, wie schrecklich: Elena hat sich das Bein gebrochen.

**e** Wie lange seid ihr Montag auf der Party geblieben?

Is there something different in the German sentences and their English translations? What is it?

- Now look at these sentences: work out if the English translations differ from the German sentences and, if so, in what way.

✗ Ich gehe nach England.	
✓ Ich fliege nach England.	
	✗ Ich gehe zum Strand.
	✓ Ich fahre zum Strand.

- Fährst du in den Sommerferien wieder nach Zürich, Magda?
- Wir fliegen jedes Jahr nach Lanzarote.
- Wie kommen die Brechts in den Urlaub? Sie fahren immer zusammen mit dem Bus.
- Wo gehst du denn hin? Ach, nur in die Stadt. Mein Fahrrad ist kaputt.
- Wenn ihr in den Urlaub fahrt, wie kommt ihr dorthin? Meistens fahren wir mit dem Zug.

## What's different about German?

### A pair, a couple or a few

In German, there is only a minute detail that separates the meaning of 'a pair' (exactly two) from 'a few' (more than two) and that is the first letter of the word: *Paar/paar*. By now, you know how important capitals are in the German language. Have a look at the following images. Can you see the rule?



That's right: *ein Paar* refers to exactly two of something. It can also refer to a couple, as in two people, but not to a few items; those would be referred to as *ein paar*. So: *ein Paar* = two; whereas *ein paar* = about two, or a few.

*Willkommen im Hotel Paradies!*  
*Bei uns erwartet Sie eine entspannte Atmosphäre.*



Unser Hotel liegt direkt am Strand.  
 Die Inneneinrichtung in unseren Zimmern sind modern und freundlich.  
 Unsere Zimmer sind auch extrem sauber.

Es gibt auch ein 50 Meter langes Schwimmbad und Wasserrutschen für die Kinder. Hier wird es nie langweilig!

Oder vielleicht möchten Sie lieber von unserem Tennisplatz Gebrauch machen.

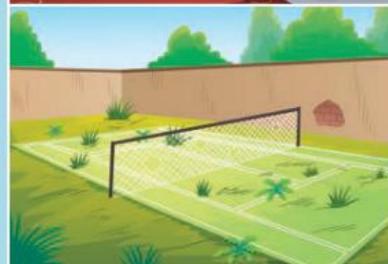
Verspannt? Gestresst? Genießen Sie eine kostenlose Massage in unserem erstklassigen Wellnessbereich.

Wann sind Sie das letzte Mal schön Essen gegangen? Im Hotel Paradies sind alle Speisen inklusive. Unser weltberühmter Chefkoch Pierre zaubert jeden Tag eine neue Köstlichkeit.

Sind Sie lange nicht mehr gewandert? Unser Hotel bietet Ihnen täglich eine zweistündige Wanderung durch das paradiesische Hinterland an.

Oder leihen Sie sich doch ein Fahrrad für eine ausgedehnte Radtour.

Vielleicht möchten Sie lieber shoppen. Die nahegelegene Stadt hat für jeden Geschmack das passende Geschäft.



*Das Hotel Paradies. Bei uns haben Sie einen paradiesischen Urlaub!*

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Das Hotel ist ruhig.
- 2 Kindern wird in dem Hotel schnell langweilig.
- 3 Das Hotel hat eine Tischtennisplatte und einen Wellnessbereich.
- 4 Gäste müssen für das Essen nicht bezahlen.
- 5 Die Umgebung ist sehr schön.
- 6 Es gibt fast keine Geschäfte in der Stadt.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Is the advertisement truthful? Why do you think that?
- Is the name of the hotel suitable? What makes you say that?
- Would you like to stay at the hotel? Why/why not?
- What changes would you suggest to the hotel owners?
- What reviews would the hotel attract? Give an example.

# Sprache und Kultur

## Hochdeutsch

High German is a predominantly phonetic language. In particular, the pronunciation of vowels rarely differs. That means words are pronounced as they are written. (This is not the same for dialects and regional varieties, but the German you are learning is *Hochdeutsch* – ‘High German’.)

The same cannot necessarily be said for English. Have a look at the following words.

tough      trough      though  
drought      thought

Do you notice anything? If so, what is it?  
Now have a look at these German words.

Fund      Hund      Mund  
Kunde      bunt

Reading German might not be difficult compared to other languages; however, writing it is. Strict punctuation rules, as well as diphthongs, capitals and hidden double consonants, can cause difficulties even for native speakers.

Consider the following two phrases.

Sie essen alles **in Maßen**.  
Sie essen alles **in Massen**.

Can you find out what the two sentences mean?

Sometimes, the smallest difference in spelling can have huge implications on the meaning of a sentence, just like in these two phrases, which are exact opposites.

Therefore, *ß* and *ss* are not interchangeable! In fact, there is a strict rule for when you should use one or the other.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What can you see here?
- Based on your observations, which language do you think is easier or harder to read?
- What makes you say that?



*ß* must follow a long vowel, such as in *der Fuß*.  
*ss* follows a short vowel, like in *der Fluss*.

## So ist Deutsch!

In order to streamline German orthography (the spelling system) and punctuation and make it more logical, the spelling reform was introduced in 1996. An international agreement was signed in Vienna in 1995 by Germany, Austria, Liechtenstein and Switzerland. Luxembourg initially did not sign the agreement, but eventually adopted the reform anyway. The reform was not without controversy, with large newspapers and publishers initially refusing to adopt it. German-speakers had, after all, spent years trying to navigate the complex grammatical rules around the language's orthography.

One of the major rules of the spelling reform was to separate *ß* and *ss*, which made them two distinct letters that could not be used interchangeably. Ninety per cent of the entire spelling reform was about this one rule.

Another rule change was that triple consonants were introduced. Before the spelling reform, compound nouns such as the examples below could only have two of the same consonant. These days, they are spelled with three consonants. It might look funny, but it is correct!

Schiff + Fahrt → Schifffahrt  
Sauerstoff + Flasche → Sauerstoffflasche  
Ballett + Tänzer → Balletttänzer

The spelling reform is not just a suggested or recommended change in German-speaking schools and everyday life. It became law on 1 August 2006, and older orthography and punctuation rules are now considered incorrect.

However, written Standard Swiss German (SSG) has still does not use *ß*; *ss* is used at all times.



## 1 Akkusativpräpositionen

In *Thema 2*, you were introduced to a group of prepositions that require the articles and pronouns that follow them to take the accusative case.

<b>bis</b>	by, to, until, up to	<b>gegen</b>	against, towards, about
<b>durch</b>	through, by	<b>ohne</b>	without
<b>entlang</b>	along	<b>um</b>	around
<b>für</b>	for		

Only articles and possessive adjectives that precede **masculine nouns** change their endings.

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>den</b> Park	die Familie	das Apartment	die Fische
<b>einen</b> Park	eine Familie	ein Apartment	Fische
<b>meinen</b> Park	meine Familie	mein Apartment	meine Fische

## 2 Dativpräpositionen

As you learnt in *Thema 8*, there are also prepositions that have to be followed by the dative case.

<b>aus</b>	out of	<b>nach</b>	to
<b>außer</b>	except for	<b>seit</b>	since, for (temporal)
<b>bei</b>	with, nearby	<b>von</b>	from
<b>gegenüber (von)</b>	opposite	<b>zu</b>	to, towards
<b>mit</b>	with		

Unlike with accusative prepositions, articles and possessive adjectives across all genders change.

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>dem</b> Park	<b>der</b> Familie	<b>dem</b> Apartment	<b>den</b> Fischen
<b>einem</b> Park	<b>einer</b> Familie	<b>einem</b> Apartment	Fischen
<b>meinem</b> Park	<b>meiner</b> Familie	<b>meinem</b> Apartment	<b>meinen</b> Fischen

Ich bin <b>bei</b> Oma.	I'm <b>at</b> grandma's place.
Wir fahren <b>mit</b> Freunden in Urlaub.	We are going on holidays <b>with</b> friends.
Er lernt <b>seit</b> drei Jahren Gitarre.	He's been learning the guitar <b>for</b> three years.
Das Auto steht hier <b>seit</b> gestern.	The car has been standing here <b>since</b> yesterday.
Michael läuft <b>aus</b> dem Haus.	Michael runs <b>out of</b> the house.
Salma geht <b>zu</b> einer Party.	Salma goes <b>to</b> a party.
Familie Roberts reist <b>nach</b> England.	The Roberts family travels <b>to</b> England.
Das ist ein Geschenk <b>von</b> meiner Cousine.	That is a present <b>from</b> my cousin.
Die ganze Familie fährt an den Strand <b>außer</b> ihrer Mutter.	The entire family goes to the beach <b>except for</b> their mother.
Jonathans Schule liegt <b>gegenüber von</b> dem Park.	Jonathan's school is <b>opposite</b> the park.

### 3 Das Perfekt + *sein*

Verbs that take *sein* instead of *haben* to form the **perfect tense** describe strong physical movement from one location to another (for example, *gehen*, *fahren*, *laufen* and *schwimmen*) or a change of state (for example, *wachsen*, *sterben*, *umziehen* and *aufwachen*).

There are a few exceptions to the rule: *bleiben* and *sein* also take *sein* and are exceptions that must be memorised.

	fahren	gehen	sein	bleiben
ich	bin ... gefahren	bin ... gegangen	bin ... gewesen	bin ... geblieben
du	bist ... gefahren	bist ... gegangen	bist ... gewesen	bist ... geblieben
er, sie, es	ist ... gefahren	ist ... gegangen	ist ... gewesen	ist ... geblieben
wir	sind ... gefahren	sind ... gegangen	sind ... gewesen	sind ... geblieben
ihr	seid ... gefahren	seid ... gegangen	seid ... gewesen	seid ... geblieben
sie, Sie	sind ... gefahren	sind ... gegangen	sind ... gewesen	sind ... geblieben

**Seid** ihr in den Ferien nach Berlin **gefahren**?

Marie und Ella **sind** gestern ins Kino **gegangen**.

Familie Moor **ist** letztes Jahr auf Mallorca **gewesen**.

Er **ist** zu Hause **geblieben**.

Did you guys go to Berlin in the holidays?

Marie and Ella went to the cinema yesterday.

The Moor family was in Mallorca last year.

He stayed at home.



Wir sind in den Ferien  
nach Berlin gefahren.



## Holiday nouns

der Austausch (e)	exchange
der Bikini (s)	bikini
der Fluss (˘e)	river
der Krebs (e)	crab
der Hai (e)	shark
der Reisepass (˘e)	passport
der Schatten (-)	shadow
der Sonnenbrand (˘e)	sunburn
der Sonnenhut (˘e)	sun hat
der Städteurlaub (e)	city tourism
der Strand (˘e)	beach
der Urlaub (e)	holiday
der Wellnessbereich (e)	spa area
die Atmosphäre (n)	atmosphere
die Ferien (pl.)	holidays
die Ferienwohnung (en)	holiday apartment
die Gastfamilie (n)	host family
die Inneneinrichtung (en)	furnishings
die Palme (n)	palm
die Rundreise (n)	tour
die Sonne (n)	sun
die Sonnenbrille (n)	sunglasses
die Sonnencreme (s)	sunscreen
das Au-pair (s)	au pair
das Boot (e)	boat
das Krokodil (e)	crocodile
das Meer (e)	sea
das Paradies (e)	paradise
das Schild (er)	sign

## Other nouns

der Balletttänzer (-)	ballet dancer (male)
die Balletttänzerin (nen)	ballet dancer (female)
die Sauerstoffflasche (n)	oxygen tank
die Schifffahrt (en)	boat trip

## Verbs taking sein in the perfect tense

aufstehen (aufgestanden)	to get up
ausgehen (ausgegangen)	to go out
aufwachen (aufgewacht)	to wake up
bleiben (geblieben)	to stay, to remain
einpacken (eingepackt)	to pack
einschlafen (eingeschlafen)	to fall asleep
fahren (gefahren)	to go, to travel
machen (gemacht)	to do
Rad fahren (Rad gefahren)	to cycle

schnorcheln (geschnorchelt)	to snorkel
schwimmen (geschwommen)	to swim
sein (gewesen)	to be
Ski fahren (Ski gefahren)	to ski
sterben (gestorben)	to die
spazieren gehen (spazieren gegangen)	to go for a walk
tauchen (getaucht)	to dive
umziehen (umgezogen)	to move (house)
wachsen (gewachsen)	to grow
wandern (gewandert)	to hike
Wasserski fahren (Wasserski gefahren)	to go waterskiing

## Other verb

genießen	to enjoy
----------	----------

## Prepositions with accusative case

bis	by, to, until, up to
durch	through, by
entlang	along
für	for
gegen	against, towards, about
ohne	without
um	around

## Prepositions with dative case

aus	out of
außer	except for
bei	with/nearby
gegenüber (von)	opposite
mit	with
nach	to
seit	since/for (temporal)
von	from
zu	to/towards

## Useful words/expressions

ausgedehnt	extensive
Autsch!	Ouch!
Gebrauch machen	to make use of
nahegelegen	nearby
ein Paar	a pair
ein paar	a few of
in Maßen	in moderation
in Massen	in vast quantities

# Berliner Luft

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ say where places are located
- ✓ give and understand directions
- ✓ talk about places around town and how to get around
- ✓ make arrangements to meet someone
- ✓ use two-way prepositions.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ some of the sights in Berlin
- ✓ some of Berlin's history
- ✓ the former German Democratic Republic (DDR) and German reunification
- ✓ Potsdam and Schloss Sanssouci
- ✓ pedestrian zones.

Berlin is the capital of, and most populated city in, Germany. It is also one of 16 states and the largest of the three city-states in Germany, the other two being Hamburg and Bremen.

Berlin has a rich history that has shaped its identity, particularly since the end of World War II. After Germany lost the war, the victorious Allies – Great Britain, France, the USA and the Soviet Union – divided the country and its capital, Berlin, into four zones. Three zones formed West Germany and West Berlin, and the remaining Soviet zone became East Germany and East Berlin. The Berlin Wall was built in 1961, effectively separating the zones.

As a result of the separation, West Berlin was located inside East Germany and so could no longer function as the capital of West Germany. Instead, Bonn became the capital. East Berlin remained the capital of East Germany for almost 40 years, until 1989, when civil unrest and demonstrations demanding the opening of the border between the two countries forced the East German Government to act. The ruling Socialist Unity Party allowed the borders to be opened and all East Germans were free to travel to the West. Formal political negotiations followed, with East and West Germany officially reunified in 1990, once again becoming one country.

These days, all of Berlin is buzzing with art, music, culture, politics and everything you would expect to find in a modern metropolis. Not much reminds visitors of the 40 years of stark separation.

Hi Jens, wo fährst du denn hin?

Tag Marcus! Ich will zur Museumsinsel. Da ist heute ein Musikfestival und ich treffe mich mit Linus. Kommst du mit?

Ja klar!

Alamy Stock Photo/imageBROKER

Shutterstock.com/NH-studio

Wow, Berlin hat eine tolle Geschichte!



Wir sind hier an der East Side Gallery in Berlin. Das war vor der Wiedervereinigung ein Teil der Berliner Mauer.



Wahnsinn! Die machen die Grenze auf! Kommt, wir schauen uns das an.



Ist Sanssouci nicht wunderschön?

Ja, ich mag besonders die Gärten um das Schloss.

age fotostock/Peter Erik Forsberg



Na, Lena, warum gehen wir nicht zum Brandenburger Tor? Das war früher in Ost-Berlin.

Echt? Wie cool!

iStock.com/RelaxFoto.de

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do you know about the history of your country's capital?
- What do you know about the history of the area where you live?
- Are there any places of interest in your capital and your area that tourists might be attracted to? Why do you think that?
- Has a specific political event shaped the culture or identity of people in your country? If so, when and why did it happen? What do you think about it?
- Are there places you can go to learn more about the history of your country? What places would you advise tourists to visit in your country? What makes you say that?

## BERLIN



Das Wappen von Berlin

Berlin und der Tiergarten



Compared to other European cities such as Rome, Paris or Vienna, Berlin, *Hauptstadt der Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (capital of the Federal Republic of Germany) is a relative newcomer. Berlin was founded in 1237 and grew from a provincial town to an industrial and cultural giant by the beginning of the 20th century. It is the largest city in Germany.

Although Berlin was once divided, the city is now at the centre of an expanding Europe and at the crossroads between Eastern and Western Europe. It offers something for everyone, whether you are young or old, sophisticated or trendy, loud or relaxed.

Berlin is one of the greenest cities in the world. Berliners take advantage of all their city has to offer, especially in summer when they head for the parks (such as the Tiergarten), forests (such as the Grunewald) or lakes (such as the Wannsee).

### Ost und West

With the division of Germany in 1945 and the creation of East Germany and West Germany in 1949, Berlin was divided as well. After nearly three million Germans living in East Germany fled to the West, the East German communist government constructed *die Berliner Mauer* in 1961. This despised symbol of the Cold War remained in place until the night of 9–10 November 1989, when protests in East Berlin led to the collapse of the Wall. Since reunification on 3 October 1990, Berlin has again become the political heart of the nation.

Look at the former border between the *Deutsche Demokratische Republik* (DDR) and the *Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (BRD). Why do you think this border (and the entire border between the former communist nations and Western Europe) was called the Iron Curtain? What can you find out about the Cold War?

Deutschland, vor der Vereinigung



## EINE TOUR DURCH BERLIN



Potsdamer Platz



Das Brandenburger Tor

Berlin today is often referred to as *eine Weltstadt* (a world city), like New York or Paris. This is in many ways a fitting title, because the city is constantly growing and evolving as the capital of reunified Germany.

Berlin has one of the most vibrant youth-culture scenes in Europe, with cafés, bars and clubs catering to all musical tastes. Daytime activities are also endless. Visitors could spend days just exploring the *Museumsinsel*. As the name implies, it is an island in the centre of Berlin. As well as the traditional museums such as the *Deutsches Historisches Museum* and the *Pergamon Museum*, there are more unusual museums such as the *Museum Haus am Checkpoint Charlie* and the *Jüdisches Museum* (Jewish Museum).

Another must-see is *Potsdamer Platz*, which was a part of the 'no-man's land' on the eastern side of the Wall during the Cold War. It has been transformed into a showcase of modern architecture, with shopping arcades, cinemas and theatres. From here it is only a stone's throw to the *Regierungsviertel* (Government Quarter), the *Brandenburger Tor* (Brandenburg Gate) and the glass-domed *Reichstag* (Parliament House).



To see the most famous tourist sites in Berlin, jump on double-decker bus route 100, which runs along the main axis of central Berlin: *Unter den Linden* past the *Berliner Dom*, the *Staatsoper*, the *Brandenburger Tor* and the *Reichstag*; and then along the *Straße des 17. Juni* and past *die Siegessäule* (Victory Column), where the Love Parade, a popular techno music festival, was started by DJ Dr Motte in 1989 under the motto 'Friede, Freude, Eierkuchen' (Freedom, Joy, Pancakes). The parade was held annually between 1989 and 2003 in Berlin and young people from all over Germany and Europe streamed into Berlin to be part of the world's biggest street party.

No trip to Berlin would be complete without a visit to the shopping district called the *Kurfürstendamm*, or *Kudamm* for short, in the west end of central Berlin. Here you'll find the largest department store in Europe, *KaDeWe* (*Kaufhaus des Westens*), just down the road from the *Kaiser-Wilhelm-Gedächtniskirche*, a bombed-out remnant of a church, kept as an anti-war memorial. Sports fans can end the day by heading to the *Olympiastadion* in the west of the city to see local soccer team FC Hertha-Berlin battle it out on the *Fußballfeld*.



**Die Kaiser-Wilhelm-Gedächtniskirche**

Alamy Stock Photo/Bildagentur-online/Klein

**POTSDAM UND SCHLOSS SANSSOUCI**

Potsdam is a town 20 kilometres south-west of Berlin. It owes its character to the Prussian monarchs who built their palaces in a huge park on the banks of the river Havel. The best-known palace is *Schloss Sanssouci*. It was built between 1745 and 1747 on the orders of *Friedrich der Große* (the Prussian emperor Frederick the Great), with a design based on his ideas. *Sans souci* is French for *ohne Sorgen*, or 'without worries'; the palace is a great example of the very ornate and playful Rococo style. *Schloss Sanssouci* hosts numerous artistic treasures and was Frederick the Great's favourite residence. He died there in 1786.



**Schloss Sanssouci**

iStock.com/Vladislav Zolotov

**PROJEKTE**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into one of the following.

**PROJEKT 1 Berlin**

- What landmarks in Berlin do you find most interesting? Why?
- Compared to other capital cities in the Western world, Berlin offers a relatively affordable cost of living (housing, utilities such as water and electricity, groceries, entertainment). Why do you think that is? What is the cost of living in your capital city and/or any large city in your country? Why do you think that is the case? What expenses contribute to the cost of living?
- Why do you think Berlin is an attractive city, especially for young people? Do you have a city like that in your country? What are the similarities/differences?
- After the fall of the Wall, many people from East Berlin moved to the West and many people from the West moved to East Berlin. Can you think of an explanation for that movement? Do you have cities or regions in your country that attract more people than others? Why do you think that is?

**PROJEKT 2 Potsdam und Schloss Sanssouci**

- What can you find out about the city of Potsdam? What is its history? In your opinion, which city in your country has the most interesting foundation and/or history? Explain.
- What landmarks would you like to visit in Potsdam? What do you find appealing about the landmarks you've chosen?
- Is there a particular industry Potsdam is famous for? Do you have a similar industry in your country? If so, where is it located and would tourists find it attractive?
- Why do you think the palace was called 'Sanssouci'? What connotation does the name have?
- Do you have palaces or historical landmarks in your country? What are they and where are they located? Why are they famous?
- What other residences did Friedrich der Große have? Why do you think Sanssouci was his favourite? How would you describe your country's leaders' residences? Is this the way you would describe Sanssouci? Explain.

# EINE TRABI-SAFARI DURCH BERLIN



## In der Jugendherberge



**Rezeptionist** Willkommen in Berlin! Die Jungs schlafen im ersten Stock und die Mädchen im zweiten.

**Herr Lenz** Tragt euer Gepäck bitte in eure Zimmer. Wir treffen uns in zehn Minuten wieder vor dem Haupteingang. Seid bitte pünktlich. Wie ihr wisst, machen wir heute eine Trabi-Safari. Die Tour beginnt in einer halben Stunde am Gendarmenmarkt.

**Max** Was ist denn eine Trabi-Safari?

**Herr Lenz** Das ist eine Stadttour in Trabis. Nun aber los! Wir müssen in zehn Minuten mit der Straßenbahn in die Stadtmitte fahren.

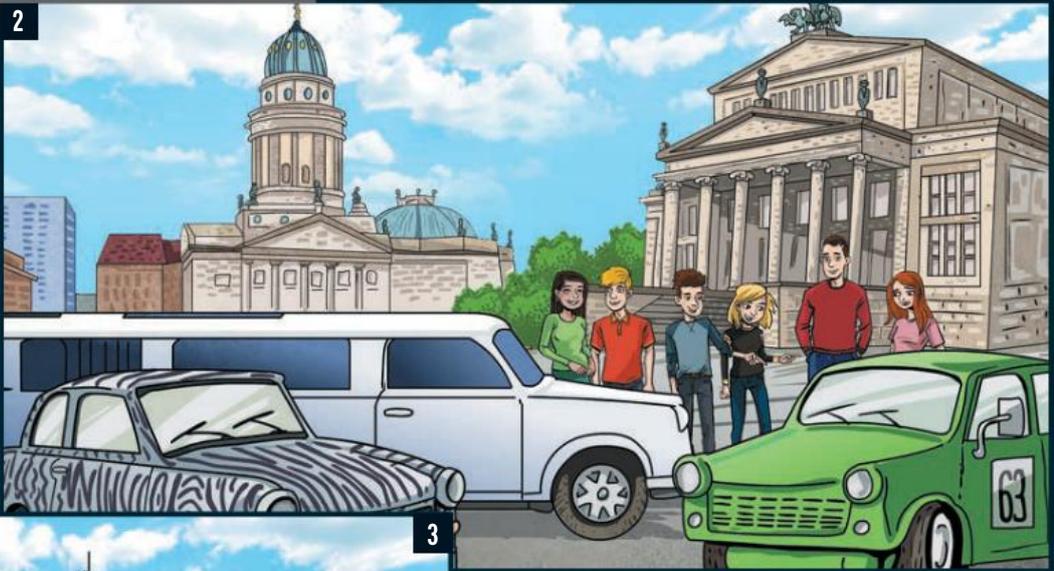
**Herr Lenz** Seht mal, das ist der Deutsche Dom. O.K., jeder darf sich jetzt einen Trabi aussuchen.

**Max** Wie witzig! Anna, stell' dich mal neben den Renntabi dort, ich möchte ein Foto machen.

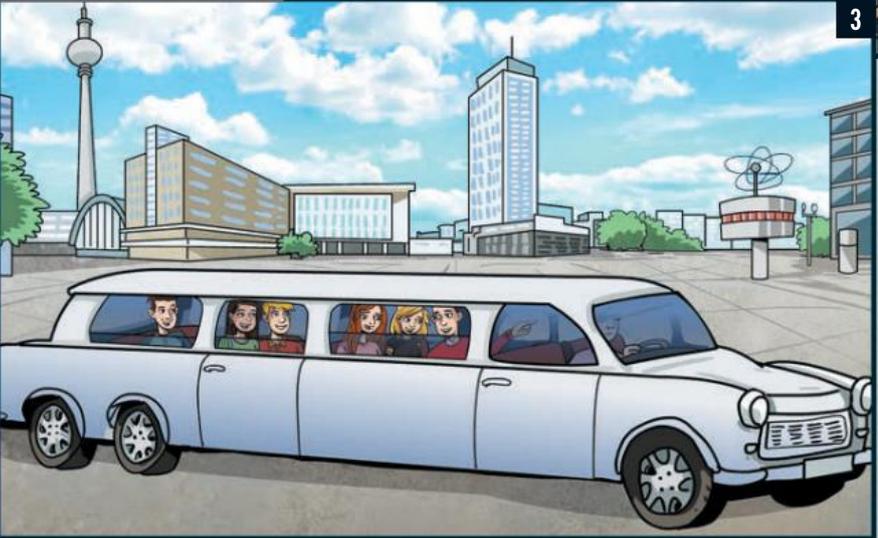
**Herr Lenz** Ich nehme den Stretchtrabi. Wer fährt mit?

**Alle** Wir!

## Am Gendarmenmarkt



## Am Alexanderplatz



**Herr Lenz** Hier sind wir am Alexanderplatz. Geradeaus, hinter den Bäumen, ist die Weltzeituhr. Das war das alte Zentrum von Ost-Berlin. Und jetzt fahren wir durch das Scheunenviertel. Hier wohnen heute viele Studenten.

**Julia** Cool! Guck mal, neben dem Café ist ein Secondhandladen.

**Herr Lenz** Noch nicht, Julia! Später habt ihr eine Stunde frei und könnt einkaufen gehen. Dort neben dem großen Haus ist die Neue Synagoge ...

## Am Brandenburger Tor vorbei

**Herr Lenz** Jetzt fahren wir die Friedrichstraße entlang und dann rechts in die Straße ‚Unter den Linden‘. Dort ist das Brandenburger Tor, ein wichtiges Symbol für Deutschland.

**Christian** War hier nicht früher die Mauer?

**Herr Lenz** Ja, das stimmt!



## Am Checkpoint Charlie

5



**Herr Lenz** Hier sind wir wieder auf der Friedrichstraße. Dort auf der linken Seite seht ihr Checkpoint Charlie.

**Sibel** Das war ein Grenzübergang für Ausländer zwischen dem Osten und dem Westen.

**Herr Lenz** Richtig, Sibel, der Übergang zwischen der amerikanischen Zone und Ost-Berlin.

## Am Potsdamer Platz

**Herr Lenz** Wir steigen hier aus. Ihr habt jetzt etwas Freizeit. Wir treffen uns dann in einer Stunde wieder hier vor dem Kino.

**Max** Ich hab' einen Bärenhunger. Los, gehen wir was essen!

**Julia** Guck mal, im Sony Centre ist eine Bäckerei.

**Anna** Die Trabi-Safari war echt toll. Super, dass wir noch fünf Tage hier sind!

**Sibel** Gut, dass wir auch Freizeit haben. Ich will unbedingt die Tour in den Babelsberger Filmstudios in Potsdam machen.

**Christian** Und ich möchte ein Stück von der Mauer kaufen. Aber wo ist mein Geldbeutel?

6



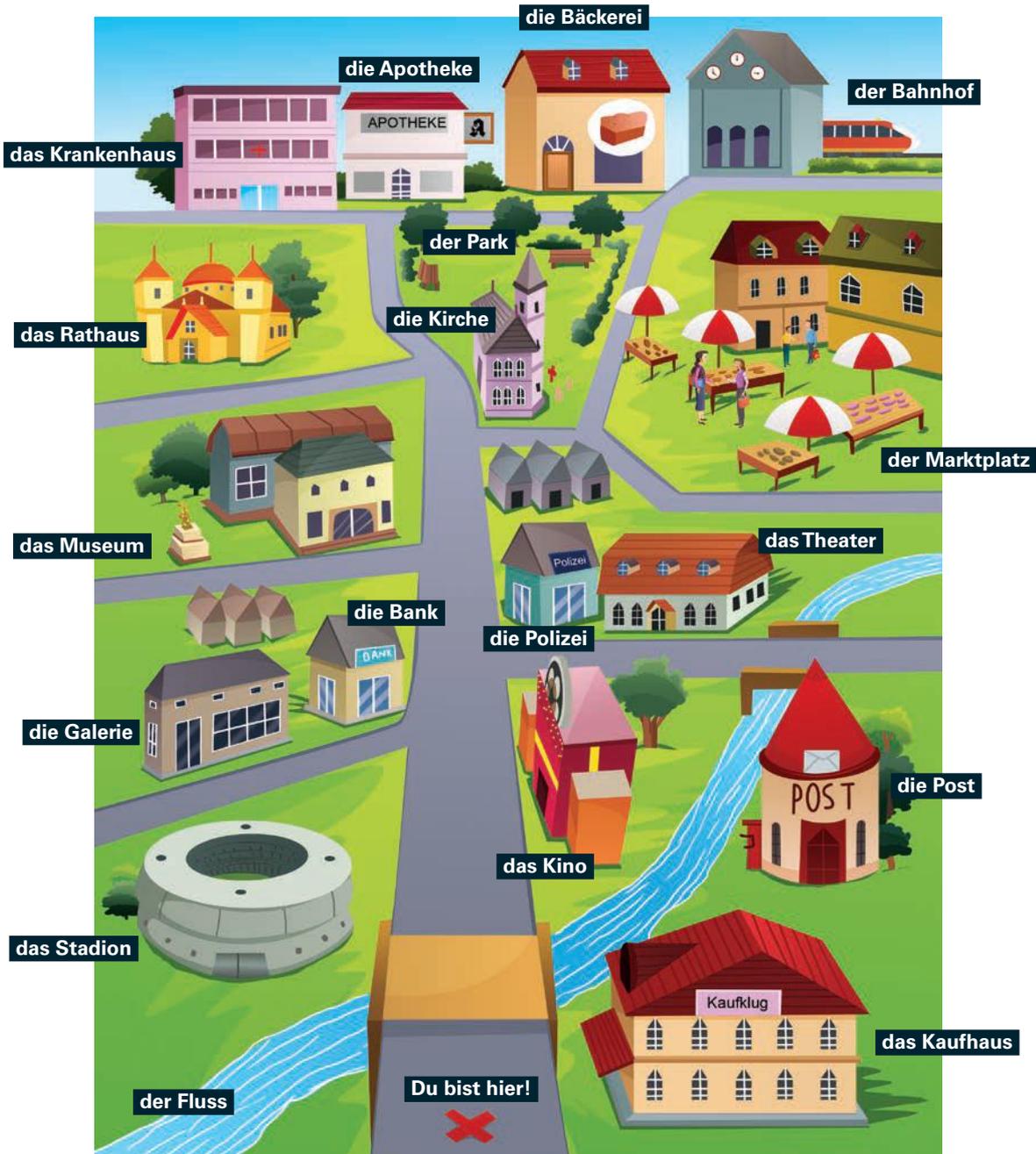
## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 What are the sleeping arrangements? Where do the boys sleep? Where do the girls sleep?
- 2 When and where does the Trabi-Safari start?
- 3 What do you find out about Alexanderplatz?
- 4 What was the purpose of Checkpoint Charlie?
- 5 What does Christian want to buy? Why can't he?

## 1 Locations and directions



### Der Stadtplan



### Directions

rechts	➔	die erste/zweite ... Straße rechts/links	an + Dativ + vorbei	gegenüber von + Dativ
links	➔			
geradeaus/die Straße entlang	⬆			
auf der rechten Seite	✕			
auf der linken Seite	✕			

## Prepositions of place



**an**

onto, on, at, by



**auf**

on



**hinter**

behind



**in**

in



**neben**

next to, beside



**über**

over, above



**unter**

under, beneath



**vor**

in front of



**zwischen**

between



### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out the above conversation with a partner. Next, use the vocabulary on this spread to create new dialogues, replacing the coloured location and direction words. Use the map to work out the location of each place listed on the right. Start at X.

- der Bahnhof
- die Kirche
- die Brücke
- das Stadion
- das Krankenhaus

## 2 Locations and activities



**ACHTUNG!**

in das = ins

<b>A:</b>	Hallo, Stefan!		
<b>B:</b>	Hi, Mika!		
<b>A:</b>	Wollen wir heute	in	den Park? die Galerie?
		ins Kaufhaus ins Kino ins Museum ins Stadion ins Theater	gehen?
<b>B:</b>	Ja gerne. Treffen wir uns	um ... Uhr später	vor hinter neben
			der Bäckerei dem Krankenhaus der Apotheke dem Bahnhof dem Rathaus dem Park der Kirche dem Museum dem Theater der Bank der Polizei der Galerie dem Kino der Post dem Kaufhaus der Brücke dem Stadion
<b>A:</b>	Alles klar. Bis dann!		
<b>B:</b>	Tschüs!		

Hast du heute Zeit?

Ja, was wollen wir machen?



Shutterstock.com/sirtravelalot

### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out the conversation in the table with a partner. Create new dialogues by using different words for the location and activity.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Wir gehen **ins** Museum.  
 Er klebt den Sticker **ans** Auto.  
 Der Rauch steigt **übers** Haus.  
 Die Mutter stellt den Blumentopf **vors** Haus.

Can you see a pattern here? If so, what do you think the rule is? Is it similar in English?

What about these? Do you see what the rule is?

Im Museum gibt es viel zu sehen.  
 Wir warten **am** Auto.

Hey, Jonas, kommst du mit **ins** Kino?



Nein, ich kann nicht.  
 Ich muss mit meiner Mutter **in den** Supermarkt.

Alamy Stock Photo/Catchlight Visual Services



Ich warte auf euch **am** Sportplatz!

## What's different about German?

### sp/st

The pronunciation of *sp* and *st* differs depending on whether these consonant combinations are at the start of or in the middle of a word.

<b>Start</b>	Fenster
aussteigen	<b>Ast</b>
<b>Stadt</b>	Osten
<b>Sport</b>	Knospe
<b>Spiel</b>	Prospekt

When the letters *sp* and *st* are at the start of a word, they are pronounced 'shp' and 'sht'. When they are in the middle or at the end of a word, they are pronounced exactly as they are written. Caution: if the word is a compound noun, it can look like the *st/sp* is in the middle of the word, when in reality it is at the beginning of one of the words in the chain. In this case, *st/sp* is pronounced as if it is at the start of a word. The same applies to verbs with a prefix.

Hauptstadt	ansparen
Lieblingssport	bestrafen

Practise saying the following words.

- Stufe
- Strand
- Westen
- Spargel
- robust
- Edelstein
- kosten
- Nordseestrand
- Stein
- anstreichen
- Stift
- spielen
- lispeln
- Wespe
- weeterspielen
- Sprint
- Kasper
- Treppenstufe
- Strafe
- Lust

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

1 Translate the following sentences into English.

- a Ich kenne ein tolles Geschäft in der Friedrichstraße.
- b Sag mal, Tanja, kennst du Erik aus der 10D?
- c Hey Leute, kennt ihr einen guten Film fürs Wochenende?
- d Weißt du, wie spät es ist?
- e Mama und Papa, wisst ihr schon, wann Oma ankommt?
- f Ich weiß wirklich nicht, was ich am Wochenende machen soll.

2 Do you notice a difference between the German verbs in these sentences and their English counterparts? Can you see a pattern?



# FLUCHT AUS DER DDR

Nach dem Zweiten Weltkrieg haben die Alliierten Deutschland in vier Besatzungszonen und später in zwei deutsche Staaten geteilt, die BRD (Bundesrepublik Deutschland = Westdeutschland) und die DDR (Deutsche Demokratische Republik = Ostdeutschland). Die USA, Großbritannien und Frankreich haben die westlichen Zonen kontrolliert. Die Sowjetunion hat die östliche Zone kontrolliert. Auch Berlin hat man nun in vier Besatzungszonen geteilt.

**die Besatzungszone wurde ... geteilt**  
**der freie Verkehr versuchten**

occupation zone was divided  
free (trade) market tried (simple past tense of to try)

**die Flucht erfolgreich verloren**

escape successful  
lost

**versteckte**

hid

**die Motorhaube**

hood

**der Grenzübergang**

border crossing

Am 13. August 1961 hat die Sowjetunion die Berliner Mauer gebaut. Die Mauer beendet den freien Verkehr zwischen den Ost- und den West-Sektoren in Berlin. Menschen aus dem Osten durften nicht mehr in den Westen reisen. In den Jahren zwischen 1961 und 1989 haben etwa 5000 Menschen die Flucht aus der DDR versucht. Etwa 2000 waren erfolgreich. Insgesamt haben 938 Menschen aus der DDR auf der Flucht ihr Leben verloren. Hier ist ein Beispiel für eine erfolgreiche Flucht:

Im kleinen Auto ‚Isetta‘ hat sich ein Flüchtling unter der Motorhaube versteckt. Die Flucht war erfolgreich, weil niemand diesen Autotyp kontrolliert hat. Man glaubte, dieses Auto ist als Fluchtwagen zu klein. Neun Personen sind auf diese Weise in den Westen geflohen.

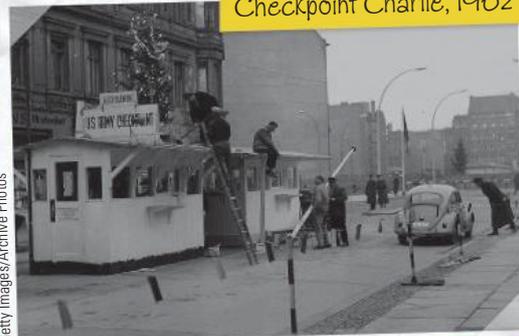
Die BMW Isetta



istock.com/Gaschwald

Das Haus am Checkpoint Charlie ist heute ein Museum, das eine große Sammlung von Fluchtapparaten und Fluchtgeschichten zeigt. Checkpoint Charlie war der Grenzübergang zwischen der amerikanischen Zone in Westberlin und der sowjetischen Zone in Ostberlin.

Checkpoint Charlie, 1962



Getty Images/Archive Photos

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Nach dem Zweiten Weltkrieg gab es zwei deutsche Länder.
- 2 Berlin wurde in zwei Zonen geteilt.
- 3 Der Bau der Mauer bedeutete, dass Ostdeutsche nicht mehr in den Westen fahren durften.
- 4 Insgesamt versuchten 983 Menschen aus dem Osten in den Westen zu fliehen.
- 5 Am ehemaligen Grenzübergang Checkpoint Charlie steht heute ein Museum.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why do you think the Allies divided Germany into four different zones after the war?
- How did the construction of the Berlin Wall affect people from East Germany?
- Why do you think East Germans tried to escape to the West?
- Give an example of a successful escape. Why and how was it successful?
- Can you think of other ways people might have tried to escape?

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

If you look at a map of any German, Austrian or Swiss town or city, you will see something that is rare in Australia and New Zealand.

- Look at the pictures below. Can you see something they all have in common?
- What would have to change in your area for a pedestrian zone to be included? What impact would this have on other transport?
- What can you find out about *Ladenschlussgesetz*? Do you think this has an impact on how people use pedestrian zones? If so, how?

Mensch, das Kleid aus dem New Yorker Laden ist echt der Hammer. Lasst uns jetzt noch zu H&M gehen!



Shutterstock.com/hallena

Schön ruhig hier heute!



iStock.com/justhavealook

Du, Susanne, der Stadtbummel war wirklich eine gute Idee!



Alamy Stock Photo/Witold Skrypczak

Sollen wir noch ein Eis essen gehen? Die Eisdiele ist direkt da vorne, neben dem Café Neubach.



123RF/Jürgen Wackenhut

## So ist Deutsch!

### Going for a stroll

Every town or city in Germany, Austria and Switzerland (and many other European countries) has a *Fußgängerzone*, usually in its centre. It's a part of the town/city where cars are not allowed. Exceptions are made for delivery vehicles and emergency services. This means that people often enjoy a stroll around the town/city centre. This is called a *Stadtbummel* and is not necessarily tied to any specific activity or errand. Often people will just enjoy a walk while meeting friends, go window shopping, or simply browse for leisure. The main locations, such as the *Rathaus*, the *Marktplatz* and a wide range of *Geschäfte*, are usually situated in this area. This also means that large shopping centre complexes are not as common as they are in Australia and New Zealand, although they have been gaining popularity in recent years.

What pedestrian zones are there around your area? How do you refer to 'going for a walk with no purpose' where you come from?



## 1 Wechselprepositionen

An, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor and zwischen are called **two-way prepositions**. That means the noun directly after one of these prepositions will take either the accusative or dative case, depending on the context. If the sentence expresses movement from one place to another, the noun requires the **accusative case**. Often the verb already indicates movement (*gehen, fahren*). In a sentence where no movement or change of location is implied, the noun requires the **dative case**.

### Akkusativ

Melanie geht hinter **den** Baum.  
Melanie hängt das Bild an **die** Wand.

### Dativ

Melanie steht hinter **dem** Baum.  
Das Bild hängt an **der** Wand.



Das Verb rennt in das Haus.



Das Verb sitzt in dem Haus.

### an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen + Akkusativ

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>den</b> Park	<b>die</b> Brücke	<b>das</b> Museum	<b>die</b> Läden
<b>einen</b> Park	<b>eine</b> Brücke	<b>ein</b> Museum	–
<b>meinen</b> Mann	<b>meine</b> Frau	<b>mein</b> Kind	<b>meine</b> Eltern

Wir gehen **in den** Park.  
Christian fährt **über die** Brücke.  
Komm, wir gehen **in die** Bäckerei!  
Wir gehen **in die** Läden einkaufen.  
Wir **fahren hinter** das Haus.

### an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen + Dativ

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>dem</b> Park	<b>der</b> Brücke	<b>dem</b> Museum	<b>den</b> Läden
<b>einem</b> Park	<b>einer</b> Brücke	<b>einem</b> Museum	–
<b>meinem</b> Mann	<b>meiner</b> Frau	<b>meinem</b> Kind	<b>meinen</b> Eltern

Marina steht **auf dem** Alexanderplatz.  
Die Schüler warten **in der** Bäckerei.  
Wir sind **hinter dem** Haus.  
Das Bild **hängt an der** Wand.  
Die Schüler sind **in der** Bäckerei.  
Wir warten **vor dem** Kino.  
Ihr sitzt **im Café neben den** Läden.



## Locations

der Bahnhof (‘e)	train station
der Laden (‘)	shop
der Marktplatz (‘e)	market place
der Park (s)	park
die Apotheke (n)	pharmacy
die Bäckerei (en)	bakery
die Bank (en)	bank
die Brücke (n)	bridge
die Galerie (n)	art gallery
die Kirche (n)	church
die Polizei (no pl.)	police (station)
die Post (no pl.)	post office
die Stadtmitte (n)	city centre
die Tour (en)	tour
das Café (s)	café
das Kaufhaus (‘er)	department store
das Kino (s)	cinema
das Krankenhaus (‘er)	hospital
das Museum (Museen)	museum
das Rathaus (‘er)	town hall
das Schloss (‘er)	castle, palace
das Stadion (Stadien)	stadium
das Theater (-)	theatre

## Verbs

aussteigen	to exit, to get off
aussuchen	to choose

## Prepositions

an	at (dat.); to, onto (acc.)
auf	on, in (dat.); on, on top of, onto, upon (acc.)
hinter	behind (dat. + acc.)
in	in (dat.); in, into, to (acc.)
neben	beside, next to (dat. + acc.)
über	over, above (dat. + acc.); across (acc.)
unter	under, below (dat. + acc.); beneath (dat.); among (acc.)
vor	in front of, before (dat. + acc.)
zwischen	between (dat. + acc.)

## Directions

an (+ Dativ) vorbei	past
an dem Bahnhof vorbei	past the train station
an der Kirche vorbei	past the church
an dem Museum vorbei	past the museum
die erste/zweite Straße rechts/links	the first/second street on the right/left
auf der rechten/linken Seite	on the right/left hand side
gegenüber von (+ Dativ)	opposite to
gegenüber von dem (vom) Bahnhof	opposite to the train station
gegenüber von der Kirche	opposite the church
gegenüber vom Museum	opposite the museum
geradeaus	straight ahead
links	left
rechts	right
die Straße entlang	down the street/road

## Useful expressions

Nun aber los!	Let's go!/Hurry up!
Seid bitte pünktlich!	Be on time, please!
Wie witzig!	How funny!

# Zurück zur Natur

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ talk about different modes of transport
- ✓ talk about nature and the environment
- ✓ use a variety of adjectives to express comparisons (revision)
- ✓ use *immer* + adjective
- ✓ use subordinating conjunctions *weil, dass, obwohl, wenn, als, bevor, ob* + perfect tense
- ✓ use *damit*.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ Europe and the environment
- ✓ the Green Dot symbol and system
- ✓ nuclear power and nuclear waste disposal
- ✓ ecotourism
- ✓ the German way of saying 'to pretend'
- ✓ the difference between *wenn, wann, als* and *ob*.

People in Europe are generally very environmentally conscious and the Germans are the masters of separating their rubbish. If you ask any non-German speaker about what they think is 'German', they might reply with any one of sausages, beer and *Lederhosen*. *Sauerkraut* and Christmas markets might also make the list, as well as recycling!

The Germans are well known for their meticulous separation of rubbish, as illustrated in the famous story by satirist Robert Gernhardt about an environmentally conscious couple discussing the correct disposal of a teabag: the tea itself is organic, so it goes into the compost or brown bin. The paper flap belongs in the blue bin (paper), and the metal clamp in the yellow bin (other), but what about the string? Do we need an additional type of bin for teabag strings? Of course not, but you get the idea that if the Germans adopt a concept, they do it with zest and a desire to follow through.

What sort of recycling does your local area have? How does it compare to the German system? Other than recycling, what else could your local council do to help the environment? Maybe there are already activities in place. Can you find out? What do you think about that?

**Das ist Der Grüne Punkt. Er ist auf allen wiederverwendbaren Materialien. Das heißt, man kann sie recyceln und so neue Verpackungen herstellen.**



Getty Images/ImageSource



Getty Images/Hero Images

Alamy Stock Photo/pe picture alliance archive

Alamy Stock Photo/Alan Spencer Photography



Hi! Wir sind Mitglieder von Greenpeace. Wir machen den Strand sauber.



Wir fahren immer mit dem Fahrrad überallhin, weil das umweltfreundlicher ist als mit dem Auto oder dem Bus.



Wir wollen keine Atomkraft mehr! Wir brauchen alternative Energiequellen!

Alamy Stock Photo/Hemis



Wir haben ein richtiges Ökohaus.

Ja, wir benutzen Solarenergie, haben einen Wassertank und einen Gemüsegarten.

Willkommen zu unserer Umwelt AG. Ich hoffe, wir machen zusammen unsere Schule sehr viel grüner!



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why do you think people in Europe have adopted strict recycling procedures? What are the rules in your country?
- In your opinion, which bin should the teabag string go in? What makes you say that?
- Have there been recent changes in attitudes towards the environment in your country? If so, what are they? What do you think about that? Do you think there is more that can be done? What makes you say that?
- What other features could an eco-friendly house have? Can you map out an eco-friendly house? Would you like to live in one? Why or why not?
- Does the government in your country subsidise eco-friendly features or actions? If so, what are they? Do the rebates (or other government assistance) make the capital expenditure worthwhile? If not, what would need to change to make investment in sustainability attractive at a domestic level?
- If you could plan an eco-friendly town, what would it look like? What would you include and why?

## EUROPA UND DIE UMWELT



Household bins



Glass recycling bins

Europe is geographically smaller than Australia, but has a much larger population, so Europeans have had to think about the protection of their environment for a longer time and more thoroughly than Australians and New Zealanders.

Overcoming the problem of overflowing rubbish dumps became a priority in the battle against pollution. Central and northern Europe led the way in implementing waste separation and recycling programs. Today, in Germany, Austria and Switzerland, every household is required by law to divide rubbish into:

- paper and cardboard
- recyclable materials such as aluminium, plastic etc. – in Germany, this is identified by a green symbol on the packaging
- food scraps – this category is optional, with many people using a compost bin (*die Biotonne*)
- remaining waste that cannot be recycled (*Restmüll*)
- glass – this must be taken to collection points outside the house and separated by colour (white, brown and green).

So, the average household in German-speaking countries has at least four bins!

## DER GRÜNE PUNKT

The Green Dot is a symbol and system invented in 1990 by Klaus Töpfer, Germany's minister for the environment at that time. It can be found on a wide range of packaging materials. The basic idea of the Green Dot is that consumers who see the logo know that the container of the product can be recycled, and the manufacturer of the product contributes to the cost of waste collection and recycling.

The system is financed by the green dot licence fee. This must be paid by the producers of the products before they can display the symbol on their packaging. Fees vary by country and are based on the material used in packaging (e.g. paper, plastic, metal, wood or cardboard). Fees also take into account the costs of collection, and sorting and recycling methods. The system serves a double purpose: it encourages manufacturers to cut down on packaging, which saves them the cost of licence fees, while simultaneously encouraging consumers to put product packaging in the correct bin.



## ATOMKRAFT



A nuclear power plant

While Austria, Luxembourg and Liechtenstein are nuclear-free countries (one plant was built in Austria in the 1960s, but has never been in use), at the end of 2019 Switzerland had four active nuclear power plants and Germany had six. Nuclear power has been a hotly debated political issue for decades, with continuing discussions about if, when and how nuclear power should be phased out. Pro-nuclear arguments are that nuclear power plants do not produce as much CO<sub>2</sub> emissions as coal-powered plants – an influential factor in the climate change debate; the output of electricity is high and relatively inexpensive, benefitting consumers; and nuclear power plants provide employment opportunities.

In contrast, those against nuclear power express concerns about the dangers posed by nuclear power plants. Accidents, though rare, are usually catastrophic due to the radioactive material used in the generating process, and its long-lasting effects on ecological health. Additionally, nuclear waste cannot be recycled and will continue to emit radioactivity for hundreds, if not thousands, of years.

After the Fukushima disaster in Japan in 2011, eight of Germany's 17 operating reactors were permanently shut down. The remaining plants are scheduled to be phased out by 2022.

**GORLEBEN**

Radioactive waste is a by-product of nuclear power generation. It poses a danger to all forms of life and the environment. Because of this, radioactive waste has to be isolated and confined in appropriate underground disposal facilities. One such *Endlager* is located in a former salt mine in the town of Gorleben.

Gorleben is a small town in the north of Germany, and the storage site for nuclear waste is on the outskirts of the town. It is a temporary storage site rather than a final disposal site, although the final disposal site has not yet been officially identified. The waste arrives in barrels on the so-called 'Castor transport', a train convoy that carries the containers of radioactive waste from power plants to a variety of places. In Gorleben, the barrels are stored underground in a former exploration mine.



The nuclear-waste storage site at Gorleben



Castor transport moves nuclear waste across Germany.

age fotostock/Alpa/Björn Vogt

Getty Images/APP/Daniel Roland

**PROJEKTE**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into one of the following topics. Remember to explain your reasoning and add your own thoughts and opinions.

**PROJEKT 1 Europa und die Umwelt**

- Why do you think overflowing rubbish dumps were a problem in Europe? What is the situation in your country?
- Can you find out what *Pfand* means? What are people in Germany required to do? Why do you think they have this system?
- How could the rubbish disposal system in your country be improved? Do you think it should be changed? Why?
- Does your school have any eco-friendly practices? What do you do, on a personal level?
- How do you and your family support the environment? In what ways are your personal actions environmentally friendly? Could you do more? If so, what and why?

**PROJEKT 2 Der Grüne Punkt**

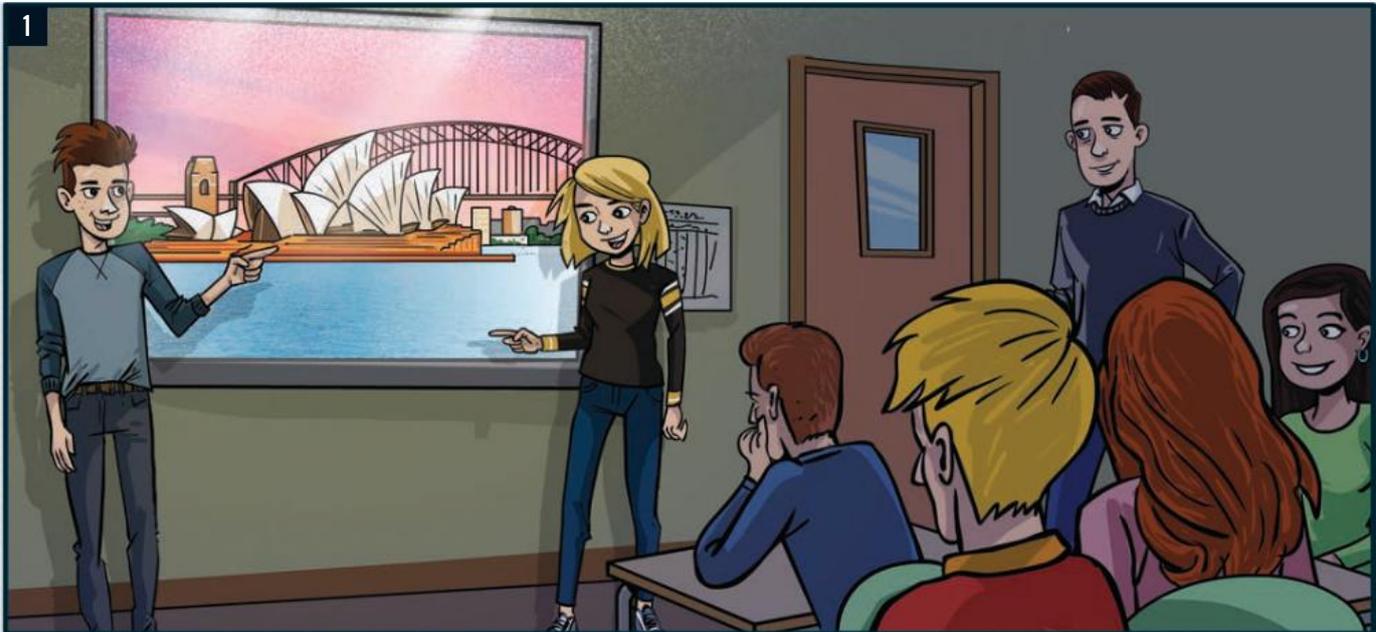
- What can you find out about *Das Duale System*? How is it connected to the green dot?
- What, in your opinion, was Klaus Töpfer's motivation for inventing the system? How different do you think things would be today if the system were not in place?
- Do you have a similar symbol or system in your country? What do you think about that?
- How is recycling managed in your country? Do you think it could be improved? If so, how?
- What can you do to protect the environment? Could you do more?

**PROJEKT 3 Atomkraft**

- What are your thoughts on nuclear power? What informs your opinion?
- How do you think people who live near nuclear power plants feel about them?
- What alternative sources of energy are there to nuclear power? Why do you think nuclear power is still fairly popular, despite available alternatives?
- Where does the power in your country come from? What is your country's attitude towards nuclear power?
- Can you find out what happens with nuclear waste around the world?
- What nuclear accidents have happened in the past? Would you be comfortable living near a nuclear power plant?

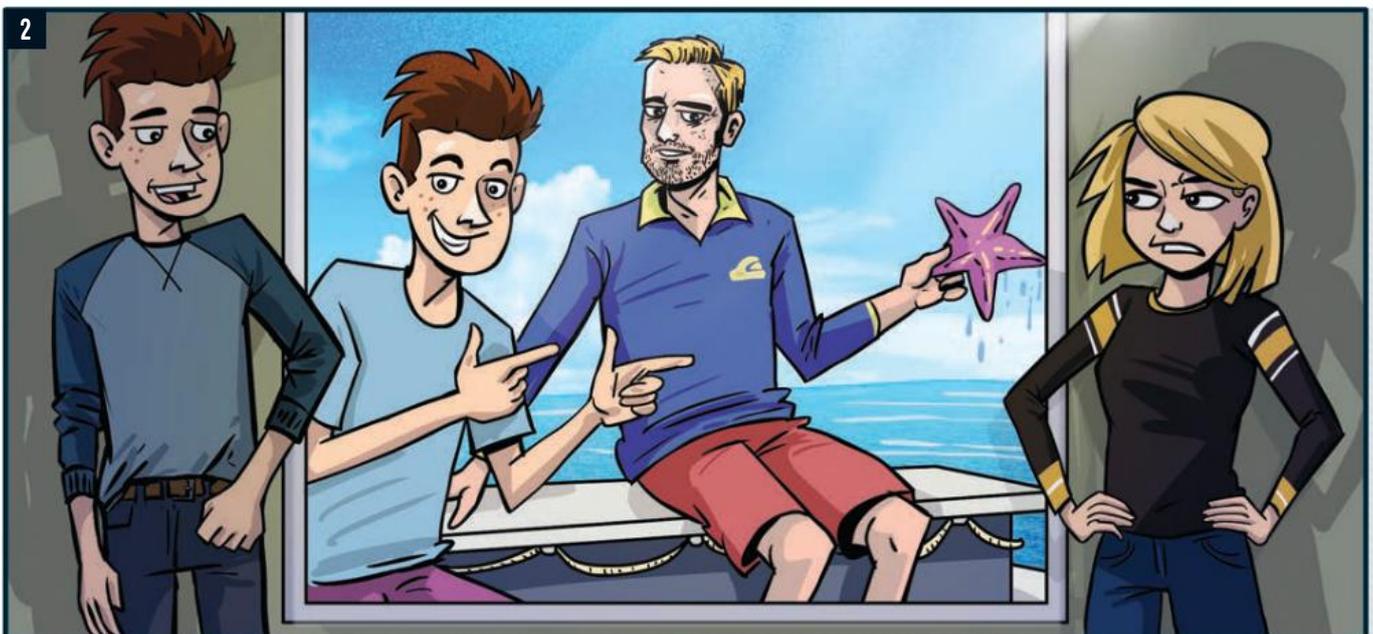
**PROJEKT 4 Atommüll**

- Can you find other nuclear-waste storage or disposal facilities in Europe? Where are they located?
- What do you think of this method of nuclear-waste storage/disposal?
- Are there nuclear-waste disposal sites in your country? If so, where are they?
- Why do you think the Castor Transport only runs at night? Would it be better to operate it during the day as well?
- Can you think of anything that interferes with the safe storage of nuclear waste?
- Why do you think people protest against storing nuclear waste? What's your opinion on the protests?



**Max** Ihr wisst, dass Anna und ich in Australien gewesen sind. Wir haben in Melbourne gewohnt, aber wir sind auch ein bisschen gereist. Australien ist viel größer als Deutschland und sehr multikulturell, weil viele Einwohner aus anderen Ländern gekommen sind.

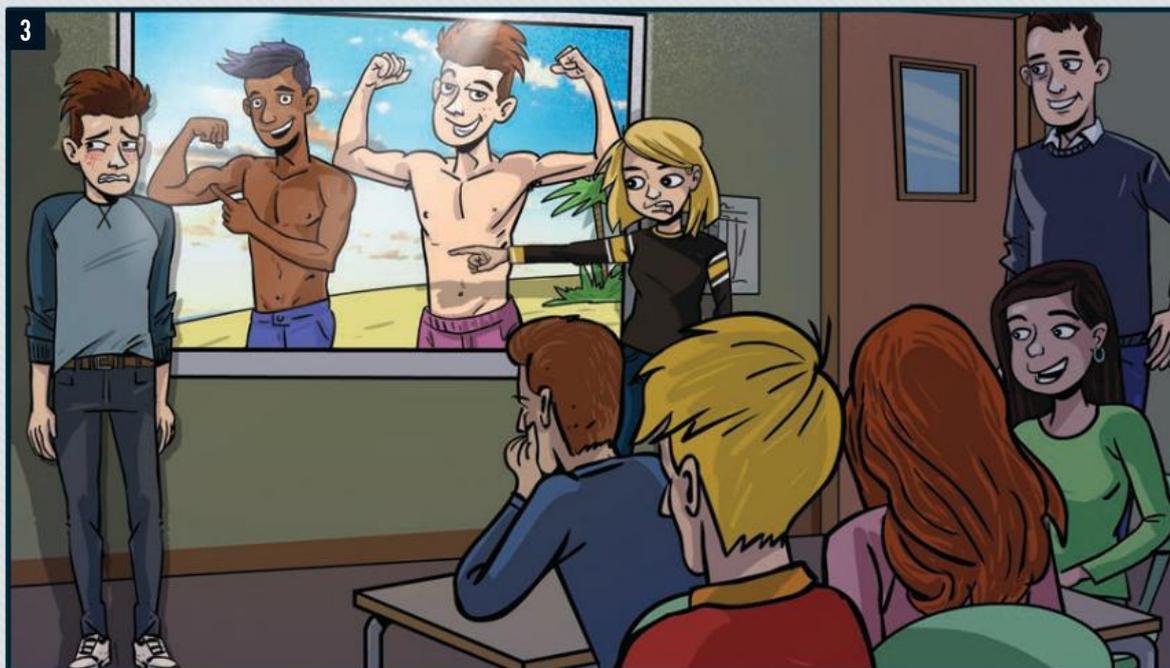
**Anna** Die meisten Australier wohnen in den Großstädten und Vororten. Die größte Stadt ist Sydney. Australier fahren gern mit dem Auto zur Arbeit, aber viele Leute nehmen auch die Straßenbahn, den Zug oder den Bus.



**Anna** Wir sind auch am Great Barrier Reef gewesen. Dort haben wir mit einem Meeresbiologen gesprochen. Er hat uns erklärt, dass der Ozean in Gefahr ist, weil Touristen, Schiffe und Abwässer das Meer verschmutzen. Alle Fische brauchen sauberes Wasser. Sie sterben, wenn das Wasser schmutzig ist.

**Max** Wir sind schnorcheln gegangen und haben einen Hai gesehen. Anna hat fürchterliche Angst bekommen.

**Anna** Du bist doch schneller im Boot gewesen als ich!!!



**Max** Die Sonne in Australien ist stärker als in Deutschland und Sonnenschutz ist total wichtig. Wir haben uns auch immer eingecremt, aber ich habe trotzdem einen Megasonnenbrand bekommen.

**Anna** Du Lügner! Du hast dich doch überhaupt nicht eingecremt! Du hast einen Megasonnenbrand bekommen, weil du deine Sonnencreme in Deutschland vergessen hast!

**Max** Ääääh ...



**Anna** In Queensland sind wir auch im Regenwald gewesen. Ich bin nicht schwimmen gegangen, weil es dort Krokodile gibt.

**Max** Der Regenwald ist sehr grün und dort gibt es viel Wasser. Städte wie Melbourne sind aber sehr trocken und wir haben immer nur kurz geduscht.

**Anna** Und die australischen Toiletten haben zwei Knöpfe: einen für wenig Wasser und einen für ... hmm ... größere ... hmm ... mehr ... hmm ... Ach, ihr wisst schon!

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Why is Australia very multicultural?
- 2 Where do most Australians live?
- 3 Why is the Great Barrier Reef in danger?
- 4 Who was more scared about the shark? Anna or Max? What line in the text indicates that?
- 5 Why did Max get sunburnt, according to Anna? What is his explanation?
- 6 What is the climatic difference between the cities and the rainforest?

## 1 Modes of transport



**Nina:** He, schau mal, hier ist Australien! Wie kommt man denn am besten von Deutschland nach Australien?

**Safiya:** Man fliegt natürlich. Das ist sehr weit weg.

**Nina:** Aber man kann sicher auch **mit dem Schiff** fahren.

**Dominik:** Ja, das kann man. Meine Großeltern sind letztes Jahr mit dem Schiff nach Australien und Neuseeland gefahren.

**Safiya:** **Mit dem Flugzeug** dauert die Reise nur etwa 24 Stunden.

**Nina:** Nur? Mein Gott! Ich bin vor zwei Jahren mit meiner Familie **mit dem Zug** nach Italien gefahren. Das hat acht Stunden gedauert und es war schrecklich langweilig!

**Dominik:** Wirklich? Ich fahre wahnsinnig gern mit dem Zug.

**Nina:** Nein danke, ich fahre lieber **mit dem Auto**. Man fährt direkt von Tür zu Tür und man braucht überhaupt nicht **zu Fuß** gehen.

**Safiya:** Du bist einfach faul. Fahr **mit dem Rad**! Das ist gesund, und in der Stadt ist man manchmal mit dem Rad schneller als mit dem Auto.

**Dominik:** Meine Oma sagt, in Melbourne fahren viele Schüler **mit der Straßenbahn**. Das ist schneller als mit dem Auto und besser für die Umwelt.



Mia, wie kommt man am besten von **Wien** nach **Sydney**?

Nein, das ist falsch!

Klar! **Mit dem Flugzeug**!

Ähhhh ... Moment mal ... **mit dem Zug**?

**Mit dem Flugzeug**?

Shutterstock.com/Gagliardi Photography



Perth → Wellington

Sydney → Canberra

der Schule → nach Hause

	mit dem Schiff
	mit dem Zug
	mit der Straßenbahn
	zu Fuß
	mit dem Auto
	mit dem Flugzeug
	mit dem Rad

### MACH MIT!

Take turns to act out versions of the above conversation with a partner. Each time, change the departure and arrival locations to those listed in the **table**. Change the modes of transport to one of the choices in the **table**.

## 2 The environment



Man soll weniger Auto fahren, damit die Luft sauber bleibt.



Man soll Glas, Papier und Aluminium recyceln, damit es weniger Müll gibt.



Man soll Wasser sparen, damit die Reservoirs nicht leer werden.



Man soll im Winter Türen und Fenster schließen, damit man Energie spart.



Man soll Einkaufstaschen in den Supermarkt mitnehmen, damit man keine Plastiktüten benutzen muss.



Man soll Hundehaufen immer mitnehmen, damit die Straßen sauber bleiben.



Das ist Herr Umweltfeind. Er fährt immer mit dem Auto, er duscht sich jeden Tag dreißig Minuten lang, er lässt im Winter alle Türen und Fenster offen und wirft seine Glasflaschen in den Restmüll. Im Supermarkt füllt er jede Woche mindestens zwanzig Plastiktüten. Sein Hund macht immer Hundehaufen auf die Straße, aber er sammelt sie nicht ein.

**MACH MIT!**

In pairs, write and rehearse an interview between Herr Umweltfeind and a reporter, starting the conversation as follows.

**Reporter:** Herr Umweltfeind, wie kommen Sie zur Arbeit?

**Herr Umweltfeind:** Ich fahre immer mit dem Auto.

**Reporter:** Man soll weniger Auto fahren, damit die Luft sauber bleibt.

**Herr Umweltfeind:** Tatsächlich? Na ja ...

Continue the conversation and perform it as a sketch to your class.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German. Can you see a pattern here? If so, what do you think is the rule? Is it similar in English?

Wir freuen uns, **weil** wir in der Umwelt AG mitgemacht **haben**.  
Monika ist froh, **dass** sie gestern nur kurz geduscht **hat**.  
Habt ihr die Fenster zugemacht, **bevor** ihr die Heizung angemacht **habt**?  
He, Moritz, weißt du, **ob** Ariane schon mal in Australien gewesen **ist**?  
Ich gehe ins Schwimmbad, **wenn** ich meine Hausaufgaben fertig gemacht **habe**.  
Meine Eltern erinnern sich oft daran, **als** sie am Great Barrier Reef einen Hai gesehen **haben**.  
Wir haben immer unsere Flaschen in die Glaskontainer gebracht, **obwohl** das manchmal nervig gewesen **ist**.

Ich engagiere mich für Klimaschutz, weil ich mir um unsere Zukunft Sorgen mache.



Alamy Stock photo/picture all/Janice

What about these sentences? What could the pattern be here?

**Wenn** man umweltfreundlich sein **möchte**, **muss** man recyceln.  
**Obwohl** wir schon viel für die Umwelt **tun**, **können** wir noch mehr machen.  
**Dass** ihr heute nur kurz geduscht **habt**, **finde** ich super!  
**Als** ich heute aus der Schule gekommen **bin**, **war** Mama schon mit dem Aufräumen fertig.  
**Weil** viele Leute nicht richtig **recyceln**, **landet** zu viel Müll auf den Müllkippen.  
**Bevor** Michi und Susi aus dem Zimmer **gehen**, **machen** sie immer das Licht aus.  
**Ob** Hermine einen Sonnenbrand bekommen **hat**, **weiß** ich nicht.

Oh nein, obwohl ich meine Sonnencreme benutzt habe, habe ich einen Sonnenbrand bekommen. So ein Mist!



iStock.com/RobertDavid

Do you notice a difference between the German word order in these sentences and the English translations? Can you see a pattern?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1 Weil unser Hotel weit weg ist, sind wir mit dem Bus gefahren.
- 2 Ob du wirklich deine Flaschen in den Glaskontainer gebracht hast, habe ich nicht gesehen.
- 3 Als Jessica letztes Jahr Urlaub gemacht hat, ist sie viel gewandert.
- 4 Wenn das Wetter schön gewesen ist, seid ihr immer mit dem Fahrrad gefahren.
- 5 Obwohl ich nicht viel Zeit hatte, bin ich zum Supermarkt zu Fuß gegangen.
- 6 Dass Familie Meyerhuber einen Wassertank installiert hat, hat ihr Nachbar toll gefunden.

## What's different about German?

The Germans have an easy way of saying 'faster and faster', 'better and better': just put *immer* before the adjective. It's quicker and it sounds more authentic!

Das Auto fährt **immer** schneller.

Im Herbst wird es **immer** kälter.

Mein kleiner Bruder wird **immer** größer.

**Immer** mehr Australier schützen sich vor der Sonne.

## ACHTUNG!

In German, the comparative/superlative is never formed with **mehr/am meisten** as it is in English (e.g. 'more difficult'/'most difficult'). **Mehr** and **am meisten** are the comparative and superlative forms of the adjective **viel** only: **viel – mehr – am meisten** (much – more – the most).



17 Die Welt

### Ökotourismus – die umweltfreundliche Alternative

Immer mehr Familien in Europa sehen die Welt lieber mit dem Fahrrad als mit dem Bus. Sie sind Ökotouristen.

Esther und Ingo Bechtiger und ihre zwei Kinder Jasmin (sechzehn) und Jonas (dreizehn) wohnen in Zürich. Sie reisen gern, aber sie wollen die Natur nicht nur sehen, sondern auch schützen.

„Wir fahren oft an einen See und gehen segeln,“ meint Ingo. „Auf vielen schweizer Seen sind Motorboote schon seit Jahren verboten. Segeln ist viel umweltfreundlicher und außerdem sehr entspannend.“

„Wir wohnen im Urlaub immer auf einem Campingplatz,“ berichtet Esther. „Die großen Hotels waschen sehr viel Wäsche. Sie verbrauchen sehr viel Wasser und die Waschmittel gehen ins Abwasser. Außerdem produziert so ein Hotel sehr viel Müll, aber wir trennen unseren Müll zu Hause und auch im Urlaub. Hier in der Schweiz gibt es schon seit zwanzig Jahren ein striktes Mülltrennungsprogramm.“



iStock.com/FatCamera

Auch die Kinder finden Ökurlaub toll. „Wir fahren viel lieber mit dem Rad als mit dem Auto,“ erklärt Jonas. „Letzten Sommer sind wir mit dem Rad durch Südfrankreich gefahren und, weil man mit dem Fahrrad nur sehr langsam fahren kann, sieht man die Landschaft viel besser als mit dem Auto,“ sagt Jasmin.

Es gibt auch noch andere Vorteile: mit Zelt und Fahrrad reist man viel billiger! So kann auch eine vierköpfige Familie jedes Jahr in Urlaub fahren.

#### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

##### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 The Bechtiger family enjoys travelling.
- 2 Motorised boats are not allowed on many Swiss lakes.
- 3 Big hotels look after the environment.
- 4 The Bechtiger children do not enjoy eco holidays.
- 5 The Bechtiger family cannot afford to go on holidays every year.

#### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What is the latest tourism trend among European families?
- Why does the Bechtiger family enjoy sailing?
- Can you think of reasons why the family prefers to camp rather than stay in a hotel?
- Why do you think Switzerland has such strict recycling regulations?
- What did the Bechtiger children particularly enjoy about their holiday in the south of France?

# Sprache und Kultur

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Look at the sentences on the right. Can you see a pattern?

Ich tu jetzt so, als ob ich Jerome Boateng bin.



Komm, wir tun, als ob wir in der Dusche sind.



Oh Gott, Elias hat echt getextet!



Henriette! Tu nicht so, als ob du hiervon nichts gewusst hast!



Du tust, als ob du im Lotto gewonnen hast.

In German, there is no single verb translation for the English 'to pretend'. Instead, we use a combination of the conjunctions *als* and *ob* and the verb *tun*, sometimes accompanied by the filler *so*: (*so tun, als ob* literally means 'to act as if'. This is a good example to show why word-for-word translations are not always possible.

Can you find other English verbs that have no direct German translation? Why do you think that is? Are there any German expressions that have no literal translation in English?

## So ist Deutsch!

### Wenn, wann, als, ob

When learning German, native English speakers often confuse the words *wenn*, *wann*, *als* and *ob*, because they all translate to the same English word: 'when'. However, they have four different purposes in German. *Wenn*, *als* and *ob* are conjunctions, and move the verb to the end of the sentence. *Wann* is a question word, and the verb remains in the second position. The correct use for each one is as follows.

- *wenn* – whenever (a repeated event)
- *wann* – when/at what time (in questions about a time or day)
- *als* – when (single even in the past)
- *ob* – whether, if (requires a yes/no answer)

Look at the following sentences.

**Wenn** wir einkaufen gehen, nehmen wir Stofftaschen mit.

Whenever we go shopping, we take fabric bags.

**Wann** bringst du den Müll raus?

When are you taking the rubbish out?

**Als** ich fünf war, sind wir mit dem Schiff nach Norwegen gefahren.

When I was five, we went to Norway by boat.

Weiß Noah, **ob** Oskar und Martin zur Umwelt AG kommen?

Does Noah know whether Oskar and Martin are coming to the Conservation Club?

But:

Weiß Noah, **wann** Oskar und Martin zur Umwelt AG kommen?

Does Noah know at what time Oskar and Martin are coming to the Conservation Club?

### Wenn ... macht, kann ...

Whenever you start a sentence with one of the subordinating conjunctions *weil*, *dass*, *obwohl*, *wenn*, *als*, *bevor*, *ob* or *damit*, you will end up with a verb-to-verb construction, like this:

This occurs because the conjunctions *weil*, *dass*, *obwohl*, *wenn*, *als*, *bevor*, *ob* and *damit* move the verb to the end of the dependent clause, and the main (independent) clause needs to start with the verb. The verb will not be at the end of the whole sentence if the dependent clause is at the beginning of the sentence. Check out the following sentences.

Weil das Wetter schön **ist**, **gehen** wir in den Park.

**Ob** wir morgen ins Kino gehen, weiß ich noch nicht.

**Damit** eure Schule sauberer wird, hebt ihr immer euren Müll auf.

**Bevor** du an den Strand gehst, musst du deine Sonnencreme einpacken.



## 1 Komparativ und Superlativ Wiederholung

You already know the comparative and superlative forms of *gern* (*lieber/am liebsten*) and *gut* (*besser/am besten*). Many adjectives have these forms to express degrees of their meaning. The comparative is formed by adding *-er* to the end of the adjective. The superlative is formed by adding *am + -sten*.

schnell	→	schneller als ...	→	am schnellsten
klein	→	kleiner als ...	→	am kleinsten
schön	→	schöner als ...	→	am schönsten

As always, there are some irregular forms. They usually involve a vowel change.

Positiv	Komparativ	Superlativ
warm	<b>wärmer</b> als	am <b>wärmsten</b>
stark	<b>stärker</b> als	am <b>stärksten</b>
lang	<b>länger</b> als	am <b>längsten</b>
hoch	<b>höher</b> als	am <b>höchsten</b>
groß	<b>größer</b> als	am <b>größten</b>
kurz	<b>kürzer</b> als	am <b>kürzesten</b>
kalt	<b>kälter</b> als	am <b>kältesten</b>

Some irregular forms need to be memorised!

Positiv	Komparativ	Superlativ
gern	lieber	am liebsten
gut	besser	am besten
viel	mehr	am meisten

Ich fahre **viel** mit der Bahn.

Ich fahre **mehr** mit dem Bus.

Ich fahre **am meisten** mit dem Rad.

The comparative form is mainly used to compare two or more items. In order to do this, the German word *als* is needed.

Der rote Pulli ist **schöner als** der blaue.  
 Ich mag Schokolade **lieber als** Chips.  
 R'n'B ist **besser als** Techno.

Like all adjectives, any comparative or superlative form can directly precede the noun it describes and be influenced by the case of the noun.

**subject**

Der **größere Pulli** passt mir.

**direct object**

Porsche macht **die schnellsten Autos**.

## 2 Das Perfekt + *weil, dass, obwohl, wenn, als, bevor, ob*

When the subordinating conjunctions *weil, dass, obwohl, wenn, als, ob* and *bevor* are used in a sentence in the **perfect tense**, the conjugated auxiliary verb (*haben* or *sein*) goes to the end of the clause, after the past participle. Don't forget to put a comma at the end of the first clause before starting the second clause with one of the above conjunctions!

Ich bin nicht glücklich gewesen, **dass** es an meinem Geburtstag **geregnet hat!**

Australien ist viel größer als Deutschland und sehr multikulturell, **weil** viele Einwohner aus anderen Ländern gekommen sind.

Look at the pattern below for using perfect tense and the subordinating conjunctions. In the second clause, where is the auxiliary verb (*haben* or *sein*) located?

Der Ozean ist in Gefahr. Die Touristen **haben** das Wasser **verschmutzt**.

Der Ozean ist in Gefahr, **weil** die Touristen das Wasser **verschmutzt haben**.

Anna freut sich. Sie **hat** am Riff einen Fisch **gesehen**.

Anna freut sich, **dass** sie am Riff einen Fisch **gesehen hat**.

Max hat in der Sonne gelegen. Er **hat** seine Sonnencreme in Deutschland **vergessen**.

Max hat in der Sonne gelegen, **obwohl** er seine Sonnencreme in Deutschland **vergessen hat**.

Wir haben immer Hüte getragen. Wir **sind** ans Meer **gegangen**.

Wir haben immer Hüte getragen, **wenn** wir ans Meer **gegangen sind**.

Anna ist fast ins Wasser gegangen. Das Wetter **ist** schön **gewesen**.

Anna ist fast ins Wasser gegangen, **als** das Wetter schön **gewesen ist**.

Anna und Max haben sich gut vorbereitet. Sie **haben** eine Rede über Australien **gehalten**.

Anna und Max haben sich gut vorbereitet, **bevor** sie eine Rede über Australien **gehalten haben**.

## 3 Damit

Grammatically, *damit* works like the conjunctions above, but since it usually relates to something that will happen in the future, it is rarely used with the perfect tense. As in the examples below, the verb moves to the end of the clause.

Wir cremen uns immer ein, **damit** wir keinen Sonnenbrand **bekommen!**

Wir haben ein Ökohaus, **damit** wir die Umwelt **schützen**.

Allegra nimmt Stofftaschen mit zum Supermarkt, **damit** sie keine Plastiktüten benutzen **muss**.

Du must deinen Sonnenhut mitnehmen, **damit** du keinen Sonnenbrand **bekommst**.



## Environment

der Fluss (‘e)	river
der Hundehaufen (-)	dog droppings
der Müll (no pl.)	rubbish
der Mülleimer (-)	rubbish bin
der Ozean (e)	ocean
der Regenwald (‘er)	rainforest
der See (n)	lake
der Sonnenbrand (‘e)	sunburn
der Supermarkt (‘e)	supermarket
der Umweltfeind (e)	environmental vandal
der Umweltfreund (e)	environmentalist
der Umweltschutz (no pl.)	environmental protection
der Wald (‘er)	forest
die Arbeit	work
die Einkaufstasche (n)	shopping bag
die Energie (n)	energy
die Flasche (n)	bottle
die Gefahr (en)	danger
die Heizung (en)	heater
die Luft (‘e)	air
die Plastiktüte (n)	plastic bag
die See (n)	ocean; sea
die Sonnencreme (s)	sunscreen
die Stadt (‘e)	city
die Stofftasche (n)	fabric bag
die Straße (n)	street
die Tür (en)	door
die Umwelt (no pl.)	environment
die Umweltverschmutzung (-)	pollution
das Abwasser (no pl.)	sewage, waste water
das Fenster (-)	window
das Krokodil (e)	crocodile
das Land (‘er)	country
das Licht (er)	light
das Meer (e)	sea; ocean
das Putzmittel (-)	cleaning product
das Waschmittel (-)	detergent
das Wasser (no pl.)	water

## Transport

der Bus (se)	bus
der Zug (‘e)	train
die Straßenbahn (en)	tram
das Auto (s)	car
das Fahrrad (‘er)	bicycle
das Flugzeug (e)	plane
das Schiff (e)	ship
zu Fuß	on foot

## Other nouns

der Hut (‘e)	hat
der Knopf (‘e)	button
die Zeitung (en)	newspaper

## Adjectives

hoch	high
kalt	cold
leer	empty
multikulturell	multicultural
offen	open
sauber	clean
schmutzig/verschmutzt	dirty, polluted
schnell	quick
schön	good, nice, beautiful
stark	strong
trocken	dry
umweltbewusst	environmentally aware
umweltfeindlich	environmentally unfriendly
umweltfreundlich	environmentally friendly
warm	warm
wenig	a little bit, few, a little
viel/mehr/am meisten	much, a lot/more/the most

## Conjunctions

als	when
bevor	before
damit	with it, with that, so that
dass	so that
ob	if
obwohl	despite
wann	when
weil	because
wenn	if, when

# Party ohne Ende?

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ speak and write about going out
- ✓ speak and write about youth life and culture.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ the dative and accusative cases
- ✓ direct and indirect objects and object pronouns
- ✓ dative, accusative and two-way prepositions
- ✓ verbs that are followed by the dative case.

Young people across the globe have similar interests, passions, routines and problems. Like Australian teenagers, German teenagers spend lots of their time socialising with friends, pursuing hobbies, working at part-time jobs, and making time for their studies and other projects. Young people in German-speaking countries face the same types of stressors and problems as young people in Australia, including peer pressure or conflict with friends; academic stress; balancing work, study and leisure time; family issues and managing social media.

Schlafen ist wichtig!



iStock.com/recep-bg

Was machen wir am Wochenende?

Gehen wir aus!

Ich tagge dich!

Spitze!

Die Musik ist echt toll!

Ja, der DJ ist super!

Ich habe zu viel zu tun!

Ich habe genug von dir!

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are some of the things young people in German-speaking countries like to do in their spare time?
- How does the life of a typical German teenager differ from yours?
- Do you think your teenage years would be very different if you grew up in Germany? In what way(s)?
- Do you think teenagers in German-speaking countries use technology as frequently as you do?
- Can you identify the verb used in German when tagging someone online? Where do you think this modern word comes from?

# { INFOS }

## WAS MACHEN DEUTSCHE JUGENDLICHE GERN?

Teenagers are very busy people. Just as in Australia and New Zealand, young people in German-speaking countries fill their time with lots of different activities: *Schularbeit* (school work), *Hobbys* (hobbies), *Familienaktivitäten* (family activities) and *Freunde* (friends). Typical hobbies include team sports, music (including playing an instrument, singing or going to concerts) and art (including drawing, painting or visiting galleries). Many of these hobbies are done with friends or family members.



Freunde treffen sich oft in einem Café zum Brunchen oder Lunchen.



Teenager verbringen auch viel Zeit mit der Familie.



Man streamt auch oft Musik.

In *Thema 7*, you learnt that German teenagers can drink beer and wine from the age of 16. They can also go out to clubs from this age, but there are limits on how late they can stay out and what they can drink. Many young people head out to clubs on the weekend in Germany simply to have a dance and a laugh with friends for a few hours. Parties are also held at people's homes.

The use and management of *Technologie* (technology) and *Soziale Medien* (social media) are as much of a challenge to young people in German-speaking countries as to young people in Australia and New Zealand. In particular, privacy, constant connectivity, *Schlafmangel* (lack of sleep) and difficult online relationships are problems that many German teenagers face. The lack of sleep often experienced by teenagers is not helped by *Schulstress* (academic stress), with many school students experiencing stress about their studies and academic performance. Issues relating to *Familienleben* (family life) and conflict within the *Freundeskreis* (friendship group) – including *Gruppenzwang* (peer pressure) – also contribute to the stress levels of teenagers in German-speaking countries.

Man kann mit 16 Jahren alleine in einer Kneipe, einer Bar oder einem Club sein. Man kann auch Bier und Wein trinken.



Technologie does also, however, offer teenagers many opportunities to relax and unwind. *Webstreaming* (online music and TV streaming) is popular, and *Soziale Medien* has given rise to a huge number of successful German travel, fashion and lifestyle *Blogger/Bloggerinnen* (bloggers), *Vlogger/Vloggerinnen* (vloggers) and *Beeinflusser/Beeinflusserinnen* (influencers).



Man kann viele deutsche Vlogs im Internet finden.



Alamy Stock Photo/PA Images



Shutterstock.com/Creative Lab

Viele bekannte Beeinflusser und Beeinflusserinnen kommen aus Deutschland.

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Folge einem Blog/Vlog**

Look up a German blog or vlog relating to one of your interests.

- Select a post from this blog/vlog, identify some key words, phrases or captions, and translate them.
- Access this blog/vlog on a weekly basis for a few weeks. Keep a journal of some interesting vocabulary or colloquial expressions that you identify in the posts during this time.

**PROJEKT 3 Webstreaming**

Do you access German music, films or TV shows? Find the following (you can use any streaming services you usually access):

- a German music playlist
- a German TV series
- a German film.

Compare your list with a classmate's. What similarities and differences can you find? What influenced your choices? Note: Try to find a music genre/TV series/film that you would be interested in listening to/watching.

**PROJEKT 2 Beeinflusser**

Look on social media and find a German (or German-speaking) influencer (travel, lifestyle, fashion).

- Where is this person from?
- Translate one of their posts from German into English.
- Does this influencer post mainly in German, in English, or in a different language? What do you think determines the influencer's choice of language?
- Can you think of an Australian, New Zealander, American or British influencer who is similar to the German person you have found? Who is more interesting, in your opinion? Whom would you be more likely to follow? Why?
- How do you think social media will change in the future? How will influencers get their message out to social media users in years to come?

# DIE RAZZIA



## Bei Max



**Max' Vater** Was für Pläne hast du für heute Abend?

**Max** Ich treffe mich in einer Stunde mit Alex und meinen Freunden im Club. Alex jobbt dort als DJ.

**Max' Vater** Musst du dich denn nicht langsam fertig machen?

**Max** Ach, ja, aber ehrlich gesagt bin ich todmüde. Gestern habe ich so viel Schularbeit gehabt, und dann war ich die ganze Nacht an meinem Handy. Ich habe nicht sehr viel geschlafen!

**Max' Vater** Du bist ständig auf sozialen Medien! Warum bleibst du heute Abend nicht zu Hause?

**Max** Ich weiß, Papa, aber trotzdem will ich ausgehen. Ich möchte meine Freunde sehen und ein bisschen Spaß haben.

**Max' Vater** Na, wenn du meinst!

## Später



**Max** Tschüs, Papa, ich muss los!

**Max' Vater** He, Max, Moment mal! Ich muss kurz mit dir reden! Ich weiß, dass viele Teenager mit Drogen experimentieren und ich habe mich gefragt, ob du...?

**Max** Mann, vertraust du mir nicht? Ich bin doch nicht blöd! Ich weiß, dass Drogen total gefährlich sind! Es gibt manchmal ein bisschen Gruppenzwang, kiffen zu versuchen, aber ich sage immer ‚Nein‘. Du brauchst dir wirklich keine Sorgen zu machen!

**Max' Vater** Na, da bin ich aber sehr erleichtert!

## Im Club



**Max** Die Musik ist toll!

**Julia** Ja, Alex ist ein toller DJ! Wollt ihr etwas trinken?

**Max** Ja, gerne. Ich habe so viel getanzt, und jetzt habe ich Durst! Was trinkst du?

**Anna** Moment mal ... wo sind Christian und Sibel?



Später



**Polizistin** Ausweise, bitte!

**Max** Und was macht der Hund hier?

**Alex** Schon wieder eine Razzia!

**Anna** Das ist ein Spürhund, du Idiot!  
Wenn jemand hier Drogen hat,  
findet er sie.

**Max** Was suchen die denn?

**Alex** Hauptsächlich Drogen.



**Polizistin** Hier ist alles in Ordnung. Gehen wir!

**Max** Haben sie was gefunden?

**Alex** Anscheinend nicht. Aber manchmal  
nimmt die Polizei auch Leute mit,  
weil sie ihnen mit blöden Fragen  
auf die Nerven gehen!

**Max** Wirklich?

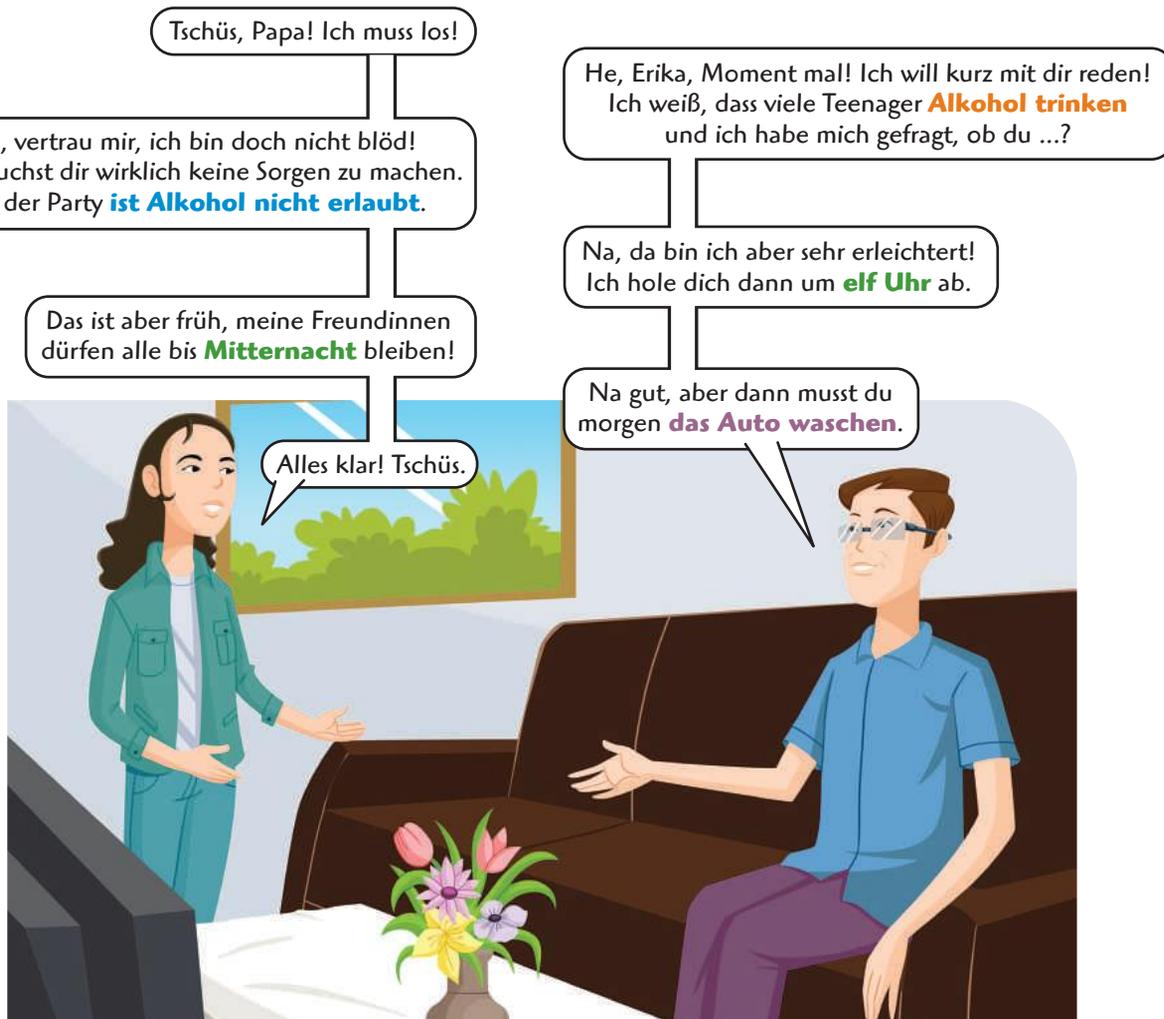
**Alex** Oh Mann ...

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Why is Alex at the club?
- 2 Why does Max's father want to speak with him?
- 3 What does Max think about drugs?
- 4 Who does the dog belong to and what is it doing there?
- 5 Did the police find anything?

# Kommunikation

## 1 Ich muss mit dir reden ...



Alkohol trinken	ist Alkohol nicht erlaubt	Mitternacht	deine Hausaufgaben machen
mit Drogen experimentieren	sind Drogen nicht erlaubt	halb eins	den Rasen mähen
kiffen	ist Rauchen nicht erlaubt	ein Uhr	mit dem Kochen helfen
rauchen	gibt es keinen Gruppenzwang	zwei Uhr	ein bisschen Hausarbeit machen
zu viel Spaß haben			

### MACH MIT!

- 1 Listen to the recording, then practise and perform the dialogue with a partner.
- 2 Make up new dialogues, replacing the coloured words with other words from the vocabulary table.
- 3 How do you discuss going out to parties with your parents? Is there a compromise? What sort of compromise is acceptable (to you and your parents)?

## 2 Was machst du in deiner Freizeit?



He, Marco! Was machst du in deiner Freizeit?

Verbringst du viel Zeit **mit deinen Freunden**, oder **mit deiner Familie**?

Tatsächlich versuche ich immer etwas Neues. Im Moment **arbeite ich an meinem eigenen Vlog**. Jede Woche **filme ich eine neue Episode über deutsche Musik**. Ich mag auch ein bisschen Zeit **auf sozialen Medien verbringen**.

Tag, Lena. Ich lese gern **Blogs** und ich schaue auch viele **Fernsehsendungen** im Internet an.

Na klar, meine Freunde und ich treffen uns oft **in einem Café zum Brunchen**. Ich gehe auch jeden Tag **mit meinen Eltern und unserem Hund spazieren**. Für mich ist es wichtig, **fit und gesund zu bleiben**! Und du? Was machst du in deiner Freizeit?

Wahnsinn!



Shutterstock.com/Monkey Business Images

### MACH MIT!

- 1 Listen to the recording, then practise and perform the dialogue with a partner.
- 2 See if you can make up new dialogues, replacing the bold words/phrases with other options from the unit, or from the list of extra vocabulary and phrases on the right. Be creative and experiment with the language.
- 3 How do you spend your free time? Do you spend much time online/on your phone? How do your responses compare with your classmates' responses?

#### Vlogs

in der Stadtmitte

im Einkaufszentrum

in einem Restaurant zum Lunchen

in die Fitnesshalle

joggen

mich zu entspannen

mich zu bewegen

schreibe ich einen Blog

poste ich etwas Neues

schreibe ich einen neuen Post

alleine verbringen

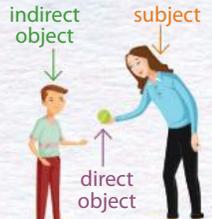
an meinem Handy verbringen

# Deutsch und Englisch

## What's the rule?

Many sentences have one or more objects in them. These can be **direct objects** or **indirect objects**. The subject of the sentence is the person/thing 'doing the verb'. The direct object is the person/thing having the 'verb done to them'. The indirect object is the person/thing affected by the direct object. It is often preceded by 'to' or 'for'.

Look at the example sentences below. What do you notice about the different objects? Which form of the article does each of these objects take, and why? (Hint: think about the gender, number and case of each object.)

<b>Ich</b> subject	<b>gebe</b> verb	<b>dem Kind</b> indirect object	<b>den Ball.</b> direct object	
<b>Er</b> subject	<b>schickt</b> verb	<b>der Frau</b> indirect object	<b>die Mail.</b> direct object	
<b>Schenken wir</b> verb subject	<b>wir</b> subject	<b>deiner Mutter</b> indirect object	<b>ein Buch?</b> direct object	

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

German does not directly translate from English in order to say 'I give the ball **to the** child'. Instead, in German we use the dative case, along with the word order 'I give the child the ball'. The literal translations of 'to the' are the dative articles *dem* (masculine or neuter indirect objects), *der* (feminine indirect objects) and *den* (plural indirect objects). This is very different from English!

<b>Ich</b> <b>gebe</b> <b>dem</b> <b>Kind</b> <b>den</b> <b>Ball.</b>	I give the child the ball.
<b>Er</b> <b>schickt</b> <b>den</b> <b>Frauen</b> <b>die</b> <b>Mail.</b>	He sends the women the email.
<b>Schenken</b> <b>wir</b> <b>deiner</b> <b>Mutter</b> <b>ein</b> <b>Buch?</b>	Are we giving your mother a book?

Have a go at translating these two sentences into German, using the structures above.  
 → I send an email to the teacher.                      → He gives the book to his parents.

## What's different about German?

The concept of cases (nominative, accusative and dative) is foreign to native English speakers, and therefore quite tricky to master. In your first year of German, you learnt about subject pronouns (*ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, Sie, sie*). You also learnt the definite articles (*der, die* and *das*). When we refer to the subject(s) of a sentence, we use the **nominative case**.

In *Thema 2* in this book, you learnt that the **accusative case** is used in two instances: to refer to direct objects in a sentence, and after accusative prepositions (*durch, für, ohne, um, gegen, bis, entlang*).

*Thema 7* introduced the **dative case**. Just like the accusative case, the dative case is also used in two instances: to refer to indirect objects in a sentence, and after certain verbs (*gefallen, helfen, passen, stehen, erlauben, vertrauen*) and dative prepositions (*aus, bei, mit, nach, von, zu, gegenüber, außer, seit*).

In *Thema 9*, you learnt that there is a group of two-way prepositions (*an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen*) that can be followed by either the accusative case or the dative case, depending on whether the preposition is referring to a movement/direction (**accusative case**) or a location (**dative case**).

In this unit's *Grammatik* section, all of the above information about the nominative, accusative and dative cases is brought together for consolidation.



### UNSER FRAGEBOGEN DER WOCHE!



1

Deine Eltern sagen, du darfst bis 22 Uhr wegbleiben. Was machst du?

- A Ich bleibe lieber zu Hause und sehe fern. (2 Punkte)
- B Ich gehe mit meinen Freunden aus, aber ich rufe meine Eltern an, wenn ich spät komme. (5 Punkte)
- C Ich gehe mit meinen Freunden aus und komme spät nach Hause. Ich sage ihnen, dass der Bus nicht gekommen ist. (7 Punkte)

2

Darfst du meistens ausgehen?

- A Ich weiß nicht, weil ich meine Eltern nie frage. (1 Punkt)
- B Meine Eltern vertrauen mir. Ich sage ihnen, was ich mache und wann ich nach Hause komme. (4 Punkte)
- C Was meine Eltern sagen ist mir egal. Ich mache, was ich will. (9 Punkte)

3

Dürfen deine Freunde öfter ausgehen als du?

- A Welche Freunde? (0 Punkte)
- B Unsere Eltern sprechen miteinander und wir dürfen meistens zusammen ausgehen. Alleine auszugehen macht keinen Spaß. (3 Punkte)
- C Die Eltern meiner Freunde sind total streng. Meine Freunde müssen immer um Erlaubnis bitten. (6 Punkte)

4

Erzählst du deinen Eltern, was du am Abend machst?

- A Nicht nötig. Sie können immer sehen, was ich mache. (2 Punkte)
- B Ich erzähle ihnen fast alles. Das ist O.K.! (4 Punkte)
- C Es geht meine Eltern gar nichts an, was ich in meiner Freizeit mache. Wenn sie mich fragen, lüge ich. (10 Punkte)

### Bist du ein Engelchen oder ein Teufelchen?

**5–9 Punkte:** Du bist zu schüchtern, oder total faul. Deine Eltern machen sich Sorgen. Sie freuen sich, wenn du mal ausgehst.

**10–16 Punkte:** Deine Eltern vertrauen dir und du willst, dass das so bleibt. Du machst Kompromisse und deine Eltern sind fair.

**17–32 Punkte:** Du bist total außer Kontrolle und deine Eltern vertrauen dir nicht. Du musst unbedingt mal mit deinen Eltern reden.



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

Complete the survey and add up your scores. Use the guide to work out whether you are *ein Engelchen* or *ein Teufelchen*.

# Sprache und Kultur

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do you think the main differences are between life for young people in Germany and in Australia and New Zealand?
- Laws are different in Germany and Australia/New Zealand with regard to alcohol consumption and going out to nightclubs. Which do you consider are better or fairer? Do you think these laws are likely to change in either country in the future? Why, and how?
- What German blogs, vlogs, websites, memes, music, video clips or TV series do you know of? Where or how did you find these? Are there any German shows or films available on TV stations or streaming services in Australia and New Zealand?
- Look at the following words and try to figure out what they mean, and how these words evolved to become a part of the German language.

- taggen
- posten
- kommentieren
- liken

Das like ich!



## So ist Deutsch!

As you learnt in *Thema 7*, a small group of German verbs – including *gefallen*, *helfen*, *passen*, *stehen*, *erlauben* and *vertrauen* – are always followed by the dative case. This is because these verbs refer to an indirect object rather than a direct object. You will have an opportunity to revise the function of direct and indirect objects in the *Grammatik* section.

Das Hemd **steht ihm** gut!

(The shirt is suitable **to him**.)

Die schwarzen Turnschuhe **gefallen mir**.

(The black sneakers are pleasing **to me**.)

Der gepunktete Rock **passt dem Mädchen**.

(The dotted skirt is a good fit **for her**.)

Die Eltern **vertrauen ihrem Kind**.

(The parents give their trust **to their child**.)

## Sprachtipps



The letter 'y' is not common in German, and mainly occurs in words of English origin. The German pronunciation, however, differs from the English. In the middle of a word, 'y' is pronounced like *ü*, while at the end of a word, it is pronounced more like the German *i* (or the English 'ee'). It is very rare for a German word to begin with 'y' but, when this occurs, the 'y' is pronounced like a German *j* (or the English 'y'; think of the English word 'yak').

'y' at the beginning of a word or a syllable

**Yoga**

'y' in the middle of a word or a syllable

**Typ, Xylophon, Analyse, Physik**

'y' at the end of a word or a syllable

**Party, Handy, Baby**



## Nominativ, Akkusativ und Dativ

The tables below depict how articles and pronouns change depending on whether they take the nominative, accusative or dative case.

Artikel			
	Nominativ (subjects)	Akkusativ (direct objects*)	Dativ (indirect objects**)
Maskulinum	der ein mein	den einen meinen	dem einem meinem
Femininum	die eine meine	die eine meine	der einer meiner
Neutrum	das ein mein	das ein mein	dem einem meinem
Plural	die (keine) meine	die (keine) meine	den (keinen) meinen

\* after an accusative preposition or a two-way preposition

\*\* after a dative verb, a dative preposition or a two-way preposition

Pronomen		
Nominativ (subject)	Akkusativ (direct object)	Dativ (indirect object)
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
er	ihn	ihm
sie	sie	ihr
es	es	ihm
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
sie	sie	ihnen
Sie	Sie	Ihnen

In each example below, you will see that there is a subject (which takes the nominative case), a direct object (which takes the accusative case) and an indirect object (which takes the dative case). Keep the following points in mind.

- **subject** = the person/thing doing the 'verbing'
- **direct object** = the person/thing 'verbed'
- **indirect object** = the person/thing being 'verbed to/for'

<p><b>Er</b> schickt <b>ihnen</b> <b>Blumen</b>.</p> <p>↓                      ↓                      ↓</p> <p>The person doing the 'sending'    The people being 'sent to'    The thing being 'sent'</p>	→ He sends (to) them flowers.
<p><b>Ich</b> schenke <b>meinem Freund</b> <b>einen Kuchen</b>.</p> <p>↓                      ↓                      ↓</p> <p>The person doing the 'giving'    The person being 'given to'    The thing being 'given'</p>	→ I give (to) my friend a cake.
<p><b>Wir</b> kaufen <b>der Frau</b> <b>ein Geschenk</b>.</p> <p>↓                      ↓                      ↓</p> <p>The person doing the 'buying'    The person being 'bought for'    The thing being 'bought'</p>	→ We buy (for) the woman a present.
<p><b>Meine Mutter</b> gibt <b>mir</b> <b>eine Tasse Tee</b>.</p> <p>↓                      ↓                      ↓</p> <p>The person doing the 'giving'    The person being 'given to'    The thing being 'given'</p>	→ My mother gives (to) me a cup of tea.

Word order can be tricky when we are referring to both a direct and an indirect object in the same sentence. It is important to keep the following rules in mind.

- When both the direct object and the indirect object are expressed as **nouns**, the indirect object will come before the direct object.

**Mein Onkel** schickt **meiner Schwester** ein Buch. (My uncle sends (to) my sister a book.)

- When either the direct object or the indirect object is expressed as a **pronoun**, the pronoun will come before the noun.

**Mein Onkel** schickt **es** meiner Schwester. (My uncle sends it to my sister.) OR

**Mein Onkel** schickt **ihr** ein Buch. (My uncle sends (to) her a book.)

- When both the direct object and the indirect object are expressed as **pronouns**, the accusative direct object pronoun will come before the dative indirect object pronoun.

**Mein Onkel** schickt **es** ihr. (My uncle sends it to her.)

In each of the examples below, you will see that there is a preposition taking either the accusative or the dative case. In the examples with a **two-way preposition**, the case will depend on whether the preposition is referring to a movement/direction (accusative case) or a location (dative case).

**Wir** laufen **durch** den Park.

→ We run through the park.

durch = accusative preposition

**Der Lehrer** hat etwas **für** mich.

→ The teacher has something for me.

für = accusative preposition

**Du** arbeitest **mit** deinem Bruder.

→ You work with your brother.

mit = dative preposition

**Sie** isst **bei** uns.

→ She eats at our place.

bei = dative preposition

**Ihr** fahrt **über** die Brücke.

→ You (plural) drive over the bridge.

über = two-way preposition; referring to a movement/direction, so it is followed by the accusative case

**Das Auto** ist **hinter** dem Haus.

→ The car is behind the house.

hinter = two-way preposition; referring to a location, so it is followed by the dative case

As mentioned in the *Sprache und Kultur* section, there are some verbs that are automatically followed by the dative case. This is because these verbs refer to an indirect object rather than a direct object. Look at the examples below.

**Ich** helfe **dem Mann**.

→ I help the man.

The person to whom I provide help

**Meine Mutter** vertraut **mir**.

→ My mother trusts me.

The person in whom the mother places her trust

**Deine Eltern** erlauben **dir** ein bisschen Freiheit.

→ Your parents allow you a bit of freedom.

The person to whom the parents allow something

**Das Kleid** passt **meiner Cousine** sehr gut.

→ The dress fits my cousin very well.

The person to/on whom the dress is a good fit



## Nouns

der Ausweis (e)	identity card
der Gruppenzwang ('e)	peer pressure
der Kompromiss (e)	compromise
der Polizist (en)	police officer (male)
der Schulstress (no.pl)	school-related stress
der Spürhund (e)	sniffer dog
der Tag (e)	day
der Typ (en)	type (of person)
die Droge (n)	drug
die Episode (n)	episode
die Fernsehsendung (en)	TV show
die Freizeit (no.pl)	free time
die Razzia (Razzien)	raid
die Schularbeit (en)	school work
die Sorge (n)	worry
die Technologie (n)	technology
die Woche (n)	week
das Engelchen (-)	little angel
das Handy (s)	mobile phone
das Hobby (s)	hobby
das Nachtleben (-)	night-life
das Teufelchen (-)	little devil
das Wochenende (n)	weekend
die Leute (pl. only)	people
die Polizistin (nen)	police officer (female)
soziale Medien (pl.)	social media

## Verbs

anrufen	to call (on the telephone)
arbeiten an	to work on
ausgehen	to go out
brunchen	to have brunch
erlauben	to allow
experimentieren	to experiment
fernsehen	to watch TV
folgen	to follow
gefallen	to be pleasing to
helfen	to help
jobben	to work (part-time job)
kiffen	to smoke marijuana
kommentieren	to comment
liken	to 'like' (online)
lunchen	to have lunch
mitnehmen	to take (along, with)
passen	to fit
posten	to post (on the Internet)
rauchen	to smoke

reden	to talk, to speak
sich fragen	to wonder
sich Sorgen machen	to worry
stehen	to suit
streamen	to stream (music, film, TV show)
suchen	to look for
taggen	to tag
teilen	to share
(sich) treffen	to meet
verbringen	to spend (time)
versuchen	to try
vertrauen	to trust
wissen	to know
zuschauen	to watch

## Adjectives

blöd	stupid, dumb, silly
eigene	own
erlaubt	allowed, permitted
erleichtert	relieved
faul	lazy
gefährlich	dangerous
nicht erlaubt	not allowed, not permitted
streng	strict

## Adverbs

anscheinend	apparently
fast	almost, nearly
früh	early
hauptsächlich	mainly, generally
spät	late
ständig	constantly
tatsächlich	actually, in fact
trotzdem	in spite of this/that

## Useful expressions

Anscheinend nicht.	Apparently not.
außer Kontrolle	out of control
Du brauchst dir wirklich keine Sorgen machen.	You really don't need to worry.
Ich muss los!	I have to go!
im Internet	online, on the Internet
Mann!	Man!
Mir egal.	I don't care.
Moment mal!	Just a moment!
Na, wenn du so meinst!	Whatever you say!
Wahnsinn!	Awesome!
Wirklich?	Really?



### Einwanderer

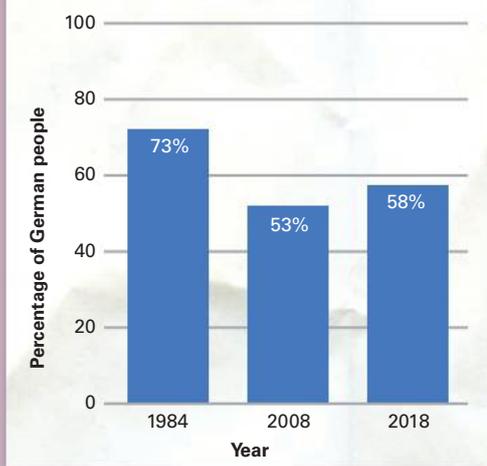
Most Australians and New Zealanders would consider their countries to be multicultural, with large numbers of immigrants from many places around the world. In contrast, many of us expect the population of Germany to be much more homogeneous (sharing a common language, ethnicity and culture). This section hopes to answer the following questions.

- Is Germany multicultural?
- What people have historically chosen to make Germany their new home?
- Why do people move to Germany?
- How have immigrants been accepted by society?

Germany has an interesting history of immigration policies. While there have been periods of high immigration, Germany is also known for having had some of the most nationalistic and racist policies in the world in the 20th century. According to the Federal Statistical Office of Germany (Destatis), in 2018 about a quarter of Germany's population had an immigrant background and almost half of these people did not have German citizenship.

The German population has mixed attitudes to this. In 2018, a poll by Pew Research found that 58 per cent of Germans wanted fewer immigrants allowed into the country, meaning that 42 per cent were either happy with current levels or wanted more immigration. These numbers are similar to those of the previous decade, but they do demonstrate a significant increase in the acceptance of immigration, compared to 30 years before. While some may wish for fewer immigrants, it is also interesting to note that, in 2016, after the largest influx of people in its history, more than a third of the German population believed the country had responded well to the global refugee crisis by opening its doors (Ipsos 2017).

Percentage of Germans who believe immigration levels are too high: 1984, 2008, 2018



### 1871–1914: The German Empire

The *Deutsches Reich* (German Empire) was officially formed on 18 January 1871 (see map on page 90). It consisted of 26 states, many ruled by royal families. In the lead-up to this union, there was much uncertainty about the future and many conflicts within these states. Land was controlled by the rich, and people endured compulsory military training, harsh censorship and restrictions on religion.



German colonies in Africa in 1914

At the same time, many opportunities were emerging in America, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. It is estimated that six million people emigrated from Germany between 1820 and 1920. Winegrowers were drawn to areas near Sydney, the Barossa Valley in South Australia, and Nelson in New Zealand. Thousands of Germans joined gold rushes in America, New Zealand and Australia.

Once the German Empire was formed, along with a navy, Germany proceeded to establish colonies in Africa. These acquisitions made Germany the third-largest colonial empire after France and England. This led to small increases in both immigration to and emigration from Germany.

The start of the industrial era in 1890 created economic success for the German Empire. Foreign labourers started to migrate to Germany, finding work in the coal and steel industries of the *Ruhrgebiet*, the industrial area in North Rhine-Westphalia, and the mining industry in Saxony. These workers came from the Habsburg Empire (Austria), the Netherlands, Italy and the eastern parts of the German Empire. Germany went from having 26 000 registered foreigners in 1871 to 1.3 million in 1910.



These *Ruhr-Polen* came from eastern Germany to work in the Ruhr Valley. Despite the name, they were in fact German citizens, but their cultural identity was Polish, because their homeland was originally part of Poland.

akg-images/Imagno

## 1914–33: World War I and the Weimar Republic

During World War I, labour migration to Germany was controlled by the state, and approximately one million Belgian and Russian forced labourers entered the country. Because of the changing national borders as a result of the Treaty of Versailles at the end of the war, more than one million 'foreigners' found themselves living in Germany. The Weimar Republic, Germany's government from 1919 to 1933, tried to stop immigration from Poland by enforcing limited work permits and stricter border controls.

During the Great Depression, Germany was no longer seen as a favourable immigration destination, and few Germans had the ability to emigrate elsewhere during this time. The population remained fairly stable.



Families receive a warm meal at a Salvation Army soup kitchen in Germany, 1931.

Alamy Stock Photo/Sueddeutsche Zeitung Photo



### 1933–49: The Nazi regime, World War II and its aftermath

The *Nationalsozialistische Deutsche Arbeiterpartei* (Nazi party) had very strict negative views about foreigners in Germany. Approximately 300 000 Jewish emigrants left Nazi Germany after 1933, and this number continued to rise during World War II as Germany annexed more land from neighbouring countries. There were also about 25 000–30 000 political emigrants. Nine million people were expelled from the annexed areas of Eastern Europe and a further 10–15 million became forced labourers within Germany's new borders. Many of these labourers were worked to death. Six million Jews – as well as hundreds of thousands of Roma people, homosexuals, people with disabilities and other 'undesirables' – were deported to Nazi concentration and extermination camps.

After the war, the Allies repatriated almost 10 million foreign workers and prisoners of war to the Soviet Union, Poland, France, Italy, Yugoslavia, Czechoslovakia, the Netherlands, Hungary and Belgium.

German territories before World War II



Germany, with occupied territories, after World War II. The city of Berlin was located in a Soviet zone (which became East Germany), but it was also separated into four occupied zones.

Alamy Stock Photo/Sueddeutsche Zeitung Photo



Russian slave labourers forced to work on road repairs under the Nazi regime, 1941

In the postwar years, there was much movement of people. Refugees, people expelled from their homes through territorial exchange and other displaced persons were forced to move to new homes. Many German prisoners of war were incarcerated in Russia, unable to return to Germany until the end of the 1940s or early 1950s. When seen in addition to the huge losses of population during the war, this movement of people significantly changed the population demographic in many parts of Germany. Cultural and religious differences, along with widespread destruction of infrastructure and housing, led to many disputes. Between 1948 and 1961, approximately 500 000 Germans emigrated overseas, mainly to America, Canada and Australia.

## 1960s–70s: *Gastarbeiter*

The economic recovery of West Germany in the 1950s exceeded all expectations. By 1961, there were labour shortages, particularly in the agricultural and industrial sectors. The government attempted to solve these shortages by offering foreigners temporary manual labouring jobs. These workers became known as *Gastarbeiter* (guest workers). During their time in Germany, they learnt new skills, which helped them when they returned to their home countries.

The first of these agreements was made with Italy in 1955. Further contracts were later made with Greece, Spain, Turkey, Morocco, Portugal, Yugoslavia and Tunisia. By 1964, one million *Gastarbeiter* had arrived in Germany; by 1973, that number had risen to 14 million.

*Gastarbeiter* took on jobs that Germans did not want to do, such as unskilled labour in shift work and assembly-line positions. Even when they worked with German nationals, lack of training, non-recognition of foreign qualifications and language barriers meant that the *Gastarbeiter* were often paid less for doing the same job.

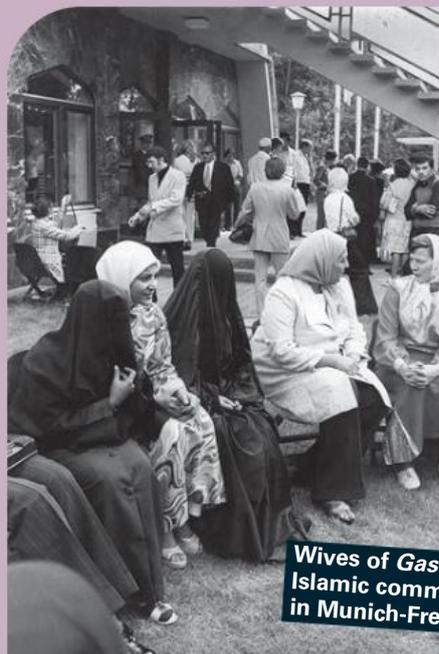


### *Gastarbeiter* in the German community

Many of the new arrivals could barely read or write, making it difficult for them to participate in German society. Because the *Gastarbeiter* were expected to return home, integration was not required or promoted. They lived in specially built dormitories near the factories where they worked, and many factories employed interpreters, so the workers did not need to learn German.

Approximately three million *Gastarbeiter* eventually decided to settle in Germany. *Gastarbeiter* communities began to form associations to represent their interests and promote understanding within the larger German society. In 1964, television programs in Greek, Spanish, Italian and Turkish were shown in Germany.

Many *Gastarbeiter* used the Family Reunification policy of 1973 to bring their family members to Germany. Because they then needed more living space, the *Gastarbeiter* began moving into cheap apartments in neighbourhoods near the factories. This led to the rise of immigrant neighbourhoods such as Marxloh in Duisburg and Neukölln in Berlin.



Alamy Stock Photo/Sueddeutsche Zeitung Photo

***Gastarbeiter* from Greece, Turkey and Spain working in a factory in Berlin, 1966**



age fotostock/dpa/Konrad Giehr



As German industry modernised and companies demanded better-qualified workers, the disadvantages of hiring uneducated *Gastarbeiter* became apparent. When the economy began a downturn in 1966, many Germans questioned the *Gastarbeiter* policy, worried that there would not be enough work for German citizens because of the large number of foreigners. In 1973, the government blocked entry of *Gastarbeiter* from countries that were not part of the European Economic Community (EEC). The EEC was a former association of European countries to facilitate trade between the member states; it later became a part of the current European Union.

As a result of the *Gastarbeiter* program, the Turkish community remains the largest ethnic minority in Germany. Some notable Turkish Germans include footballer Mesut Özil, TV personality Nazan Eckes, rapper Eko Fresh and politician Cem Özdemir.



Clockwise from top left: Shutterstock.com/Gosminifloare; Getty Images/Andreas Rents; Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance/Michael Kappeler; Getty Images/Sebastian Heuter

### 1990s: The opening of Eastern Europe

The numbers of immigrants arriving in Germany remained fairly stable from the mid-1970s until the early 1990s. With the reunification of Germany and the opening of borders in Eastern Europe, many foreigners were attracted to the politically safe and economically successful nation.

During World War II, more than one million Soviets who had German heritage had been deported to Kazakhstan and Siberia. Despite the Soviet Government previously denying the existence of an ethnic German population, a 1989 census revealed there were 957 518 citizens of German origin living in Kazakhstan.

With the collapse of the Soviet Union, a 'right to return' policy was implemented. Germany agreed to assist all ethnic Germans who chose to return. This included paying for flights, language training and some 'integration money'. Approximately 900 000 people took up the offer and immigrated to Germany. They are referred to as *Spätaussiedler*.

Wars in Yugoslavia and a human rights crisis in the Kurdish region of Turkey also led to large numbers of asylum seekers arriving in Germany in the 1990s. In 1992, the number of applications for asylum received by Germany was 440 000. This, in turn, led to increased racist attitudes, sparking attacks in German cities.

### 2000s

The first few years of the new millennium included significant change to immigration laws within Germany. Dual citizenship was first allowed in Germany in 2000. This meant that children born in Germany have the right to be German citizens even if their parents are not German. This has had a huge impact on the lives of many descendants of *Gastarbeiter* and other immigrants.

In 2005, Germany officially became a country of immigration. New laws made integration mandatory and tried to simplify the types of residency permits and the processes new immigrants had to complete to be accepted in Germany.

In 2007, the immigration law was changed, making it easier for individuals to be given permanent residency in Germany. Spouses who were 18 and had basic German language skills could follow their partners to Germany. Since 2008, anyone wanting to become a German citizen needs to pass a naturalisation test. To pass the test, applicants must have a high level of German language skills and be familiar with German laws, history and culture.



Asylum seekers from Bosnia in Germany, 1993



The Solingen arson attack was one instance of racist violence in Germany in the 1990s. Four young Germans, with links to neo-Nazis, set fire to a Turkish family's home, killing five people and injuring 14 others.

Left: Alamy Stock Photo/INTERFOTO/History; Right: Alamy Stock Photo/Sueddeutsche Zeitung Photo

2010s

Since 2010, there has been another resurgence in immigration. In 2014, Germany's unemployment rate dropped below 5 per cent, meaning there was less competition for jobs and in some areas there was a shortage of workers. This is reminiscent of the economic boom of the late 1950s and the call for *Gastarbeiter*. High unemployment and limited prospects in southern Europe encouraged young professionals to migrate to Germany.

In 2015, 1.1 million asylum seekers entered Germany – which was more than five times as many as in 2014. This was more than any other EU country and more than the number of asylum seekers accepted into the United States of America in a decade. More than half of these refugees came from Syria. When Chancellor Angela Merkel agreed to accept thousands of Syrian refugees who were stranded at Hungarian train stations in 2015, she saw it as a humanitarian act and expected other EU nations to follow suit. In September of that year, Merkel said, 'Germany is doing what is morally and legally obliged. Not more and not less'.

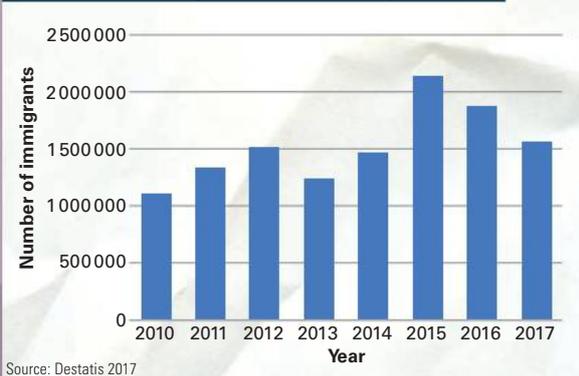
When the other EU states did not open their borders, Germany tried to convince the EU Parliament to impose quotas, forcing all countries to accept refugees. This did not pass, and in recent years, immigration and Germany's handling of the refugee situation in Europe has become a major political issue, leading to a rise in more right-wing political parties.



A group of Syrian refugees arrive at a registration area in Munich, Germany.

Getty Images/Sean Gallup

Number of immigrants to Germany: 2010–17



Source: Destatis 2017

Numbers of foreigners living in Germany in 2017, according to country of origin

Turkey	1 483 515	Russia	249 205
Poland	866 855	Iraq	237 365
Syria	698 950	Serbia	225 535
Italy	643 065	Kosovo	208 505
Romania	622 780	Hungary	207 025
Croatia	367 900	Austria	191 305
Greece	362 245	Australia	13 525
Bulgaria	310 415	New Zealand	3 205
Afghanistan	251 640		

Source: Destatis 2017

PROJEKTE

PROJEKT 1

Create a glossary of the German terms used in this section. Define the following terms in your own words: *Einwanderer*, *Deutsches Reich*, *Ruhrgebiet*, *Ruhrpolen*, *Nationalsozialistische Deutsche Arbeiterpartei*, *Gastarbeiter*, *Spätaussiedler*.

PROJEKT 2

Choose one of the eras described in this section and do some further research.

- Where did the immigrants come from?
- How did they travel to Germany?
- Where in Germany did they settle?
- How were these immigrants accepted?
- During which year(s) of the era were the numbers of immigrants highest?

PROJEKT 3

Research a famous foreigner who lived and worked in Germany. This may be an immigrant from another country or the child of an immigrant.

- What can you find out about their experience growing up in Germany?
- Did they face racism, or were they accepted?
- In what ways did/do they contribute to Germany?

PROJEKT 4

Compare the numbers of asylum seekers arriving in Germany in recent years with your own country's numbers.

- Are there lessons your country could learn from Germany, or vice versa?
- What measures does a government need to put in place for optimal integration?

# Jobs, Jobs, Jobs

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ talk about where you and others work
- ✓ say how often you work
- ✓ discuss how much money you earn
- ✓ ask others about their part-time or holiday jobs
- ✓ talk about careers
- ✓ write a report about your work experience
- ✓ use the imperfect tense to describe things that have happened.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ the apprenticeship system in Germany
- ✓ different types of student jobs
- ✓ the correct conjugation of *möchten* (would like).

Do you and your friends work? Do you want to have a job? Being a teenager can be expensive. Fashionable clothes, smartphones, game consoles, movie tickets, eating out and even travelling by public transport all cost money – often more than parents are willing or able to give as pocket money. Combined with a growing desire for independence and responsibility, this can influence many teenagers, both where you live and in German-speaking countries, to look for part-time jobs. Teenagers are also often asked to think about their futures. What career do they want? How will they achieve their dreams? How can individuals get a real sense of what kind of work they would like to do in the future?

In Australia and New Zealand, many teenagers work in fast-food restaurants, supermarkets and retail stores after school, in the evenings or on the weekends. Is this also the case in German-speaking countries? What are the laws and norms about part-time work for young people? What types of jobs are popular? What sorts of tasks are young people required to complete at work? Is it better to work full-time in the holidays or to work a few hours each week during the school year?

Ich möchte Koch werden.  
Ich muss eine Ausbildung machen.



Alamy Stock Photo/Juice Images

Zeitungen austragen, Hunde ausführen und Gartenarbeit für die Nachbarn machen sind gute Jobs für Kinder ab dreizehn Jahren.



Shutterstock.com/InnerShadows Photography

Getty Images/martinedoucet

Als Aushilfe im Eiscafé muss man Kunden bedienen, Eisbecher zubereiten, Tische abräumen und alles putzen.



Game-tester klingt für viele wie ein Traumjob. Man kann auch eine Ausbildung dafür machen.



Shutterstock.com/Goredefinkoff

Babysitter müssen verantwortungsvoll, flexibel und kinderlieb sein.



iStock.com/Jammonino

Ich möchte Ärztin werden. Ich muss studieren.



iStock.com/Wavebreakmedia

iStock.com/Imagopopml



Ich bewerbe mich auf Nebenjobs.



iStock.com/frickes

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Are any of the jobs and career paths represented in these pictures unusual in Australia or New Zealand?
- What jobs would need to be included if this were a text about where you live?
- What do you know about the laws where you live, or in other countries, about school students working? At what age do you think young people should be allowed to work? Should the age differ according to the type of work?
- Do most of your peers plan on pursuing tertiary study, entering the work force or completing vocational training when they leave school? Do you think students in other countries would have similar plans?

# { INFOS }

## FERIENJOB ODER NEBENJOB?

It is common for German-speaking teenagers to work full-time for a few weeks during the holidays (*ein Ferienjob*), rather than having a steady part-time job (*ein Nebenjob*). This way, they can focus on their schoolwork during the term and still earn some money. *Ferienjobs* range from harvesting fruit and vegetables to being a shop assistant or working in an office.



iStock.com/Jusef Mohyla

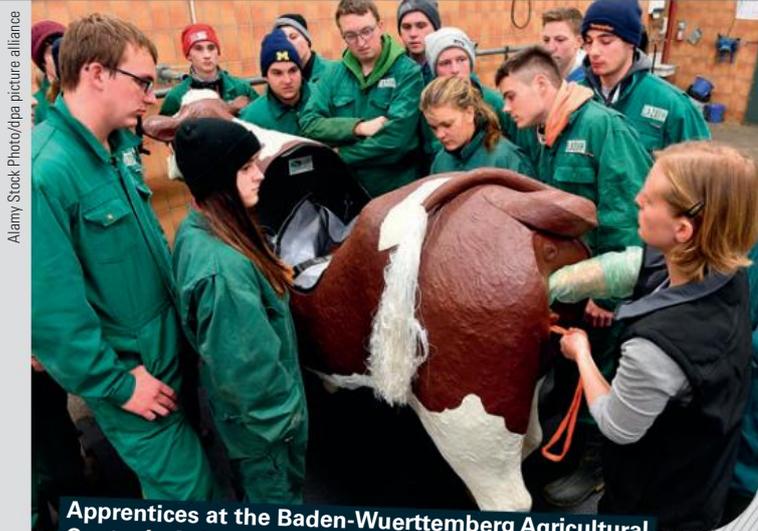
Some German students work as fruit pickers during school holidays.



iStock.com/Highwaystarz-Photography

Some German students work as shop assistants.

## STUDIUM ODER AUSBILDUNG?

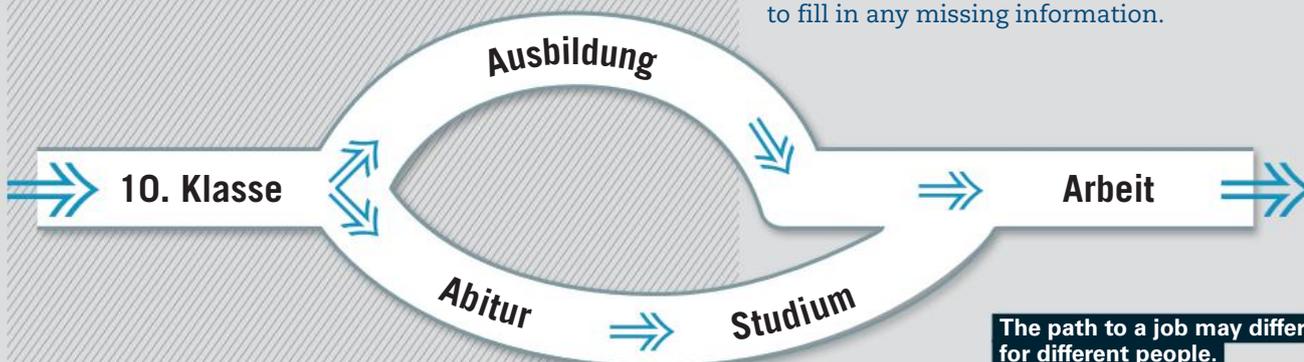


Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

Apprentices at the Baden-Wuerttemberg Agricultural Centre in Aulendorf, Germany, practise assisting with a birth on a life-sized model of a cow.

Many German students leave school when they are 16 to complete a *Lehre* or *Ausbildung* (apprenticeship), rather than completing their *Abitur* (school leaving certificate) when they are 18–19 and then studying at university. This is supported by the German education system, in which students are separated into different streams of schooling from as early as Year 5 (around 11 years of age). There is also a very broad apprenticeship system. It is virtually impossible to get a full-time job without formal training. Even full-time retail and hospitality workers have usually completed an apprenticeship.

Think back to what you have already learnt about the education system in Germany and draw a diagram or mind map including all the major information you already know. Discuss this with your class to fill in any missing information.



The path to a job may differ for different people.

Many jobs in German-speaking countries require different training compared with the same jobs in Australia and New Zealand. For instance, if you want to be a nurse in Germany you must complete a three-year apprenticeship after Year 10 or 11. How does this compare with Australia or New Zealand?



Alamy Stock Photo/dipa picture alliance/Jen Weitzas

**These apprentices work at the Porsche vocational training centre in Leipzig, Germany.**

**GELD VERDIENEN**

The German Government introduced a national minimum wage (*Mindestlohn*) for the first time in 2015. As of 1 January 2020, the minimum wage is €9.35 per hour, or about €1584 per month. However, the minimum wage only applies to workers who are aged 18 or over. There are no regulations about how much a high-school student should be paid. A survey of more than 3000 teenagers in 2018 by the website *schuelerjobs.de* found the average 13-year-old earned between €4 and €5 per hour. This rate increased with age, and the average 17-year-old worker earned between €7 and €12 per hour.



Shutterstock.com/goldbowstock



Alamy Stock Photo/makasana photo

**People who work in the catering industry are among the lowest paid in Germany.**

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Studium oder Ausbildung**

Write a list of five careers you are interested in, and investigate the training required for that career in your country and in Germany. What differences can you find? Can you think of any reasons for these differences?

**PROJEKT 3 Ferienjobs**

Look up some of the websites dedicated to finding jobs for school students and draw up a list of holiday jobs you would be interested in doing.

**PROJEKT 2 Geld verdienen**

- Is there a minimum wage for teenagers where you live?
- How much do teenagers earn in Switzerland and Austria?
- How does the average wage your friends earn compare with how much teenagers earn in German-speaking countries?
- If we really want to compare income, we need to also look at the cost of living in different countries. Research online about the prices at home and in Germany of five things you like to spend your money on, such as movie tickets, fast food, computer games or brand-name clothing.



## In den Schulferien



**Anna** Hat Sibel heute keine Zeit?

**Christian** Nein, sie arbeitet wieder im Reisebüro Hayak. Das ist ihr Nebenjob.

**Anna** Und wann arbeitet sie normalerweise?

**Christian** Einmal pro Woche am Samstag von neun bis vierzehn Uhr. Aber diese Woche hat ihr Vater so viel zu tun, dass sie an drei Nachmittagen im Reisebüro arbeiten muss. Sie bedient da die Kunden und bucht Reisen. Sie arbeitet auch viel am Computer.

**Anna** Nicht schlecht! Sie interessiert sich ja auch sehr für eine Lehre als Reisebürokauffrau.

**Christian** Ja, und sie kann drei Sprachen. Das ist ein großer Vorteil!

2

Weiß Julia, dass wir heute kommen?

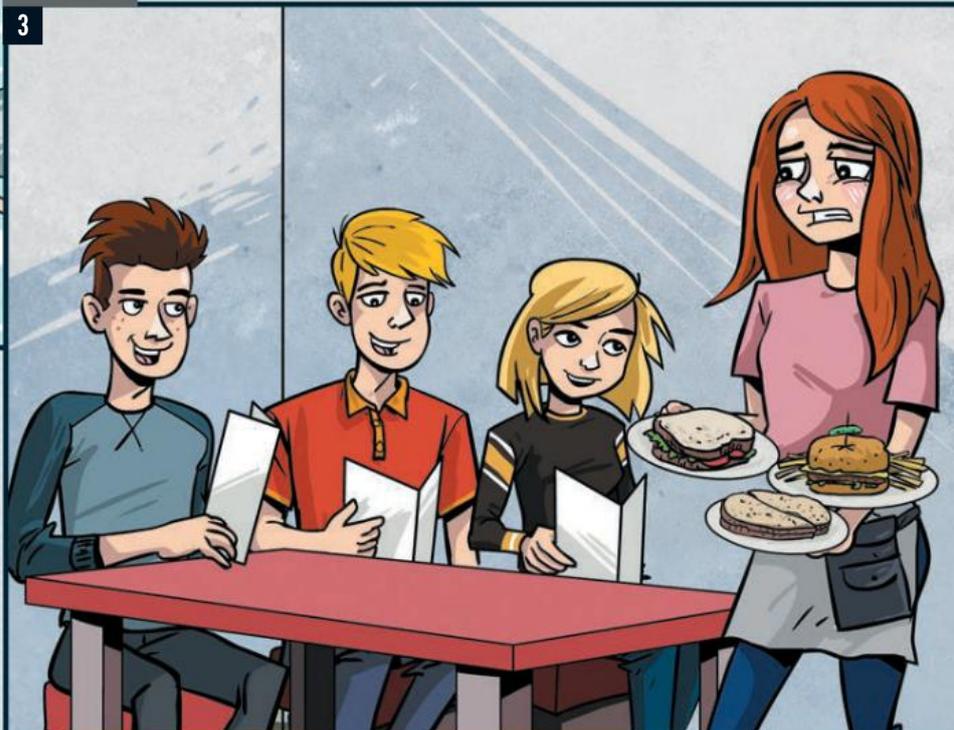
Nein, wir wollen sie überraschen.

Sie ist bestimmt schrecklich nervös!



## Im Café

3



**Julia** Ihr? Ausgerechnet heute!

**Max** Keine Panik, konzentrier dich auf deine Arbeit und du merkst gar nicht, dass wir hier sind!

**Anna** Wie lange arbeitest du heute?

**Julia** Von acht bis vier.

**Christian** Ich habe einen Bärenhunger! Bestellen wir!

**Julia** Ich freue mich schon auf das Trinkgeld ...



**Christian** Sag mal, Max, haben australische Schüler auch Nebenjobs?

**Max** Ja, klar! Nick arbeitet dreimal pro Woche bei McDonalds wie ich, aber ich verdiene mehr.

**Anna** Jessie hat Glück. Sie arbeitet viermal im Monat in einem Sportgeschäft. Sie bekommt fünfzehn Euro pro Stunde. Hey, Christian, warst du nicht Lehrer bei einer Nachhilfeschule?

**Christian** Ja, ich habe Nachhilfe gegeben, aber das wird so schlecht bezahlt. Nur acht euro pro Stunde. Ich bewerbe mich im Moment auf andere Jobs. Ich muss mehr Geld verdienen. Ich spare auf einen Skiurlaub in Österreich. Und du, Anna, was machst du?

**Anna** Ich hatte letztes Jahr einen Job im Supermarkt, aber jetzt gehe ich dreimal wöchentlich und manchmal am Wochenende Babysitten. Das ist ideal. Ich kann Geld verdienen und meine Hausaufgaben machen.



**Julia** So ein Mist!

**Kundin** Krümel, Krümel ... hat das böse Mädchen dir wehgetan? So eine ungeschickte Person!

**Anna** Oh weia, hoffentlich wird sie nicht gefeuert!

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Why can't Sibel go to the café with her friends?
- 2 What part-time job does Nick have?
- 3 Is Christian happy with his pay as a tutor?
- 4 What job does Anna currently do?
- 5 Is Julia enjoying her new job in the café?

## 1 Hast du einen Job?



Shutterstock.com/  
Iakov Filimonov

bei Nordsee  
in einem Restaurant  
in einem Schuhgeschäft  
in einem Büro  
in einem Supermarkt  
in einer Bäckerei  
als Babysitter  
als Gärtner

am Wochenende  
am Freitag  
einmal/zweimal/  
.../pro Woche  
einmal/zweimal/  
.../im Monat  
in den Ferien

Stunde  
Tag  
Woche  
Monat

### MACH MIT!

- 1 Practise the above conversation with a friend. Create your own conversation by changing the coloured words with vocabulary in the boxes.
- 2 Using only German, ask your classmates about their jobs. Who gets paid the best? Who works the most? How many people work in a café? If they do not work, they can tell you how much pocket money they earn helping around the house.

## 2 Was möchtest du werden?



Was willst du nach der Schule machen? Was möchtest du werden?



Ich möchte unbedingt Mechaniker werden, weil ich mich für Autos interessiere. Ich werde eine Ausbildung machen.

Ich finde Meerestiere cool und ich interessiere mich für die Umwelt. Ich möchte studieren und Meeresbiologin werden.

### MACH MIT!

- 1 Ask four of your friends: *Was möchtest du werden und warum?* Use the example answers above and the lists of occupations in the *Sprache und Kultur* and *Auf einen Blick* sections of this chapter.
- 2 Think of a job and try to get your friends to guess it by describing why you might like that job. Use the phrases, *Ich interessiere mich für ...*, *Ich mag ...* and *Ich finde ...*. Your friends should guess by asking, *Möchtest du ... werden?*

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

- Was **möchtest** du werden?
- Ich **möchte** Mechaniker werden.
- Möchtet** ihr ins Kino gehen?
- Wir **möchten** nach Afrika reisen.
- Möchte** Tom einen Ferienjob?
- Alle meinen Freunden **möchten** viel Geld verdienen.

What does the verb *möchten* mean? Is the verb conjugation similar to any other German verbs you have learnt?

Write down what you think the rules are about conjugating *möchten*. Test your rule. Look for other examples of *möchten* in this chapter. Do these examples fit your rule?

## Reflexive verbs with prepositions



Remember that prepositions are words that help us know where, when or how something is happening. Some reflexive verbs always need the same prepositions. While they can all be translated between German and English, they are often used differently in the two languages, so learners sometimes make mistakes and use the wrong prepositions.

Identify the prepositions in these sentences.

- Sara **bewirbt sich** um eine Lehrstelle.
- Ich **interessiere mich** sehr für Mode.
- Wir **konzentrieren uns** auf die Schularbeit.
- Hast du **dich** für einen Ferienjob oder einen Nebenjob **entschieden**?
- Freust** du **dich** auf deinen neuen Job?
- Ich **freue mich** über das Geld.
- Ihr **schützt euch** vor Sonnenbrand, oder?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

- 1 Translate the German prepositions into English. Which German prepositions have multiple English translations?
- 2 Can you identify which case (accusative or dative) is used after these prepositions?

## What's different about German?

Note that, in German, articles are not included when talking about occupations.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Translate these four sentences into English.

- 1 Ich möchte Designer werden.
- 2 Mein Vater ist Gärtner.
- 3 Ist deine Tante Schauspielerin?
- 4 Sina will Architektin werden.

What words did you need to add?



Shutterstock.com/aerogondaz



### Die Heinzelmännchen von Köln

Vor vielen Jahren gab es in Köln die Heinzelmännchen. Nachts kamen sie heimlich in die Häuser und Geschäfte und machten die Arbeit der Menschen fertig. Sie spülten das Geschirr, fegten die Fußböden, backten das Brot, nähten die Kleider und reparierten die Schuhe. Die Menschen waren dankbar: sie konnten ihre Sorgen vergessen. Tags machten sie Spaß und nachts schliefen sie beruhigt, den sie wussten die Heinzelmännchen werden ihre Arbeit machen.



In Köln erzählen die Einwohner ein Märchen das Die Heinzelmännchen heisst. Es gibt sogar einen Heinzelmännchenbrunnen.



Jedoch wurde die Schneidersfrau neugierig. Eines Abends verteilte sie Erbsen auf den Treppen. Gegen Mitternacht kamen die Heinzelmännchen in die Werkstatt um die Kleider zu nähen, aber sie stolpterten über die Erbsen und fielen die Treppe herunter. Sie schrien und weinten. Die Schneidersfrau kam ins Zimmer und lachte, denn die kleinen Heinzelmännchen sahen lustig aus. Die Heinzelmännchen waren traurig, denn sie wollten nur helfen und unerkannt bleiben. Sie rannten alle weg und kamen nie wieder. Seitdem mussten die Menschen alle ihre Arbeit selbst machen.



Clockwise from top: Dreamstime.com/Boggy; Adobe Stock/Сергей Балдин; Alamy Stock Photo/Joem Sackermann; Adobe Stock/Сергей Балдин; Adobe Stock/Сергей Балдин

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 What tasks did the Heinzelmännchen do for the people of Köln?
- 2 Why did the tailor's wife want to see the Heinzelmännchen?
- 3 Why did the Heinzelmännchen leave?
- 4 What is the moral of the story?
- 5 Do you know a story like this in English (or another language)?

## Mein Praktikumsbericht

Als Praktikum arbeitete ich zwei Wochen in einem Büro für eine große Firma. Mein Arbeitstag dauerte von acht bis sechzehn Uhr. Die Arbeit war interessant und meine Mitarbeiter waren alle sehr freundlich. Ich hatte aber ein bisschen Angst vor dem Chef, weil er streng und laut war. Ich musste mich schick anziehen. Am Anfang war es ungewohnt, aber nach drei Tagen fühlte ich mich im Anzug gut.



Getty Images/Peter Dazley



Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance/Frank May

Morgens sortierte ich die Post und verteilte sie. Ich druckte auch Briefe aus, packte sie ein und schickte sie mit der Post. Ich räumte alles auf, damit das Büro ordentlich war. Manchmal holte ich auch Kaffee für meine Mitarbeiter. Ein Tag war ich im Büro des Chefs und hörte viele interessante Gespräche mit Kunden. Zwischen den Terminen erklärte er mir worum alles geht. Es war mein Lieblingstag.

Absender:  
Elias Schneider  
Münsterstraße 112  
22529 Hamburg  
Deutschland



FLIP Digital  
St.-Martin-Straße 1402  
81541 München  
Deutschland

Ich lernte viel bei meinem Praktikum und möchte mich für eine Lehre als Sekretär oder Bürokaufmann bewerben.

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 How long was the work experience?
- 2 How many hours a day did he work?
- 3 Name three jobs he had to do each day.
- 4 What were the co-workers like?
- 5 What did he think of the boss?
- 6 What was the highlight of his work experience?
- 7 What in the text tells us the article was written by a male?

# Sprache und Kultur

## So ist Deutsch!

12.3 12.4

Look at this list of occupations with their German translations.

lawyer	der Anwalt / die Anwältin
architect	der Architekt / die Architektin
doctor	der Arzt / die Ärztin
car mechanic	der Automechaniker / die Automechanikerin
accountant	der Buchhalter / die Buchhalterin
designer	der Designer / die Designerin
electrician	der Elektriker / die Elektrikerin
fitness trainer	der Fitnesstrainer / die Fitnesstrainerin
hairdresser	der Friseur / die Friseurin
gardener	der Gärtner / die Gärtnerin
engineer	der Ingenieur / die Ingenieurin
waiter	der Kellner / die Kellnerin
plumber	der Klempner / die Klempnerin
chef	der Koch / die Köchin
nurse	der Krankenpfleger / die Krankenpflegerin
teacher	der Lehrer / die Lehrerin
pilot	der Pilot / die Pilotin
police officer	der Polizist / die Polizistin
programmer	der Programmierer / die Programmiererin
travel agent	der Reisebürokaufmann / die Reisebürokauffrau
actor	der Schauspieler / die Schauspielerin
flight attendant	der Flugbegleiter / die Flugbegleiterin
vet	der Tierarzt / die Tierärztin
carpenter	der Tischler / die Tischlerin
sales assistant	der Verkäufer / die Verkäuferin



die Anwältin



der Friseur



die Pilotin



der Tischler

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why are there two German words listed for each occupation?
- Write down any rules you can think of about how Germans distinguish between male and female when talking about occupations. Are there exceptions?
- How do you think German speakers would talk about these occupations in the plural form? Check your ideas with your teacher.

### ACHTUNG!

der Chef/die Chefin = boss or manager  
 der Koch/die Köchin = chef or cook

## Gender and German occupations

Historically, a nurse in German was a *Krankenschwester* and all nurses were female. As men joined the profession, the word *Krankenpfleger* was introduced. The female form *Krankenpflegerin* officially replaced *Krankenschwester* in 2014. Similarly, the word for a clerk in German was *Bürokaufmann*. Nowadays, there is also *Bürokauffrau*. Is it time to have a more neutral word for this occupation too?

Since the 1970s there have been a number of attempts to make the German language gender neutral. In January 2019, the city of Hannover introduced guidelines aimed at creating gender equality through language. All official emails, press statements, brochures, forms, flyers and letters are now written according to the new guidelines. For example, instead of referring to teachers as *Lehrer* (teachers), citizens of Hannover will now use the word *Lehrenden* (people who teach). Other options include using the *Gendersternchen* (gender star – for example, *Lehrer\*innen*) or *Binnen-i* (inside i – for example, *LehrerInnen*). There has been much debate about how effective these changes are for promoting true gender equality and also about whether it is appropriate to change the language so dramatically.

There are still male- and female-dominated careers in Australia and New Zealand. For example, more computer programmers are male and more hairdressers are female. In Australia and New Zealand, young people are encouraged to pursue careers in STEAM (Science, Technology, Engineering Arts and Maths). In Germany, these are referred to as MINT careers (*Mathematik, Informatik, Naturwissenschaft und Technik*).

In Australia, New Zealand and all the German-speaking countries, it is still more common for a father to be employed more than a mother. Women who work full-time are often referred to as *Rabenmütter* (raven mothers) and men who stay home and raise children are referred to as *Familienväter* (family fathers).

It has often been noted that Germans are hard workers. In reality, Germans work similar hours to Australians and New Zealanders. They do seem to be more formal with colleagues, often still using *Sie* and referring to each other as *Herr ...* or *Frau ...* rather than using first names. Germans are also more easily able to switch off from work when they are at home and on the weekends.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you think that the *Gendersternchen* or *Binnen-i* are effective for promoting true gender equality? Perhaps you could read the guidelines from Hannover and some of the arguments for and against the changes, and present your findings to your class.
- Do you expect that there are still male-dominated and female-dominated occupations in German-speaking countries? If so, which ones? Research *Männerberufe* und *Frauenberufe* and compare this with your expectations.
- Are there careers in Germany, apart from MINT, that need to be promoted to encourage young people to choose them?
- Do you consider the terms *Rabenmütter* and *Familienväter* to be neutral, positive or negative? Can you find other terms for these words in German? Are the terms ever reversed (*Rabenvater, Familienmutter*)? What cultural attitudes do terms such as these reflect? Do we have similar terms in English?
- Does your own knowledge of German speakers support the theory that they are hard workers?





12.5

## 1 Das Imperfekt

The imperfect tense is a way of narrating things that happened in the past. Both of the *Leseseite* texts for this unit are written using the imperfect tense. In English, we use the imperfect tense more than the perfect tense. However, in German, the imperfect tense is more formal than the perfect tense and is usually only used in written language, for example, for fairy tales, reports and biographies.

Here are some English examples.

Once upon a time there **were** three brothers.  
 We **served** customers and **sorted** stock during our work experience.  
 As a child, I **wanted** to be a fireman.  
 Albert Einstein **won** a Nobel prize for physics.

In each of these examples, the verb has been changed. Regular verbs get an '-ed' ending (serve → served, want → wanted).

Other changes are more complicated and we just have to learn them by heart (are → were, win → won). This is similar to what happens in German. In all cases, we only need to change the verb.

12.6

## 2 Verben im Imperfekt

### Regular (weak) verbs

**Infinitive stem  
+ t(e) + normal ending**

Present	Imperfect
ich spare	ich sparte
du verdienst	du verdienstest
er bedient	er bediente
wir schützen	wir schützten
ihr kauft	ihr kauftet
sie hören	sie hörten

Note: If the stem ends in 'd', 't', 'm' or 'n', we have to add an extra 'e' before the 'te' (e.g. arbeitete, redete).

### Modal verbs

**Infinitive stem (without umlauts)  
+ te + normal ending**

Present	Imperfect
ich soll	ich sollte
du musst	du musstest
er kann	er konnte
wir dürfen	wir durften
ihr wollt	ihr wolltet
sie möchten	sie mochten

### Haben and sein

Look at the table below to see how to form 'had', 'was' and 'were' in German.

	haben	sein
ich	hatte	war
du	hattest	warst
er, sie, es	hatte	war
wir	hatten	waren
ihr	hattet	wart
sie, Sie	hatten	waren

### Irregular (strong) verbs

You will need to learn irregular (strong) verbs. If you are unsure, check an irregular verb list in a dictionary or on a grammar website.

**Changed stem + normal ending  
(except *ich* and *er, sie, es*,  
which have no ending)**

Present	Imperfect
ich bekomme	ich bekam
du gehst	du gingst
er bewirbt sich	er bewarb sich
wir entscheiden	wir entschieden



## Occupations

der Beruf (e)	occupation, profession
der Anwalt (‘e)	lawyer (male)
die Anwältin (nen)	lawyer (female)
der Architekt (en)	architect (male)
die Architektin (nen)	architect (female)
der Arzt (‘e)	doctor (male)
die Ärztin (nen)	doctor (female)
der Automechaniker (-)	car mechanic (male)
die Automechanikerin (nen)	car mechanic (female)
der Buchhalter (-)	accountant (male)
die Buchhalterin (nen)	accountant (female)
der Elektriker (-)	electrician (male)
die Elektrikerin (nen)	electrician (female)
der Flugbegleiter (-)	flight attendant (male)
die Flugbegleiterin (nen)	flight attendant (female)
der Friseur (e)	hairdresser (male)
die Friseurin (nen)	hairdresser (female)
der Gärtner (-)	gardener (male)
die Gärtnerin (nen)	gardener (female)
der Ingenieur (e)	engineer (male)
die Ingenieurin (nen)	engineer (female)
der Kellner (-)	waiter (male)
die Kellnerin (nen)	waitress
der Klempner (-)	plumber (male)
die Klempnerin (-nen)	plumber (female)
der Koch (e)	chef (male)
die Köchin (nen)	chef (female)
der Krankenpfleger (-)	nurse (male)
die Krankenpflegerin (nen)	nurse (female)
der Meeresbiologe (n)	marine biologist (male)
die Meeresbiologin (nen)	marine biologist (female)
der Pilot (en)	pilot (male)
die Pilotin (nen)	pilot (female)
der Polizist (en)	police officer (male)
die Polizistin (nen)	police officer (female)
der Programmierer (-)	programmer (male)
die Programmiererin (nen)	programmer (female)
der Reisebürokaufmann	travel agent (male)
die Reisebürokauffrau	travel agent (female)
der Schauspieler (-)	actor (male)
die Schauspielerin (nen)	actor (female)
der Tierarzt (‘e)	vet (male)
die Tierärztin (nen)	vet (female)
der Tischler (-)	carpenter (male)
die Tischlerin (nen)	carpenter (female)
der Verkäufer (-)	sales assistant (male)
die Verkäuferin (nen)	sales assistant (female)

## Verbs

arbeiten	to work
aufräumen	to clean up
ausdrucken	to print
bedienen	to serve
bekommen	to receive
einpacken	to pack something
erklären	to explain
erledigen	to complete
holen	to get/fetch
reparieren	to repair
sortieren	to sort
sparen	to save
tauschen	to exchange
verdienen	to earn
zubereiten	to prepare something

## Reflexive verbs

sich bewerben um ...	to apply for ...
sich entscheiden für ...	to decide on ...
sich freuen auf ...	to look forward to ...
sich interessieren für ...	to be interested in ...
sich konzentrieren auf ...	to concentrate on ...
sich schützen vor ...	to protect oneself against ...

## At work

der Chef (s)	boss/manager (male)
der Ferienjob (s)	holiday job
der Kunde (n)	customer (male)
der Mitarbeiter (-)	co-worker (male)
der Nebenjob (s)	part-time job
die Aufgabe (n)	task
die Ausbildung (en)	apprenticeship
die Aushilfe (n)	temporary staff member
die Chefin (nen)	boss/manager (female)
die Firma (Firmen)	company
die Kundin (nen)	customer (female)
die Lehre (n)	apprenticeship
die Mitarbeiterin (nen)	co-worker (female)
die Nachhilfeschool (n)	tutoring centre
das Büro (s)	office
das Trinkgeld	tip/gratuity

## Adjectives

kinderlieb	good with children
verantwortungsvoll	responsible
verzweifelt	distressed, distraught

# DEUTSCH-ENGLISCH WORTSCHATZ

## A

**der Abend (e)** evening  
**am Donnerstagabend**  
 on Thursday evening  
**das Abendessen (n)** dinner  
**aber** but  
**aber sicher!** but of course!  
**ab|fahren\*** to depart  
**abgemacht!** that's settled!  
**ab|holen** to pick up  
**der Abiball (‘e)** school formal,  
 prom  
**das Abitur (en)** final (school)  
 exams, end-of-school certificate  
**der Abschied (e)** farewell  
**die Abschiedskarte (n)**  
 farewell card  
**das Abseits (-)** offside  
**die Abteilung (en)** department  
**die Buchabteilung (en)**  
 book department  
**die Damenabteilung (en)**  
 women's department  
**die Herrenabteilung (en)**  
 men's department  
**die Lebensmittelabteilung (en)**  
 food department  
**die Sportabteilung (en)**  
 sports department  
**ab|trocknen** to dry (the dishes)  
**ab|waschen\*** to wash  
 (the dishes)  
**das Abwasser (no pl.)**  
 waste water  
**ach** oh  
**ach, da seid ihr ja!**  
 oh, there you are!  
**ach du Schreck!** oh dear!  
**ach so!** I see!  
**acht** eight  
**der Adler (-)** eagle  
**die Adresse (n)** address  
**der Advent (e)** Advent (period  
 leading up to Christmas)  
**der Adventskalender (-)**  
 advent calendar  
**der Adventskranz (‘e)**  
 Christmas wreath  
**das Adverb (ien)** adverb  
**aggressiv** aggressive  
**die Ahnung (en)** idea, suspicion  
**keine Ahnung!** no idea!

**der Akkusativ (e)** accusative  
 (case)  
**aktiv** active, energetic  
**der Alkohol (e)** alcohol  
**alle** all, everybody  
**(von) allein** alone, itself  
**alles** all, everything  
**alles Gute!** all the best!  
**alles Gute zum Geburtstag!**  
 best wishes on your birthday!  
**alles klar!** everything is OK!  
**alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!**  
 much love on your birthday!  
**die Alm (en)** alpine pastures  
**die Alpen** the Alps  
**das Alpenhorn (‘er)** alpine horn  
**als** as, than, when  
**alt** old  
**altmodisch** old-fashioned  
**am** on; at  
**am besten** the best  
**am Computer**  
 on the computer  
**am liebsten** the most  
**amerikanisch** American  
**an** to, at, onto  
**an ... vorbei** past ...  
**an dem Bahnhof vorbei**  
 past the train station  
**an der Kirche vorbei**  
 past the church  
**an dem Museum vorbei**  
 past the museum  
**ander** other  
**anders** else, different  
**der Anfang (‘e)** beginning  
**an|fangen\*** to begin  
**der Anfänger (-)** beginner  
**der Angeber (-)** show-off  
**die Angst (‘e)** fear  
**Angst haben (vor)** to be afraid  
 (of)  
**an|kommen\*** to arrive  
**an|machen** to turn on  
**an|probieren** to try on  
**an|rufen\*** to call, to phone/  
 ring up  
**anscheinend (nicht)** apparently  
 (not)  
**die Antwort (en)** answer

**antworten** to answer  
**der Anwalt (‘e)** lawyer (male)  
**die Anwältin (nen)** lawyer  
 (female)  
**die Anzeige (n)** advertisement;  
 notice (in newspaper)  
**die Anzeigetafel (n)** scoreboard  
**sich an|ziehen\*** to get dressed  
**der Apfel (‘-)** apple  
**der Apfelkuchen (-)** apple cake  
**der Apfelsaft (‘e)** apple juice  
**die Apfelschorle (n)**  
 apple spritzer  
**der Apfelstrudel (-)**  
 apple strudel  
**die Apotheke (n)** pharmacy  
**der April** April  
**die Arbeit (en)** work  
**arbeiten (an)** to work (on)  
**der Arbeiter (-)** worker (male)  
**die Arbeiterin (nen)** worker  
 (female)  
**das Arbeitsbuch (‘er)** workbook  
**die Arbeitsgemeinschaft (en)**  
 school club, hobby group  
**das Arbeitszimmer (-)**  
 workroom, study  
**Argentinien** Argentina  
**der Architekt (en)** architect  
 (male)  
**die Architektin (nen)** architect  
 (female)  
**der Arm (e)** arm  
**die Armbanduhr (en)**  
 wristwatch  
**die Art (en)** kind, type, sort  
**der Arzt (‘e)** doctor (male)  
**die Ärztin (nen)** doctor (female)  
**asiatisch** Asian  
**die Atmosphäre (-)** atmosphere  
**attraktiv** attractive  
**das Au-pair (s)** au pair  
**auch** also, too, as well  
**auf** in, on, on top of, onto, to  
**auf Deutsch** in German  
**auf dem Schulhof**  
 in the schoolyard  
**auf die Toilette** to the toilet  
**auf diese Seite** on this page,  
 on this side

## Abbreviations used:

*adj.* – adjective  
*adv.* – adverb  
*fem.* – feminine  
*masc.* – masculine  
*neut.* – neuter  
*pl.* – plural  
*sing.* – singular  
 \* – irregular verb  
 (see verb table on page 223)

**auf einen Blick** at a glance  
**auf Wiedersehen!** goodbye!  
**der Aufenthalt (e)** stay  
**die Aufgabe (n)** task  
**aufmachen** to open  
**aufpassen** to look after,  
to pay attention  
**aufpassen, bitte!** pay  
attention, please!  
**aufräumen** to tidy/clean up  
**der Aufschnitt** (*no pl.*)  
sliced cold meat  
**aufstehen\*** to get up,  
to stand up  
**aufwachen** to wake up  
**das Auge (n)** eye  
**der August** August  
**die Aula (Aulen)** assembly hall  
**aus** from, out of  
**aus dem Haus**  
out of the house  
**aus der Schweiz**  
from Switzerland  
**aus Wien** from Vienna  
**die Ausbildung (en)**  
apprenticeship  
**der Ausdruck (‘e)** expression  
**aus|drucken** to print  
**der Ausflug (‘e)** excursion  
**ausgedehnt** extensive  
**aus|gehen\*** to go out  
**ausgezeichnet** excellent  
**die Aushilfe (n)**  
temporary staff member  
**aus|machen** to turn off  
**aus|räumen**  
to clear out (cupboard),  
to unload (dishwasher)  
**sich aus|ruhen** to rest  
**aus|sehen\*** to look (like)  
**aus|steigen\*** exit, get off  
**aus|suchen** to choose  
**außer** except (for)  
**außer Kontrolle**  
out of control  
**außerdem** besides  
**der Austausch (e)** exchange  
**der Austauschpartner (-)**  
exchange partner (*male*)  
**die Austauschpartnerin (nen)**  
exchange partner (*female*)  
**der Austauschschüler (-)**  
exchange student (*male*)  
**die Austauschschülerin (nen)**  
exchange student (*female*)  
**Australien** Australia  
**der Australier (-)**  
Australian person (*male*)

**die Australierin (nen)**  
Australian person (*female*)  
**australisch** Australian (*adj.*)  
**australischer Fußball**  
Australian Rules football  
**der Ausweis (e)**  
identification card  
**das Auto (s)** car  
**die Autobahn (en)** freeway,  
motorway  
**der Automechaniker (-)**  
car mechanic (*male*)  
**die Automechanikerin (nen)**  
car mechanic (*female*)  
**autsch!** ouch!

## B

**das Baby (s)** baby  
**babysitten** to babysit  
**backen\*** to bake  
**die Bäckerei (en)** bakery  
**der Badeanzug (‘e)** bathing suit  
**das Bad(ezimmer) (-)** bathroom  
**Badminton** badminton  
**der Bahnhof (‘e)** train station  
**bald** soon  
**der Balkon(s)** balcony  
**der Ball (‘e)** ball  
**der Balletttänzer (-)**  
ballet dancer (*male*)  
**die Balletttänzerin (nen)**  
ballet dancer (*female*)  
**die Banane (n)** banana  
**der Bananensaft (‘e)**  
banana juice  
**die Bandprobe (n)**  
band rehearsal  
**die Bank (en)** bank  
**bar** cash  
**das Bargeld** (*no pl.*) cash  
**der Bär (en)** bear  
**der Bärenhunger** big appetite  
**Basketball** basketball  
**das Basketballtraining (s)**  
basketball training  
**basteln** to make (crafts)  
**der Bauch (‘e)** stomach  
**der Bauchschmerzen**  
stomach/tummy ache  
**bauen** to build  
**der Bauernhof (‘e)** farm  
**bay(e)risch** Bavarian (dialect)  
**beantworten** to answer  
**bedienen** to serve  
**beginnen\*** to begin, to start  
**bei** at, with/nearby  
**bei dir/uns** at your/our place  
**beide** both  
**das Bein (e)** leg  
**beißen\*** to bite  
**bekommen\*** to receive  
**das belegte Brot** sandwich  
**Belgien** Belgium  
**beliebt** popular  
**benutzen** to use  
**bequem** comfortable  
**der Berg (e)** mountain  
**in den Bergen**  
in the mountains  
**berichten** to report  
**der Berliner (-)** (jam-filled)  
doughnut  
**der Beruf (e)** occupation,  
profession  
**berühmt** famous  
**beschreiben\*** to describe  
**besonders** especially  
**besser** better  
**besser als ...** better than ...  
**beste Grüße** best wishes  
**(ihr) bestes** (their) best  
**bestimmt** definitely, for sure  
**der Besuch (e)** visit  
**auf Besuch kommen**  
to come for visit  
**besuchen** to visit  
**das Bett (en)** bed  
**bevor** before  
**sich bewerben\* um ...**  
to apply for ...  
**bezahlen** to pay  
**der Bienenstich (e)**  
bee sting cake (*German cake*)  
**das Bier (e)** beer  
**der Bierkrug (‘e)** beer mug  
**bieten\*** to bid, to offer  
**der Bikini (s)** bikini  
**das Bild (er)** picture  
**billig** cheap  
**die Biographie (n)** biography  
**der Bioladen (‘)** organic shop  
**Biologie (Bio)** Biology (Bio)  
**der Biomarkt (‘e)** organic shop  
**die Birne (n)** pear  
**bis** until, till, to, by, up to  
**bis bald!** see you soon!  
**bis jetzt** so far  
**bis später!** see you later!  
**bitte** please; you're welcome  
**bitte schön** here you are;  
you're welcome  
**bitte schön?** can I help you?  
**bitte sehr** you're welcome  
**bitterkalt** freezing cold

**blass** pale  
**blau** blue  
**bleiben\*** to remain, to stay  
**der Bleistift (e)** (grey-lead) pencil  
**blitzen** to have lightning,  
to flash  
**es blitzt** there's lightning  
**blöd** stupid, dumb, silly  
**der Blog (s)** blog  
**die Blume (n)** flower  
**die Bluse (n)** blouse  
**die Blutwurst (‘e)** blood sausage  
(black pudding)  
**die Bockwurst (‘e)** a type of  
sausage  
**die Bohne (n)** bean  
**der Bohneneintopf (‘e)** bean  
stew  
**Bolivien** Bolivia  
**das Boot (e)** boat  
**böse** angry, mad  
**das Boxen** boxing  
**das Brandenburger Tor**  
Brandenburg Gate  
**Brasilien** Brazil  
**die Bratwurst (‘e)** bratwurst  
sausage  
**brauchen** to need  
**braun** brown  
**die Brezel (n)** pretzel  
**der Brief (e)** letter  
**die Brille (n)** glasses (spectacles)  
**bringen\*** to bring  
**in Ordnung bringen**  
to tidy up  
**das Brot (e)** bread  
**das Brötchen (-)** bread roll  
**der Bruder (‘-)** brother  
**die Brücke (n)** bridge  
**brunchen** to have brunch  
**das Buch (‘er)** book  
**die Buchabteilung (en)**  
book department  
**der Buchhalter (-)**  
accountant (*male*)  
**die Buchhalterin (nen)**  
accountant (*female*)  
**die Buchhandlung (en)**  
bookshop  
**bügeln** to iron  
**der Bumerang (‘e)** boomerang  
**das Bundesland (‘er)**  
(the German) state, land  
**die Bundesliga (Bundesligen)**  
national professional soccer  
league (Germany)  
**bunt** colourful, multicoloured  
**der Buntstift (e)** coloured pencil

**die Burg (en)** castle  
**das Büro (s)** office  
**der Bus (se)** bus  
**der Busfahrer (-)** bus driver  
(*male*)  
**die Busfahrerin (nen)** bus driver  
(*female*)  
**die Butter** butter

## C

**das Café (s)** café  
**im Café** in/at the café  
**der Cent (s)** cent  
**chatten** to chat  
**die Checkliste (n)** checklist  
**der Chef (s)** boss/manager (*male*)  
**die Chefin (nen)** boss/manager  
(*female*)  
**Chemie** Chemistry  
**Chile** Chile  
**das Chinchilla (s)** chinchilla  
**Chinesisch** Chinese (language)  
**der Chor (‘e)** choir  
**die Chorleute (pl.)**  
choir members  
**die Chorprobe (n)**  
choir rehearsal  
**das Christkind (no pl.)**  
baby Jesus  
**der Club (s)** nightclub  
**der Coach (es)** coach  
**die Cola (s)** cola  
**der Computer (-)** computer  
**das Computerspiel (e)**  
computer game  
**cool** cool  
**die Countrymusik**  
country music  
**der Cousin (s)** cousin (*male*)  
**die Cousine (n)** cousin (*female*)  
**die Currysoße (n)** curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (‘e)** sausage/  
bratwurst with curry sauce

## D

**da** there  
**da bin ich ja gespannt!**  
I can't wait!  
**da drüben** over there  
**da ist er/sie ja!** there he/  
she is!  
**da seid ihr ja!** there you are!  
**das Dach (‘er)** roof  
**der Dachboden (‘-)** attic  
**die Damenabteilung (en)**  
women's department

**damit** with it, with that, so that  
**danach** after that  
**danke** thanks, thank you  
**danke, gut** well, thanks  
**danke schön!**  
thank you very much!  
**dann** then  
**darf ich ...?** may I ...?  
**darüber** about, over that  
**das** the (*neuter*), that  
**das ist ...** that is ...  
**das kostet ...** that costs ...  
**das macht ...** that comes to ...  
**das macht ...** that's ...  
**das schmeckt!** that tastes good!  
**das wäre toll!**  
that would be great!  
**das wollen wir doch mal sehen**  
let's see  
**dass** that, so that  
**das Datum (Daten)** date  
**dauern** to take (time)  
**dazu** in addition to that  
**(den Tisch) decken**  
to set the table  
**dein/deine/deinen** your (*sing.*)  
**die Dekoration (en)** decoration  
**dem** the (*masc. dative*)  
**den** the (*masc. accusative*)  
**denken (an)** to think (about)  
**ich werde an dich denken!**  
I will think of you!  
**denn** then, because, as, for  
**der** the (*masc. nominative*)  
**der Designer (-)** designer (*male*)  
**die Designerin (nen)** designer  
(*female*)  
**Deutsch** German (language)  
**Deutscher Fußballbund (DFB)**  
German Soccer Federation  
**die Deutschklasse (n)**  
German class  
**Deutschland** Germany  
**deutschsprachig**  
German-speaking  
**der Dezember** December  
**der Dialog (e)** dialogue  
**dich** you, yourself  
**die** the (*fem.*), the (*pl.*)  
**der Dienstag (e)** Tuesday  
**diese** these, this  
**digital** digital  
**der Dingo (s)** dingo  
**dir** you  
**direkt** directly  
**das Dirndlkleid (er)** dirndl  
(*traditional German dress*)  
**der DJ (s)** DJ

**doch!** but yes!, sure thing!  
**der Döner Kebab (s)**  
 doner kebab  
**donnern** to thunder  
**der Donnerstag (e)** Thursday  
**doof** stupid  
**das Doppelstockbett (en)**  
 bunk beds  
**das Dorf (‘er)** village  
**dort** there  
**der Download-Gutschein (e)**  
 download voucher  
**draußen** outside  
**drei** three  
**die Droge (n)** drug  
**die Drogerie (n)** drug store  
**drück die Daumen!**  
 cross your fingers! (literally:  
 press the thumbs!)  
**du** you (sing., informal)  
**du Arme/r!** you poor thing!  
**du brauchst dir wirklich keine Sorgen Machen**  
 you really don't need to worry  
**du gehst mir auf die Nerven!**  
 you are getting on my nerves!  
**du kannst** you can  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!**  
 I/we will miss you!  
**dunkel** dark  
 dunkelblau dark blue  
**dünn** thin  
**durch** through, by  
**durchtrainiert** muscly  
**dürfen\*** to be allowed to, may  
**der Durst** thirst  
 Durst haben to be thirsty  
**die Dusche (n)** shower  
**sich duschen** to have a shower

## E

**eben** just  
**echt** really  
**die Ecke (n)** corner  
**das Ei (er)** egg  
**das Eichhörnchen (-)** squirrel  
**eigen/eigene** own  
**ein/eine/einen** a, an, one  
 (indefinite article)  
**ein bisschen** a bit, a little  
**einen guten Rutsch!**  
 happy New Year!, have a good  
 start to the new year!  
**einander** one another,  
 each other  
**einfach** (adj.) easy, simple;  
 (adv.) simply

**einfach klasse** simply great  
**das Einfamilienhaus (‘er)**  
 single-family house  
**eingeladen** invited  
**ein|kaufen** to shop  
**das Einkaufen (-)** shopping  
**einkaufen gehen** to go shopping  
**einkaufen bis zum Umfallen!**  
 shop till you drop!  
**im Kaufhaus einkaufen**  
 shopping in the department  
 store  
**Lebensmittel einkaufen**  
 shopping for food  
**die Einkaufsliste (n)**  
 shopping list  
**die Einkaufstasche (n)**  
 shopping bag  
**die Einkaufstüte (n)** plastic/  
 paper shopping bag  
**der Einkaufswagen (-)**  
 shopping trolley  
**das Einkaufszentrum (-zentren)**  
 shopping centre/mall  
**die Einladung (en)** invitation  
**ein|packen** to pack  
**ein|räumen** to pack away  
**eins** one  
**ein|sammeln** to collect  
**ein|schlafen\*** to fall asleep  
**der Einwohner (-)** inhabitant  
 (male)  
**die Einwohnerin (nen)**  
 inhabitant (female)  
**das Einzelkind (er)** only child  
**das Eis** ice-cream  
**das gemischte Eis (-)**  
 mixed ice-cream  
**eisgekühlt** ice-cold  
**Eishockey** ice hockey  
**ekelhaft, ekelig** disgusting,  
 revolting  
**der Elefant (en)** elephant  
**der Elektriker (-)** electrician  
 (male)  
**die Elektrikerin (nen)** electrician  
 (female)  
**elf** eleven  
**der Elf (en)** elf  
**der Ellbogen (-)** elbow  
**die Eltern (pl.)** parents  
**die E-Mail** email  
**der Emu (s)** emu  
**das Ende (s)** end  
**endlich** finally  
**die Energie (n)** energy  
**eng** tight  
**der Engel (-)** angel

**das Engelchen (-)** little angel  
**Englisch** English (language)  
**das Enkelkind (er)** grandchild  
**die Ente (n)** duck  
**entlang** along, down  
**die Straße entlang**  
 down the street/road  
**sich entscheiden\* für**  
 to decide on ...  
**entschuldigen Sie (mich)!**  
 excuse me! (formal)  
**die Entschuldigung (en)** excuse,  
 apology  
**Entschuldigung!** excuse me!,  
 I'm sorry!  
**enttäuscht** disappointed  
**die Episode (n)** episode  
**er** he  
**die Erbsen** peas  
**die gefrorenen Erbsen**  
 frozen peas  
**die Erde** earth  
**das Erdgeschoss (e)** first floor  
**Erdkunde** Geography  
 (school subject)  
**das Erdmännchen (-)** meerkat  
**ergänzen** to complete  
**sich erkälten** to catch a cold  
**erkältet sein** to have a cold  
**die Erkältung** cold (illness)  
**erklären** to explain  
**die Erklärung (en)** explanation  
**erlauben** to allow, to permit  
**(nicht) erlaubt**  
 (not) allowed, permitted  
**erledigen** to complete  
**erleichtert** relieved  
**die Erpressung (en)** blackmail  
**erst** just, first  
**der/die Erste** the first  
**der Erste Weihnachtstag**  
 Christmas Day  
**erstmal** first  
**erzählen\*** to tell, to narrate  
**es** it  
**es gibt ...** there is ...  
**es ist ...** it is ...  
**der Esel (-)** donkey  
**essen\*** to eat  
**das Essen (no pl.)** meal, food  
**der Esstisch (e)** dining table  
**das Esszimmer (-)** dining room  
**das Etagenbett (en)** bunk beds  
**etwa** about, approximately  
**etwas** something  
**euch** you  
**euer/eure** your (pl.)

**die Eule (n)** owl  
**der Euro (s)** euro  
**europäisch** European  
**experimentieren** to experiment  
**der Extremsport (e)**  
extreme sports

## F

**das Fach (‘er)** subject  
**das Fachwerkhau (‘er)**  
traditional half-timbered house  
**die Fähre (n)** ferry  
**fahren\*** to go (by car, train ...),  
to drive, to travel  
**das Fahrrad (‘er)** bicycle  
**der Fahrradhelm (e)** bicycle  
helmet  
**die Fahrt (en)** journey  
**fair** fair  
**der Falke (n)** falcon  
**fallen** to fall  
**falsch** false, incorrect, wrong  
**falten** to fold  
**die Familie (n)** family  
**das Familienfoto (s)**  
family photo  
**der Familienname** surname  
**die Familienstammbaum (‘e)**  
family tree  
**der Fan (s)** fan (sports)  
**fang sie sofort!**  
catch it straight away!  
**fantastisch** fantastic  
**die Farbe (n)** colour  
**fast** almost, nearly  
**das Fastfood (-)** fast food  
**faul** lazy  
**der Februar** February  
**die Feder (n)** feather  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!**  
I/we will miss you!  
**feiern** to celebrate  
**der Feiertag (e)** holiday  
**das Fell (e)** fur  
**das Femininum** feminine  
**das Fenster (-)** window  
**die Ferien** holidays  
**der Ferienjob (s)** holiday job  
  
**die Ferienwohnung (en)**  
holiday apartment  
**die Fernsehsendung (en)**  
television show  
**fern|sehen\*** to watch television  
**fertig** ready, finished  
**das Fest (e)** celebration  
**die Festung (en)** fortress, castle

**das Fieber** temperature  
(in illness)  
**der Film (e)** film, movie  
**der Filmstar (s)** film star  
**finden\*** to find  
**der Finger (-)** finger  
**die Firma (Firmen)** company,  
firm  
**der Fisch (e)** fish  
**das Fischfutter (-)** fish food  
**fit** fit  
**der Fitnesstrainer (-)**  
fitness trainer (male)  
**die Fitnesstrainerin (nen)**  
fitness trainer (female)  
**die Flasche (n)** bottle  
**flauschig** fluffy  
**das Fleisch (no pl.)** meat  
**die Fleischwurst (‘e)**  
pork sausage  
**fliegen\*** to fly  
**die Fleischerei (en)**  
butcher shop  
**flexibel** flexible  
**die Flosse (n)** fin  
**die Flöte (n)** flute  
**der Flugbegleiter (-)**  
flight attendant (male)  
**die Flugbegleiterin (nen)**  
flight attendant (female)  
**der Flügel (-)** wing  
**der Flug (‘e)** flight  
**der Flughafen (‘-)** airport  
**das Flugzeug (e)** aeroplane  
**der Flur (en)** corridor, hallway  
**der Fluss (‘e)** river  
**der Fokus (se)** focus  
**folgen** to follow  
**das Foto (s)** photo  
**das Fotoalbum (-alben)**  
photo album  
**der Fotograf (en)**  
photographer (male)  
**die Fotografin (nen)**  
photographer (female)  
**fotografieren** to photograph,  
to take a picture  
**das Foul (s)** foul (sports)  
**die Frage (n)** question  
**fragen** to ask  
**sich fragen** to wonder  
**das Frankfurter Würstchen (-)**  
Frankfurter sausage  
**Frankreich** France  
**Französisch** French (language)  
**die Frau (en)** woman, wife  
**Frau ...** Mrs ..., Ms ..., Miss ...  
**Frau!** Miss!

**das Frauchen (-)** pet owner  
(female)  
**frech** cheeky  
**frei** free  
**der Freistoß (‘e)** free kick  
**der Freitag (e)** Friday  
**die Freizeit (en)** free time  
**die Fremdsprache (n)**  
foreign language  
**fressen\*** to eat (used only for  
animals)  
**(sich) freuen auf**  
to look forward to, to be happy  
**freut mich!** pleased to meet  
you!, I am pleased!  
**freut mich, euch kennenzulernen**  
it's a pleasure to meet you  
**ich freue mich auf ...**  
I look forward to ...  
**ich freue mich schon darauf!**  
I am already looking forward to it!  
**der Freund (e)** friend (male)  
**die Freundin (nen)** friend (female)  
**freundlich** friendly  
**mit freundlichen Grüßen**  
kind regards  
**frieren** to freeze  
**frisch** fresh  
**der Friseur (e)** hairdresser (male)  
**die Friseurin (nen)** hairdresser  
(female)  
**frohe Ostern!** happy Easter!  
**frohe Weihnachten!**  
merry Christmas!  
**der Frosch (‘e)** frog  
**die Frucht (‘e)** fruit  
**früh** early  
**der Frühling (e)** spring  
**das Frühstück (e)** breakfast  
**frühstücken** to have breakfast  
**fühlen** to feel  
**füllen** to fill  
**fünf** five  
**für** for  
**für mich** for me  
**der Fuß (‘e)** foot  
**zu Fuß** on foot  
**Fußball** soccer  
**der Fußball (‘e)** soccer ball  
**das Fußballstadion**  
(Fußballstadien)  
soccer stadium  
**das Fußballtraining (s)**  
football (soccer) training  
**das Fußballtrikot (s)**  
football (soccer) jersey  
**die Fußgängerzone (n)**  
pedestrian precinct

**das Futter (-)** pet food  
**füttern** to feed (animals)

## G

**die Galerie (n)** art gallery  
**ganz** quite; whole  
**ganz klasse!** excellent!  
**gar nichts!** nothing!  
**die Garage (n)** garage  
**der Garten (-)** garden  
**der Gartensalat (e)** garden salad  
**der Gärtner (-)** gardener (*male*)  
**die Gärtnerin (nen)** gardener (*female*)  
**der Gast (er)** guest  
**das Gästehaus (er)** guesthouse  
**die Gastfamilie (n)** host family  
**die Gazelle (n)** antelope  
**das Gebäck (e)** cakes, biscuits  
**geben\*** to give  
**geblümt** floral  
**gebraten** fried  
**gebrauch machen**  
to make use of  
**gebrochen** broken  
**der Geburtstag (e)** birthday  
**das Geburtstagsgeschenk (e)**  
present  
**das Geburtstagskind (er)**  
birthday boy/girl  
**der Geburtstagskuchen (-)**  
birthday cake  
**die Geburtstagsparty (s)**  
birthday party  
**das Gedicht (e)** poem  
**die Gefahr (en)** danger  
**gefährlich** dangerous  
**gefallen\*** to be pleasing to  
**es gefällt mir** I like it  
**gefüllt** filled  
**gegen** against, towards, about  
**das Gegenteil (e)** opposite  
**gegenüber** across, opposite  
**gegenüber von ...**  
opposite to ...  
**gehen\*** to go  
**gehen wir mal rein!** let's go in!  
**... geht mir auf die Nerven!**  
... gets on my nerves!  
**die Geige (n)** violin  
**geil** cool  
**es hat geklappt!** it worked!  
**gelb** yellow  
**die gelbe Karte (n)**  
yellow card (soccer)  
**der Geldbeutel (-)** money pouch

**gemacht** made/did  
**gemischt** mixed  
**gemein** mean  
**das Gemüse (-)** vegetables  
**gemütlich** cosy, homey  
**genau!** exactly!, spot on!  
**genau mein Typ!** just my type!  
**genauso** as ... as  
**genauso gilt** is worth, is valid  
**genial!** excellent!, ingenious!  
**genießen\*** to enjoy  
**die Geographie** geography  
**das Gepäck (no pl.)** luggage  
**der Gepard (en)** cheetah  
**gepunktet** spotted  
**geradeaus** straight ahead  
**das Gericht (e)** dish  
**gern** gladly, with pleasure  
**gern machen** to like doing (something)  
**ich singe gern** I like to sing  
**das Gesamtschule (n)**  
comprehensive school  
**das Geschäft (e)** business, shop  
**das Geschenk (e)** present  
**Geschichte** History  
(school subject)  
**geschickt** skilful, coordinated  
**geschieden** divorced  
**geschmolzen** melted  
**die Geschwister (pl.)**  
brothers and sisters, siblings  
**geschwollen** swollen  
**das Gesicht (er)** face  
**gespannt** excited  
**das Gespräch (e)** conversation  
**gestern** yesterday  
**gestreift** striped  
**gesund** healthy  
**Gesundheit!** bless you!  
**das Getränk (e)** drink, beverage  
**getrennt** separated  
**gewinnen\*** to win  
**das Gewitter (-)** thunderstorm  
**gib mir ...** give me ...  
**giftig** poisonous, venomous  
**die Giraffe (n)** giraffe  
**die Gitarre (n)** guitar  
**glänzend** brilliant  
**das Glas (er)** glass  
**glauben** to believe  
**gleich** already, same, equal,  
just, immediately, now, at once,  
straight away  
**gleichfalls!** likewise!  
**das Glück** luck  
**Glück haben** to be lucky

**glücklich** lucky  
**der Glückspilz** lucky beggar  
**Glückwünsche** best wishes  
**der Goldfisch (e)** goldfish  
**Golf** golf  
**Gott sei Dank!** thank goodness!  
**der Grad (e)** degree (temperature)  
**das Gras (er)** grass  
**gratuliere!** congratulations!  
**grau** grey  
**Griechenland** Greece  
**griechisch** Greek (language)  
**grillen** to barbecue  
**die Grillparty (s)** barbecue  
**die Grippe** flu  
**groß** big, large  
**zu groß** too big, too large  
**Großbritannien**  
United Kingdom  
**die Größe (n)** size (of clothing)  
**die Großeltern (pl.)** grandparents  
**die Großmutter (-)** grandmother  
**die Großstadt (e)** big city  
**der Großvater (-)** grandfather  
**grün** green  
**die Grundschule (n)**  
primary school  
**die Gruppenarbeit (en)**  
groupwork  
**das Gruppenfoto (s)**  
group photo  
**der Gruppenzwang (er)**  
peer pressure  
**der Gruß (er)** greeting  
**mit freundlichen Grüßen**  
kind regards  
**grüß dich!** hello! (*informal*)  
**grüß Gott!** hello! (*southern*  
*Germany, Austria*)  
**guck(t) mal!** have a look!, look!  
**der Guglhupf (e)** German-style  
marble cake  
**das Gummibärchen (-)**  
gummy bear (German jelly baby)  
**gut** good, well  
**gut gemacht!** well done!  
**gut geschlafen?** (did you) sleep  
well?  
**gute Arbeit!** good work!  
**gute Besserung!**  
get well soon!  
**gute Idee!** good idea!  
**guten Appetit!** enjoy your  
meal!, bon appetit!  
**guten Morgen!** good morning!  
**guten Tag!** hello!  
**gutes neues Jahr und einen**  
**guten Rutsch!** happy new year!

**der Gutschein (e)** voucher  
**das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)**  
advanced high school

## H

**haargenau** exactly right, spot on  
**haben\*** to have  
**der Hahn ("e)** rooster  
**das Hähnchen (-)** chicken  
**der Hai (e)** shark  
**halb** half  
    **halb vier** half past three  
**der Halbbruder ("")** half-brother  
**die Halbschwester (n)** half-sister  
**hallo!** hello!  
**der Hals ("e)** throat, neck  
**Hals- und Beinbruch!** good luck!  
**Halbschmerzen haben**  
to have a sore throat  
**die Halskette (n)** necklace  
**der Hamburger (-)** hamburger  
**der Hamster (-)** hamster  
**die Hand ("e)** hand  
**Handball** (European) handball  
**das Handballtraining (s)**  
handball training  
**die Handlung (en)** shop  
**der Handschuh (e)** glove  
**das Handwerk** trade, craft  
**das Handy (s)** mobile phone  
**die Handynummer (n)**  
mobile phone number  
**harmlos** harmless  
**der Harz** mountain region in  
Germany  
**der Hase (n)** hare  
**hässlich** ugly  
**hau ab!** go away!  
**der Hauer (-)** tusk  
**das Hauptgericht (e)**  
main course  
**hauptsächlich** mainly, generally  
**die Hauptschule (n)**  
general high school  
**das Haus ("er)** house  
    **im und um Haus**  
in and around the house  
**die Hausarbeit (en)** housework  
**die Hausaufgabe (n)** homework  
**der Haushalt (e)** household  
**der Hausschuh (e)** slipper  
**das Haustier (e)** pet  
**der Haustiername (n)** pet name  
**die Haut ("e)** skin  
**he** hey  
    **he, ihr Zwei!** hey, you two!

**Heavymetal** heavy metal  
(music)  
**das Heft (e)** exercise book  
**der Heiligabend; der Heilige  
Abend** Christmas Eve  
**das Heim (e)** home  
**das Heimweh** homesickness  
**heiß** hot  
**heißen\*** to be called  
**die Heizung (en)** heater  
**helfen\*** to help  
**hell** light  
    **hellblau** light blue  
**der Helm (e)** helmet  
**das Hemd (en)** man's shirt  
**der Herbst (e)** autumn  
**der Herd (e)** stove  
**der Herr (en)** man, gentleman  
    **Herr ...** Mr ...  
**das Herrchen (-)** pet owner  
(male)  
**die Herrenabteilung (en)**  
men's department  
**herrlich** great, amazing,  
wonderful  
**das Herz (en)** heart  
**herzliche Grüße** best wishes  
    **herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
congratulations!  
    **herzlichen Glückwunsch zum  
Geburtstag!** happy birthday!  
**das Heu** hay  
**der Heuschnupfen** hay fever  
**heute** today  
    **heute ist der ... (Datum)**  
today is the ... (date)  
**heute Abend** tonight  
**die Hexe (n)** witch  
**hi!** hi!  
**hier** here  
**die Hilfe (no pl.)** help  
**der Himmel (-)** sky, heaven  
**hinab** down  
**hinten** of the back, behind  
**hinter** behind  
**Hip-Hop** Hip Hop (music)  
**die Hitparade (n)** hit parade  
**hoch** high  
**Hochdeutsch** 'high' or standard  
German  
**der Hochzeitstag (e)**  
wedding anniversary  
**Hockey** hockey  
**hoffen** to hope  
**hoffentlich** hopefully  
**holen** to get  
**die Hölle (n)** hell  
**der Honig (e)** honey

**hören** to listen to, to hear  
    **hör mal/zu!** listen!  
**das Horn ("er)** horn  
**die Hose (n)** pants, trousers  
**der Huf (e)** hoof  
**das Huhn ("er)** chicken  
**der Hund (e)** dog  
**das Hündchen (-)** puppy,  
little dog, doggy  
**die Hundefreunde** dog lovers (pl.)  
**der Hundehaufen (-)**  
dog droppings  
**hundert** hundred  
**die Hündin (nen)** female dog  
**der Hunger** hunger, appetite  
    **Hunger haben** to be hungry  
**hurra!** hooray!  
**der Hut ("e)** hat

## I

**der IC/ICE (-)** Intercity/  
Intercity-Express train  
**ich** I  
**ideal** ideal  
**die Idee (n)** idea  
**igitt!** yuck! ugh!  
**ihm** (to/with) him, it (dative)  
**ihn** him, it (accusative)  
**ihnen** them (dative)  
**Ihnen** you (formal, dative)  
**ihr** you (pl.)  
**ihr/ihre/ihren** her  
**Ihr/Ihre/Ihren** their, your (formal)  
**iiiihh!** eek!  
**im** in (a/the) (dative)  
    **im Arm** in one's arms  
    **im Ernst?** seriously?  
    **im Fernsehen** on television  
    **im Internet** on the internet  
    **im Trend** in fashion  
    **im und um Haus**  
in and around the house  
    **im Vergleich** in comparison  
**der Imbiss (e)** snack  
**die Imbissbude (n)** snack stand,  
snack stall  
**immer** always  
**immer noch** still  
**in** in, into, to  
    **in der Hand** in the/one's hand  
    **in die Mitte** in the middle  
    **in Ordnung** all right, OK  
**Indonesisch** Indonesian  
(language)  
**Informatik** Information  
Technology (IT) (school subject)  
**die Information (en)** information

**informieren** to inform  
**der Ingenieur (e)** engineer (*male*)  
**die Ingenieurin (nen)** engineer (*female*)  
**die Inneneinrichtung (en)** furnishings  
**die Innenstadt (‘e)** inner city  
**ins Kino** in/to the cinema  
**das Insekt (en)** insect  
**die Insel (n)** island  
**das Instrument (e)** instrument  
**intelligent** intelligent  
**interessant** interesting  
**sich interessieren für** to be interested in  
**international** international  
**das Internet (no pl.)** the internet  
**die Internetseite (n)** website  
**das Interview (s)** interview  
**interviewen** to interview  
**Israel** Israel  
**ist** is (*from sein*)  
**Italien** Italy  
**italienisch** Italian (*adj.*)  
**Italienisch** Italian (*language*)

## J

**ja** yes  
**ja, bitte?** can I help you?  
**ja, gerne** yes, gladly; with pleasure  
**ja, stimmt** yes, that’s true  
**ja, und wie!** yes, absolutely!  
**die Jacke (n)** jacket  
**der Jaguar (e)** jaguar  
**das Jahr (e)** year  
**... Jahre alt** ... years old  
**die Jahreszeit (en)** season  
**der Januar** January  
**japanisch** Japanese (*adj.*)  
**Japanisch** Japanese (*language*)  
**Jazz** Jazz (*music*)  
**die Jeans (pl.)** jeans  
**die Jeansjacke (n)** denim jacket  
**jede** every  
**jetzt** now  
**der Job (s)** job (*informal*)  
**der Ferienjob (s)** holiday job  
**der Nebenjob (s)** part-time job  
**jobben** to work (*part-time job*)  
**joggen** to jog  
**Joggen** jogging  
**der Joghurt (s)** yoghurt  
**der Journalist (en)** journalist (*male*)

**die Journalistin (nen)** journalist (*female*)  
**Judo** judo  
**das Jugendgästehaus (‘er)** youth guesthouse  
**die Jugendherberge (n)** youth hostel  
**der Juli** July  
**jung** young  
**der Junge (n)** boy  
**die Jungs** boys, guys (*informal*)  
**der Juni** June

## K

**der Kaffee (s)** coffee  
**der Käfig (e)** cage  
**der Kakao (s)** cocoa, hot chocolate  
**der Kalender (-)** calendar  
**kalt** cold  
**Kanada** Canada  
**der Kanarienvogel (‘-)** canary  
**das Känguru (s)** kangaroo  
**das Kaninchen (-)** rabbit  
**du kannst** you can (*from können\**)  
**kaputt** broken, exhausted  
**Karate** karate  
**kariert** checked  
**Karneval** carnival  
**das Karnevalskostüm (e)** carnival costume  
**die Karotte (n)** carrot  
**die Karte (n)** greeting card, map, ticket  
**die Kartoffel (n)** potato  
**der Kartoffelpuffer (-)** potato cake  
**der Kartoffelsalat (e)** potato salad  
**der Käse (-)** cheese  
**das Käsebrod (e)** cheese sandwich  
**das Käsefondue (s)** cheese fondue  
**der Käsekuchen (-)** cheesecake  
**die Kasse (n)** cash register  
**der Kater (-)** male cat  
**das Kätzchen (-)** kitten  
**die Katze (n)** cat  
**das Katzenfutter (-)** cat food  
**kaufen** to buy  
**das Kaufhaus (‘er)** department store  
**im Kaufhaus einkaufen** shopping in the department store

**kaum** hardly  
**die Kehrwoche (n)** week of cleaning duties (*in a block of flats*)  
**kein/keine/keinen** no, no one, none, not any (*indefinite article*)  
**kein Problem!** no problem!  
**keine Ahnung!** no idea!  
**keine Panik!** don’t panic!  
**der Keller (-)** cellar  
**der Kellner (-)** waiter (*male*)  
**die Kellnerin (nen)** waitress  
**kennen\*** to know  
**die Kerze (n)** candle  
**der Ketchup** ketchup  
**kiffen** to smoke marijuana  
**das Kind (er)** child  
**der Kindergarten (‘-)** kindergarten  
**kinderlieb** good with children  
**das Kinderzimmer (-)** child’s bedroom  
**das Kinn (e)** chin  
**das Kino (s)** cinema  
**die Kirche (n)** church  
**die Kirsche (n)** cherry  
**der Kirschsafte (‘e)** cherry juice  
**die Klamotten (pl.)** clothes (*colloquial*)  
**klar** clear  
**klar!** sure!  
**die Klarinette (n)** clarinet  
**klasse** great  
**die Klasse (n)** class  
**die Klassenaktivität (-)** class activity  
**die Klassenarbeit (en)** class test  
**die Klassenfahrt (en)** excursion, class trip  
**das Klassenfest (e)** class party  
**das Klassenfoto (s)** class photo  
**der Klassenkamerad** classmate  
**der Klassenlehrer (-)** class teacher (*male*)  
**die Klassenlehrerin (nen)** class teacher (*female*)  
**das Klassenprojekt (e)** class project  
**das Klassenzimmer (-)** classroom  
**klassische Musik** classical music  
**die Klaue (n)** claw  
**das Klavier (e)** piano  
**kleben** to stick  
**der Klebstoff (e)** glue  
**das Kleid (er)** dress  
**die Kleidung** clothes

**die Kleider** clothes  
**klein** small, little  
**zu klein** too small, too little  
**die Kleinstadt** (‘e) small town  
**der Klempner** (-) plumber (male)  
**die Klempnerin** (nen) plumber (female)  
**klug** clever  
**die Knackwurst** (‘e) knackwurst (type of sausage)  
**knapp** almost, scarcely  
**das Knie** (-) knee  
**der Knopf** (‘e) button  
**knuddelig** cuddly  
**der Koala** (s) koala  
**der Koch** (e) chef (male)  
**die Köchin** (nen) chef (female)  
**das Kochbuch** (‘er) cookbook  
**kochen** cook  
**der Kode** (s) code  
**der Koffer** (-) suitcase  
**die Kombination** (en) combination  
**komisch** strange  
**das Komma** (s) comma  
**kommen\*** to come  
**komm!** come on!  
**komm mal rein!** come on in!  
**komm(t) an die Tafel!** come to the board!  
**kommt ihr mit?** are you coming, too?, do you want to come?  
**er/sie kommt auf Besuch** he/she is coming for a visit  
**der Kommentar** (e) commentary  
**der Kommentator** (en) commentator (male)  
**die Kommentatorin** (nen) commentator (female)  
**kommentieren** to comment  
**kompliziert** complicated  
**der Komposthaufen** (-) compost heap  
**der Kompromiss** (e) compromise  
**die Konditorei** (en) cake shop  
**können\*** to be able to (modal verb), can  
**sich konzentrieren** (auf) to concentrate (on) (reflexive verb)  
**ich konzentriere mich** I’m concentrating  
**das Konzert** (e) concert  
**der Kopf** (‘e) head  
**die Kopfschmerzen** (pl.) headache

**der Korb** (‘e) basket  
**Korbball** netball  
**das Körperteil** (e) body part  
**kosten** to cost  
**was kostet/kosten ...?** how much does ... cost?  
**der Krach** (‘e) noise  
**die Krakauer** ham sausage  
**die Kralle** (n) claw  
**krank** sick  
**das Krankenhaus** (‘er) hospital  
**der Krankenpfleger** (-) nurse (male)  
**die Krankenpflegerin** (nen) nurse (female)  
**der Krebs** (e) crab  
**die Kreditkarte** (n) credit card  
**das Kreuzworträtsel** (-) crossword puzzle  
**Kricket** cricket  
**das Krokodil** (e) crocodile  
**die Krücke** (n) crutches  
**die Küche** (n) kitchen  
**der Kuchen** (-) cake  
**die Kuckucksuhr** (en) cuckoo clock  
**die Kugel** (n) bauble  
**die Kuh** (‘e) cow  
**die Kuhglocke** (n) cow bell  
**kühl** chilly, cool (weather)  
**der Kuli** (s) (ballpoint) pen  
**der Kühlschrank** (‘e) fridge  
**der Kunde** (n) customer  
**Kunst** Art (school subject)  
**das Kunstmuseum** (en) art gallery  
**das Kursbuch** (‘er) textbook  
**kurz** short  
**kuschelig** cuddly  
**das Kuscheltier** (e) soft toy  
**der Kuß** (Küsse) kiss  
**küssen** to kiss

## L

**der Laden** (‘) shop  
**die Lampe** (n) lamp  
**das Land** (‘er) country  
**auf dem Land** in the country  
**landen** to land  
**lang** long  
**langsam** slow, slowly  
**langweilig** boring  
**lassen\*** to leave, to stop  
**der Lastkraftwagen** (LKW) (-) truck, heavy goods vehicle

**Latein** Latin (language)  
**laufen\*** to run  
**laut** loud  
**die Lebensmittel** (pl.) groceries  
**die Lebensmittelabteilung** (en) food department  
**die Leberwurst** (‘e) liverwurst  
**der Lebkuchen** (-) gingerbread  
**das Lebkuchenherz** (en) gingerbread heart  
**lecker** delicious  
**lecker!** yum!  
**die Lederhose** (n) lederhosen (traditional German leather shorts)  
**die Lederjacke** (n) leather jacket  
**leer** empty  
**die Lehre** (n) apprenticeship  
**der Lehrer** (-) teacher (male)  
**das Lehrerhandbuch** (‘er) teacher book  
**die Lehrerin** (nen) teacher (female)  
**leicht** easy, easily  
**leider** unfortunately  
**das Leitungswasser** (-) tap water  
**der Leopard** (n) leopard  
**lernen** to learn  
**Lerntipps** learning tips  
**lesen\*** to read  
**die Leseseite** (n) reading page  
**letzt** last  
**der/die Letzte** the last  
**die Leute** (pl.) people  
**libanesisch** Lebanese  
**das Licht** (er) light  
**lieb** kind, nice  
**liebe Anna** dear Anna  
**liebe Grüße** kind regards, best wishes  
**lieber Christian** dear Christian  
**(jemanden) lieb haben** to be fond of (someone)  
**lieben** to love  
**lieber** rather  
**lieber als ...** rather than ..., in preference to ...  
**der Liebesfilm** (e) romantic movie  
**das Lieblingsbuch** (‘er) favourite book  
**das Lieblingsessen** (-) favourite meal  
**das Lieblingsfach** (‘er) favourite subject

**die Lieblingsfarbe (n)** favourite colour  
**der Lieblingskuchen (-)** favourite cake  
**die Lieblingsmannschaft (n)** favourite team  
**der Lieblingstag (e)** favourite day  
**am liebsten** best, the most  
**Liechtenstein** Liechtenstein  
**das Lied (er)** song  
 **liken** to 'like' (online)  
**lila** purple  
**die Limo (s)** lemonade (abbreviation)  
**die Limonade (n)** lemonade  
**das Lineal (e)** ruler  
**links** left  
**auf der linken Seite** on the left-hand side  
**der Linksaußen (-)** left-wing player  
**die Lippe (n)** lip  
**die Liste (n)** list  
**das Liter (-)** litre  
**los|fahren\*** to set off  
**der Löwe (n)** lion  
**die Luft (‘e)** air  
**der Luftballon (s)** balloon  
**die Luftfahrt (en)** air travel  
**lunchen** to have lunch  
**lustig** funny  
**Luxemburg** Luxembourg

## M

**machen** to do, to make  
**mach(t) das Licht an/aus!** turn the light on/off!  
**mach(t) die Tafel sauber!** clean the board!  
**mach(t) die Tür auf/zuf!** open/close the door!  
**mach(t) eure Bücher auf/zuf!** open/close your books!  
**mach mit!** join in!  
**mach(t) schnell!** hurry up!  
**mach's gut!** take care!  
**das Mädchen (-)** girl  
**das Magazin (e)** magazine  
**mähen** to mow  
**Mahlzeit!** enjoy your meal! (formal)  
**der Mai** May  
**der Maibaum (‘e)** maypole  
**die Mail (s)** email  
**der Maiskolben (-)** corn on the cob

**die Majonäse** mayonnaise  
**mal sehen** we'll see  
**das Malzbier (e)** malt beer (non-alcoholic)  
**die Mama (s)** mum  
**die Mami (s)** mummy  
**man** one, you  
**manchmal** sometimes  
**der Mann (‘er)** man, husband (oh) Mann! (oh) man!  
**das Männchen (-)** male animal  
**die Mannschaft (en)** team  
**der Mantel (‘-)** coat  
**des Mäppchen (-)** pencil case  
**markieren** to mark  
**der Markt (‘e)** market  
**der Marktplatz (‘e)** market place  
**die Marktstraße (n)** shopping street  
**die Marmelade (n)** jam, marmalade  
**der Marmorkuchen (n)** marble cake  
**der März** March  
**das Maskulinum** masculine  
**in Maßen** in moderation  
**in Massen** in vast quantities  
**das Material (ien)** materials, products  
**Mathe(matik)** Maths  
**die Maus (‘e)** mouse  
**das Mäuschen (-)** little mouse  
**das Medikament (e)** medication  
**das Meer (e)** sea, ocean  
**am Meer** by the sea  
**der Meeresbiologe (n)** marine biologist (male)  
**die Meeresbiologin (nen)** marine biologist (female)  
**das Meerschweinchen (-)** guinea pig  
**mehr** more  
**mein/meine/meinen** my  
**mein Geburtstag ist in (Monat)/am (Tag/Datum)** my birthday is in (month)/on (day/date)  
**am meisten** the most  
**meistens** mostly, most of the time  
**melde dich! / meldet euch!** put your hand(s) up!  
**Mensch!** gee!  
**Mensch, bin ich kaputt!** gee, I'm exhausted!  
**der Meter (-)** metre  
**die Mettwurst (‘e)** (smoked) pork/beef sausage  
**die Metzgerei (en)** butcher shop

**mexikanisch** Mexican  
**mich** me, myself  
**die Milch (e)** milk  
**die Million (en)** million  
**das Mineralwasser** mineral water  
**minus** minus  
**die Minute (n)** minute  
**mir egal** I don't care  
**mir geht's ...** I feel ...  
**mir geht's gut** I'm well  
**mir ist schlecht** I feel unwell  
**miserabel** miserable, unhappy  
**mit** with, by  
**mit dem Bus** by bus  
**die Mitarbeiter (-)** coworker  
**mit|bringen\*** to bring (along)  
**mit|fahren\*** to go with, to drive with  
**mit|helfen\*** to help  
**mit|kommen\*** to come with, to come (along) too  
**mit|machen** to participate, to join in  
**mit|nehmen** to take (along with)  
**der Mittag (e)** midday  
**das Mittagessen (-)** lunch  
**die Mitte (n)** middle  
**der Mittelfeldspieler (-)** midfielder (male)  
**die Mittelfeldspielerin (nen)** midfielder (female)  
**die Mitternacht (‘e)** midnight  
**der Mittwoch (-)** Wednesday  
**möchte** would like (form of mögen\*)  
**möchtest du gern tanzen?** would you like to dance?  
**möchten** would like to  
**das Modalverb (en)** modal verb  
**die Modenschau (en)** fashion parade  
**modern** modern  
**das Mofa (s) (‘e)** moped  
**mogeln** to cheat  
**mögen\*** to like  
**der Mohnkuchen (-)** poppy seed cake  
**die Möhre (n)** carrot  
**moin!** hello! (northern Germany)  
**Moment!** wait a moment!  
**Moment mal!** just a moment!  
**der Monat (e)** month  
**der Montag (e)** Monday  
**der Morgen (-)** morning  
**Morgen!** morning!, hi!  
**gestern Morgen** yesterday morning

**morgen** tomorrow  
**morgens** in the morning  
**das Motorrad** (ˈer) motorbike  
**der Motorsport** (e) motor sports  
**die Mousse au Chocolat** (-)  
 chocolate mousse  
**müde** tired  
**der Müll** (-) rubbish  
**der Müll rausbringen**  
 to take out the rubbish  
**der Mülleimer** (-) rubbish bin  
**multikulturell** multicultural  
**der Mund** (ˈer) mouth  
**München** Munich  
**die Muschelkette** (n)  
 shell necklace  
**das Museum** (Museen) museum  
**Musik** Music (school subject)  
**die Musik** (en) music  
**das Musikgeschäft** (e)  
 music shop  
**die Musikarte** (n) type of music  
**das Müsli** (s) muesli  
**müssen** to have to (*modal verb*);  
 must  
**das Muster** (-) pattern  
**mutig** brave  
**die Mutprobe** (n) test of courage  
**die Mutter** (ˈ-) mother  
**die Mütze** (n) beanie, hat, cap

## N

**na** hey, well  
**na gut!** alright!  
**na, komm mal rein!** come on in!  
**na, los!** come on!, let's go!  
**na, und?** so what?  
**na, wenn du so meinst!**  
 whatever you say!  
**nach** to, towards, past (time),  
 after  
**... nach ...** ... past/after  
 (the hour) ...  
**nach Hause** (to go) home  
**nachher** afterwards  
**die Nachhilfeschule** (n)  
 tutoring centre  
**der Nachmittag** (e) afternoon  
**nachmittags** in the afternoon  
**am Mittwochnachmittag**  
 on Wednesday afternoon  
**die Nachspeise** (n) dessert  
**nächst** next  
**die Nacht** (ˈe) night  
**der Nachtschisch** (e) dessert  
**das Nachtleben** (-) night-life  
**nachträglich** belated

**nahegelegen** nearby  
**der Name** (n) name  
**die Nase** (n) nose  
**das Nashorn** (ˈer) rhinoceros  
**die Natur** (*no pl.*) nature  
**natürlich** naturally  
**Naturwissenschaft** (en) Science  
 (school subject)  
**ne?** isn't it?  
**neben** next to, beside  
**nebeneinander**  
 next to each other  
**der Nebenjob** (s) part-time job  
**neblig** foggy  
**der Neffe** (n) nephew  
**nehmen\*** to take, to have  
**nein** no  
**nett** nice  
**neu** new  
**neun** nine  
**Neuseeland** New Zealand  
**das Neutrum** neuter  
**nicht** not  
**nicht erlaubt** not allowed/  
 permitted  
**ich singe nicht gern**  
 I dislike singing  
**nicht gern machen**  
 to dislike doing (something)  
**nicht mehr** no longer  
**nicht so gut** not so good  
**nicht unbedingt**  
 not necessarily  
**nicht wahr?** isn't that true?  
**der Nichte** (n) niece  
**nichts** nothing  
**nichts Besonderes**  
 nothing much  
**nie** never  
**die Niederlande**  
 the Netherlands  
**niedlich** cute  
**der Nikolaus** (ˈe) Saint Nicholas  
**der Nikolausstiefel** (-)  
 Christmas stocking  
**das Nilpferd** (e) hippopotamus  
**nimmer** never  
**nimmermehr** never again  
**noch** still  
**noch einmal** once again  
**noch nicht** not yet  
**das Nomen** (-) noun  
**das Nordamerika**  
 North America  
**Norwegen** Norway  
**die Note** (n) grade, score, mark  
**die Notiz** (en) note  
**der Notizblock** (ˈe) notepad

**der November** November  
**die Nudel** (n) pasta, noodle  
**der Nudelsalat** (e) pasta salad  
**null** zero  
**die Nummer** (n) number  
**nun** now  
**nun hört aber auf!**  
 now stop that!  
**nun aber los!** let's go!, hurry up!  
**nur** only  
**der Nussknacker** (-) nutcracker



**ob** whether, if  
**das Obst** (*no pl.*) fruit  
**der Obstsalat** (e) fruit salad  
**obwohl** although, even though,  
 despite  
**oder** or  
**oder?** isn't it/that so?  
**offen** open  
**oft** often  
**die Öffnungszeit** (en)  
 opening time (shop)  
**oh** oh  
**oh Gott!** oh my god!  
**oh weh!** oh dear!  
**oh weia!** oh dear!  
**ohne** without  
**ohnmächtig** faint  
**das Ohr** (en) ear  
**die Ohrenschmerzen** earache  
**der Ohrring** (e) earring  
**die Olympischen Spiele**  
 Olympic Games  
**O.K.** OK, all right  
**der Oktober** October  
**das Oktoberfest** (e) Oktoberfest  
**die Oma** (s) grandma  
**die Omi** (s) granny  
**der Onkel** (-) uncle  
**der Opa** (s) grandpa  
**der Opal** (e) opal  
**der Opi** (s) grandpa, pop  
**die Orange** (n) orange (*fruit*)  
**orange** orange  
**der Orangensaft** (ˈe)  
 orange juice  
**organisieren** to organise  
**der Osterhase** (n) Easter bunny  
**das Ostern** Easter  
**Österreich** Austria  
**der Ostersonntag** Easter Sunday  
**ostfriesisch** East Frisian  
**der Otter** (-) otter  
**der Ozean** (e) ocean

**P**

**das Paar (e)** pair  
**ein paar** a few of  
**die Palme (n)** palm  
**die Pampelmuse (n)** grapefruit  
**der Panter (-)** panther  
**der Papa (s)** dad  
**der Papagei (en)** parrot  
**der Papi (s)** daddy  
**das Papier** paper  
**das Paradies (e)** paradise  
**Paraguay** Paraguay  
**das Parfüm (s)** perfume  
**der Park (s)** park  
**parken** to park  
**der Partner (-)** partner (*male*)  
**die Partnerarbeit (en)**  
 work with a partner  
**die Partnerin (nen)** partner  
 (*female*)  
**die Party (s)** party  
**zu einer Party gehen**  
 to go to a party  
**pass(t) auf!** pay attention!,  
 watch out!  
**pass auf dich auf!**  
 take care of yourself!  
**passen** to fit  
**die Pause (n)** recess  
**perfekt** perfect  
**die Person (en)** person  
**der Personalausweis (e)**  
 identity card  
**der Pfeffer** pepper  
**das Pferd (e)** horse  
**die Pflanze (n)** plant  
**die Pfote (n)** paw  
**pfui!** yuck!, ugh!  
**Physik** physics  
**der Pilot (en)** pilot (*male*)  
**die Pilotin (nen)** pilot (*female*)  
**die Piste (n)** ski slope  
**die Pizza (s)** Pizza  
**die Pizzeria (en)** pizza parlour  
**planen** to plan  
**die Plastiktüte (n)** plastic bag  
**der Platten (-)** flat tyre  
**der Platz ("e)** place, seat, space,  
 spot  
**das Plätzchen (-)** biscuit  
**der Plural** plural  
**plus** plus  
**das Poesiealbum (-alben)**  
 friendship book  
**Polen** Poland  
**die Polizei (no pl.)** police

**der Polizist (en)** police officer  
 (*male*)  
**die Polizistin (nen)** police officer  
 (*female*)  
**die Pommes (pl.)** hot chips,  
 french fries  
**die Pommes rot-weiß**  
 french fries with tomato sauce  
 and mayonnaise  
**die Popmusik** pop music  
**populär** popular  
**die Portion (en)** portion, serve  
**die Post (no pl.)** mail, post,  
 post office  
**posten** to post (on the internet)  
**das Poster (-)** poster  
**die Postkarte (n)** postcard  
**die Praline (n)** chocolate  
**die Präposition (en)** preposition  
**präsentieren** to present  
**der Preis (e)** price, prize  
**prima** great  
**das Privatleben (-)** private life  
**pro** per  
**pro Stück** per piece  
**probieren** to try  
**probier doch mal!**  
 try/have some!  
**das Produkt (e)** product  
**der Profi (s)** professional  
**das Profil (e)** profile  
**der Programmierer (-)**  
 programmer (*male*)  
**die Programmiererin (nen)**  
 programmer (*female*)  
**das Projekt (e)** project  
**das Pronomen (-)** pronoun  
**prosit Neujahr!** happy new year!  
**prost!** cheers!  
**die Prüfung (en)** examination  
**der Pudel (s)** poodle  
**der Pulli (s), der Pullover (-)**  
 jumper  
**pünktlich** punctual, on time  
**seid bitte pünktlich!**  
 be on time, please!  
**putzen** to clean  
**die Putzfrau (en)** cleaning lady  
**das Putzmittel (-)**  
 cleaning product  
**der Pyjama (s)** pyjamas

**Q**

**die Qualität (en)** quality  
**das Quiz (-)** quiz

**R**

**das Rad (colloquial)** bike  
**Rad fahren\*** to ride a bike  
**das Radfahren** bike-riding  
**der Radiergummi (s)** eraser  
**die Raketen (pl.)** fireworks  
**Rap** rap music  
**der Rasen (-)** pitch, lawn  
**sich rasieren** to shave  
**der Rätsel (-)** riddle  
**raten** to guess  
**rate mal, was das ist!**  
 have a guess what this/that is!  
**das Rathaus ("er)** town hall  
**das Rätsel (-)** riddle  
**die Ratte (n)** rat  
**der Rattenfänger** pied piper  
**rauchen** to smoke  
**(der Müll) rausbringen\***  
 to take out (the rubbish)  
**die Razzia (Razzien)** raid  
**die Realschule (n)**  
 intermediate high school  
**die Rechnung (en)** bill  
**rechts** right  
**auf der rechten Seite**  
 on the right hand side  
**der Rechtsaußen (-)**  
 right-wing player  
**recyclen** to recycle  
**reden** to talk, to speak  
**reduziert** reduced  
**das Regal (e)** shelf  
**der Regen** rain  
**der Regenmantel ("-)**  raincoat  
**der Regenwald ("er)** rainforest  
**regnen** to rain  
**das Reh (e)** deer  
**reinhören** to listen in  
**der Reis (no pl.)** rice  
**die Reise (n)** trip  
**die Reisebürokauffrau**  
 travel agent (*female*)  
**der Reisebürokaufmann**  
 travel agent (*male*)  
**reisen** to travel  
**der Reisepass ("e)** passport  
**reiten\*** to ride (a horse)  
**relaxen** to relax  
**Religion/Reli**  
 Religious Education  
**das Rennen** running  
**das Rentier (e)** reindeer  
**reparieren** to repair  
**das Restaurant (s)** restaurant  
**das Rezept (e)** recipe

**rheinländisch** Rhenish, from Rhineland  
**richtig** right, correct, really  
**richtig toll** really great  
**riechen\*** to smell  
**R'n'B** R'n'B music  
**Rock** rock music  
**der Rock (˚e)** skirt  
**roh** raw  
**das Rollenspiel (e)** role-play  
**die Rolltreppe (n)** escalator  
**der Roman (e)** novel  
**rosa** pink  
**die Rostbratwurst (˚e)** barbecue sausage  
**rot** red  
**die rote Karte (n)** red card (soccer)  
**der Rotkohl (e)** red cabbage  
**der Rücken (-)** back  
**der Rucksack (˚e)** backpack, rucksack  
**die Rucksackreise (n)** backpacking trip  
**rufen\*** to call  
**Rugby** rugby (Union or League)  
**ruhe, bitte!** quiet, please!  
**in Ruhe** in peace  
**ruhig** quiet  
**die Rundreise (n)** tour  
**der Rüssel (-)** trunk (of elephant)  
**die rythmische Sportgymnastik** rhythmic gymnastics

## S

**die Sache (n)** thing, item  
**die Sachertorte (n)** sachertorte (rich Austrian chocolate cake)  
**Sächsisch** Saxon (dialect)  
**der Saft (˚e)** juice  
**sagen** to say, to tell  
**sag mal ...** tell me ...  
**die Sahne (no pl.)** cream  
**die Salami (s)** salami  
**das Salamibrötchen (-)** salami roll  
**der Salat (e)** lettuce, salad  
**das Salz** salt  
**salzig** salty  
**der Samstag (e)** Saturday  
**das Sandwich (e)** sandwich  
**Sankt Martin** Saint Martin  
**Sankt Nikolaus** Saint Nicholas  
**satt** full (of food)  
**der Satz (˚e)** sentence  
**sauber** clean

**sauber machen** to clean  
**sauer** angry, annoyed; sour (taste)  
**das Sauerkraut (-)** sauerkraut (pickled cabbage)  
**die Sauerstoffflasche (n)** oxygen tank  
**das Saxophon (e)** saxophone  
**Schach spielen** to play chess  
**schade ...** unfortunately ...  
**schaffen** to achieve, to manage  
**der Schal (s)** scarf  
**die Schallplatte (n)** vinyl record  
**scharf** sharp, spicy  
**der Schatten (-)** shadow  
**schatz** darling  
**der Schauspieler (-)** actor (*male*)  
**die Schauspielerin (nen)** actor (*female*)  
**die Scheibe (n)** slice  
**scheinen\*** to shine  
**die Schere (n)** scissors  
**scheu** shy, timid  
**schick** chic, stylish  
**schicken** to send  
**der Schiedsrichter (-)** umpire, referee (*male*)  
**die Schiedsrichterin (nen)** umpire, referee (*female*)  
**schießen\*** to shoot (a goal)  
**das Schiff (e)** ship  
**die Schifffahrt (en)** boat trip  
**das Schild (er)** sign  
**der Schinken (-)** ham  
**das Schinkenbrot (e)** ham sandwich  
**die Schinkenwurst (˚e)** ham sausage  
**schlafen\*** to sleep  
**der Schlafsack (˚e)** sleeping bag  
**das Schlafzimmer (-)** bedroom  
**der Schlager (-)** romantic song (European style)  
**das Schlagobers (-)** whipped cream (*Austria*)  
**das Schlagzeug (e)** drums  
**die Schlange (n)** snake  
**schlecht** bad  
**mir ist schlecht** I feel unwell  
**schlimm** terrible  
**der Schlips (e)** tie (neck tie)  
**das Schlittschuhfahren/-laufen** ice-skating  
**Schlittschuh fahren/laufen** to ice-skate  
**das Schloss (˚er)** castle, palace  
**der Schlusspfiff (e)** final whistle  
**der Schlussverkauf** sale (shopping)

**schmecken** to taste  
**schmeckt's?** does that taste good?  
**wie schmeckt's?** how does it taste?  
**das schmeckt!** it tastes good!  
**der Schmerz (en)** ache, pain  
**Bauchschmerzen haben** to have a tummy ache  
**Halzschmerzen haben** to have a sore throat  
**Kopfschmerzen haben** to have a headache  
**Ohrenschmerzen haben** to have an earache  
**sich schminken** to put on make-up  
**schmutzig** dirty, polluted  
**der Schnabel (˚-)** beak  
**das Schnäppchen (-)** bargain  
**der Schnaps/Schnapps (en)** liquor, spirits  
**der Schnee** snow  
**der Schneeball (˚e)** snowball  
**die Schneeflocke (n)** snowflake  
**der Schneemann (˚er)** snowman  
**schneiden\*** to cut  
**schneien** to snow  
**schnell** fast, quick, quickly  
**die Schnellbahn (S-bahn) (en)** (rapid) local railway  
**das Schnellrestaurant (s)** fast-food restaurant  
**das Schnitzel (-)** schnitzel  
**schnorcheln** to snorkel  
**der Schnupfen** sniffles  
**das Schnurrbarthaar (e)** whisker  
**die Schokolade (no pl.)** chocolate  
**die heiße Schokolade (n)** hot chocolate  
**der Schokoladekuchen (-)** chocolate cake  
**schon** already  
**schön** beautiful, lovely, fine (weather), good, nice  
**schönen Tag noch!** have a nice day!  
**schönes Wochenende!** have a nice weekend!  
**die Schorle (n)** spritzer  
**die Apfelschorle (n)** apple spritzer  
**der Schrank (˚e)** cupboard  
**der Schrebergarten (˚-)** community garden/allotment  
**schreiben** to write  
**der Schreibtisch (e)** desk  
**Schreibtipp** writing tips

**der Schuh (e)** shoe  
**das Schuhgeschäft (e)** shoe shop  
**die Schularbeit (en)** school work  
**die Schulband (s)** school band  
**die Schuldisko (s)** school disco  
**die Schule (n)** school  
**die Gesamtschule (n)** comprehensive school  
**die Grundschule (n)** primary school  
**das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)** academic high school  
**die Realschule (n)** high school (less academic)  
**der Schüler (-)** (school) student (male)  
**die Schülerin (nen)** (school) student (female)  
**die Schülerzeitung (en)** school magazine  
**das Schulfach (‘er)** school subject  
**der Schulhof (‘e)** school yard  
**das Schuljahr (e)** school year  
**das Schulkonzert (e)** school concert  
**der Schulstress (-)** school-related/academic stress  
**das Schulsystem (en)** the school system  
**die Schultasche (n)** school bag  
**die Schulter (n)** shoulder  
**die Schultüte** school cone (decorated)  
**die Schuluniform (en)** school uniform  
**die Schulwebsite (s)** school website  
**sich schützen vor ...** to protect oneself against ...  
**der Schwanz (‘e)** tail  
**schwarz** black  
**das schwarze Brett** noticeboard  
**die schwarzwälder Kirschtorte (n)** blackforest (cherry) cake  
**das Schwein (e)** pig  
**Schwein haben** to be lucky  
**der Schweinebraten (-)** roast pork  
**die Schweiz** Switzerland  
**schwer** heavy  
**die Schwester (n)** sister  
**die Schwesterschule (n)** sister school  
**schwierig** difficult  
**schwimmen\*** to swim  
**sechs** six  
**der See** lake

**die See (n)** sea, ocean  
**die Seealge (n)** seaweed  
**das Seepferdchen (-)** sea horse  
**sehen\*** to see  
**sehr** very  
**sehr gut!** very good!  
**seid bitte pünktlich!** be on time, please!  
**sein\*** to be  
**sein/seine/seinen** his, its, their  
**seit** since, for  
**die Seite (n)** page, side  
**die Seitenlinie (n)** sideline  
**der Sekt (e)** sparkling wine  
**selbst** alone, self  
**senden\*** to send  
**der Senf (e)** mustard  
**senkrecht** vertical (down)  
**der September** September  
**der Service (-)** service  
**servus!** hello! bye! (southern Germany and Austria)  
**sich setzen** to sit down  
**setz dich! / setzt euch!** sit down!  
**das Shopping (no pl.)** shopping  
**die Shorts (pl.)** shorts  
**sicher** certainly  
**sie** she, they, her, them  
**Sie** you (formal)  
**sieben** seven  
**Silvester** New Year's Eve  
**die Silvestersparty (s)** New Year's Eve party  
**sie/wir sind** they/we are (from sein\*)  
**singen\*** to sing  
**der Singular** singular (grammar)  
**sitzen\*** to sit  
**sitzenbleiben\*** to repeat a year at school  
**das Skateboard (s)** skateboard  
**Skateboard fahren** to (ride a) skateboard  
**der Skateboardhelm (e)** skateboard helmet  
**Ski** ski  
**das Skifahren** skiing  
**Ski fahren\*/laufen\*** to ski  
**die SMS (-)** SMS, text message  
**der Snack (s)** snack  
**das Snowboard (s)** snowboard  
**das Snowboarden** snowboarding  
**snowboarden** to snowboard  
**so** so  
**so ein Mist!** crap!, what a smell!, oh no!, that's terrible!  
**so viel** so much

**so viele** so many  
**die Socke (n)** sock  
**das Sofa (s)** sofa  
**sogar** even  
**sich Sorgen machen** to worry  
**die soziale Medien (pl.)** social media  
**die Stofftasche (n)** fabric bag  
**die Stofftüte (n)** cloth bag  
**der Sohn (‘e)** son  
**sollen** to be supposed to (modal verb), should, ought to  
**der Sommer (-)** summer  
**sonderbar** unusual  
**sondern** but rather  
**die Sonne (n)** sun  
**die Sonne scheint** the sun is shining  
**der Sonnenbrand (‘e)** sunburn  
**die Sonnenbrille (n)** sunglasses  
**die Sonnencreme (s)** sunscreen  
**der Sonnenhut (‘e)** sun hat  
**sonnig** sunny  
**der Sonntag (e)** Sunday  
**sonst** otherwise  
**sonst noch etwas?** something else?  
**die Sorge (n)** worry  
**sortieren** to sort  
**die Soße (n)** sauce  
**das Souvenir (e)** souvenir  
**sowieso** anyway, in any case  
**Sozialkunde (no pl.)** Social studies (school subject)  
**Sozialwissenschaft (en)** Social Science (school subject)  
**die Spaghetti (s)** spaghetti  
**Spanien** Spain  
**sparen** to save  
**der Spaß (‘e)** fun  
**... macht Spaß! ... is fun!**  
**spät** late  
**später** later  
**spazieren gehen** to stroll, to go for a walk  
**die Speise (n)** food  
**die Speisekarte (n)** menu  
**das Spezi (s)** cola/lemonade mix  
**die Spezialität (en)** speciality  
**das Spiel (e)** game, match  
**spielen** to play  
**der Spieler (n)** player (male)  
**die Spielerin (nen)** player (female)  
**das Spielfeld (er)** sportsfield, playing field  
**der Spielstand (‘er)** score  
**das Spielzimmer (-)** games room

**die Spinne (n)** spider  
**das Spital (‘er)** hospital  
**spitze!** excellent!, fantastic!  
**der Spitzer (-)** sharpener  
**Sport** Sport, PE (school subject)  
**der Sport** sport  
**Sport treiben** to play sport  
**die Sportabteilung (en)**  
 sports department  
**das Sportfest (e)** sports carnival  
**die Sporthalle (n)** sports hall  
**der Sportlehrer (-)**  
 sports teacher (*male*)  
**die Sportlehrerin (nen)**  
 sports teacher (*female*)  
**sportlich** sporty  
**der Sportstar (s)** sport star  
**der Sporttag (e)** sports day  
**das Sportzeug (no pl.)**  
 sports gear  
**Sprachtipps** speaking tips  
**sprechen\*** to speak, to talk  
**das Sprichwort (‘er)** saying,  
 proverb  
**der Spülbecken (-)** kitchen sink  
**die Spülmaschine** dishwasher  
**die Spülmaschine einräumen/  
 ausräumen** to load/unload  
 the dishwasher  
**der Spürhund (e)** sniffer dog  
**das Stadion (Stadien)** stadium  
**die Stadt (‘e)** city  
**in die Stadt gehen**  
 to go into the city  
**der Städteurlaub (e)**  
 city tourism  
**die Stadtmitte (n)** city centre  
**der Stammtisch (e)** table  
 reserved for regulars  
**ständig** constantly  
**stark** strong  
**staubsaugen** to vacuum  
**staubwischen** to dust  
**steh(t) auf!** get up!  
**stehen\*** to stand; to suit  
**es steht mir** it suits me  
**stellen** to put  
**stell dich / stellt euch ...!**  
 stand ...!  
**stell(t) die Stühle hoch!**  
 put the chairs up!  
**sterben\*** to die  
**der Stern (e)** star  
**der Stiefbruder (‘-)** stepbrother  
**der Stiefel (-)** boot  
**die Stiefmutter (‘-)** stepmother  
**die Stiefschwester (n)** stepsister  
**der Stiefvater (‘-)** stepfather

**der Stift (e)** pencil  
**stimmen** to be correct  
**stimmt!** true!, that’s right!  
**stimmt das?** is that true/  
 right?  
**stimmt so!** keep the change!  
**stimmhaft** voiced  
**stimmlos** unvoiced  
**die Stirn (e)** forehead  
**der Stock (‘e)** floor, storey  
 (of a building)  
**im ersten Stock**  
 on the first floor  
**im zweiten Stock**  
 on the second floor  
**das Stockwerk (e)** floor, storey  
**der Stollen (-)**  
 German Christmas cake  
**der Strand (‘e)** beach  
**am Strand** at the beach  
**die Straße (n)** street  
**die Straße entlang**  
 down the street/road  
**die Straßenbahn (en)** tram  
**der Strauß (en)** ostrich  
**streamen** to stream (music, film,  
 TV show)  
**streicheln** to pat  
**streng** strict  
**der Strohstern (e)** straw star  
**die Struktur** structure  
**die Strumpfhose (n)**  
 (pair of) tights, pantyhose  
**stubenrein** house-trained  
**das Stück (e)** piece  
 (of cake, fruit)  
**der Student (en)** (university)  
 student (*male*)  
**die Studentin (nen)** (university)  
 student (*female*)  
**der Stuhl (‘e)** chair  
**die Stunde (n)** hour  
**der Stundenplan (‘e)** timetable  
**der Stürmer (-)** forward, striker  
 (*male*)  
**der Stürmerin (nen)** forward,  
 striker (*female*)  
**stürmisch** stormy  
**suchen** to look for  
**super** great  
**super toll** awesome  
**der Supermarkt (‘e)**  
 supermarket  
**die Suppe (n)** soup  
**die Tomatensuppe (n)**  
 tomato soup  
**die Zwiebelsuppe (n)**  
 onion soup

**Surfen** surfing  
**surfen** to surf  
**das Sushi** sushi  
**süß** cute, sweet

## T

**die Tablette (n)** tablet  
**die Tafel (n)** (black/white)board  
**der Tag (e)** day  
**tag!** hello!, hi!  
**schönen Tag noch!**  
 have a nice day!  
**das Tagebuch (‘er)** diary  
**taggen** to tag  
**der Talentsucher (-)** talent scout  
 (*male*)  
**die Talentsucherin (nen)**  
 talent scout (*female*)  
**die Tankstelle (n)** petrol station  
**die Tante (n)** aunt  
**tanzen** to dance  
**die Tanzfläche (n)** dance floor  
**die Tasche (n)** bag, pocket  
**der Taschenrechner (-)**  
 calculator  
**die Tasse (n)** cup  
**tatsächlich** in fact  
**die Tatze (n)** paw (of a big cat)  
**tauchen** to dive  
**das Tauchen** diving  
**tauschen** to exchange  
**das Team (s)** team  
**der Teamleiter (-)** team leader  
 (*male*)  
**die Teamleiterin (nen)** team  
 leader (*female*)  
**das Teamspiel (e)** team game  
**Techno** techno music  
**das Technofan** techno fan  
**die Technologie (n)** technology  
**der Teddybär (en)** teddy bear  
**der Tee (s)** tea  
**der Früchtetee (s)** herbal tea,  
 fruit tisane  
**der schwarze Tee (s)** black tea  
**der Teenager (-)** teenager  
**der Teig (e)** dough, batter,  
 pastry  
**teilen** to share  
**das Telefongespräch (e)**  
 telephone call/conversation  
**telefonieren (mit)** to call,  
 to telephone  
**die Telefonnummer (n)**  
 telephone number  
**Tennis** tennis  
**der Test (s)** test

**teuer** expensive  
**der Teufel (-)** devil  
**das Teufelchen (-)** little devil  
**der Text (e)** text (message)  
**texten** to send a text message (SMS)  
**das Theater (-)** theatre  
**das Thema (Themen)** subject, topic  
**das Tier (e)** animal  
**der Tierarzt (‘e)** vet (male)  
**die Tierärztin (nen)** vet (female)  
**das Tierfutter** pet food  
**die Tierhandlung (en)** pet shop  
**das Tierhotel (s)** animal hotel  
**der Tiger (-)** tiger  
**das Tiramisu (s)** tiramisu  
**der Tisch (e)** table, desk  
**der Tischler (-)** carpenter (male)  
**die Tischlerin (nen)** carpenter (female)  
**Tischtennis** table tennis  
**der Toast (s)** toast  
**die Tochter (‘-)** daughter  
**todlangweilig** dead boring  
**todmüde** exhausted  
**todschick** very classy  
**toi, toi, toi!** best of luck!  
**die Toilette (n)** toilet  
**auf die Toilette gehen** to go to the toilet  
**toll** great, super  
**die Tomate (n)** tomato  
**die Tomatensoße (n)** tomato sauce  
**die Tomatensuppe (n)** tomato soup  
**das Top (clothing)** top  
**topfit** in top form  
**das Tor (e)** goal  
**die Torte (n)** torte, gâteau  
**der Torwart (e)** goalkeeper (male)  
**die Torwartin (nen)** goalkeeper (female)  
**tot** dead  
**total** totally  
**total abgefahren** totally sick  
**die Tour (en)** tour  
**der Tourismus** tourism  
**der Tourist (en)** tourist (male)  
**die Touristin (nen)** tourist (female)  
**der Trabant (en)** Trabant (East German car)  
**die Trachten (pl.)** national costumes  
**tragen\*** to wear, to carry  
**trainieren** to train

**das Training (s)** practice, training  
**der Trainingsanzug (‘e)** tracksuit  
**Trance** trance music  
**die Traube (n)** grape  
**die Traumschule (n)** dream school  
**traurig** sad  
**treffen\*** to meet  
**sich treffen (mit)** to meet (with)  
**(viel Sport) treiben\*** to do/play (a lot of sport)  
**trennbar** separable  
**die Treppe (n)** stairs  
**die Tribüne (n)** stand (sports)  
**der Trickfilm (e)** animated film, cartoon  
**das Trikot (s)** (soccer) jersey  
**trinken\*** to drink  
**das Trinkgeld (er)** tip, gratuity  
**trocken** dry  
**die Trompete (n)** trumpet  
**trotzdem** in spite of this/that  
**tschau!** ciao!, so long!, bye!  
**tschüs!, tschüssi!** bye!, see you later!  
**das T-Shirt (s)** T-shirt  
**tunken** to dip  
**die Tür (en)** door  
**die Türkei** Turkey  
**türkisch (adj.)** Turkish  
**turnen** to do gymnastics  
**die Turnhalle (n)** gymnasium  
**der Turnschuh (e)** trainer, sneaker, runner  
**tut mir Leid** I'm sorry!  
**der Typ (en)** type (of person), guy  
**typisch** typical

## U

**die U-bahn (Utergrundbahn) (en)** underground train  
**über** over, above, across  
**überall** everywhere  
**überhaupt** at all  
**übernachten** to stay overnight  
**überraschen** to surprise  
**die Überraschung (en)** surprise  
**überreden** to persuade  
**übersetzen** to translate  
**die Uhr (en)** clock, watch  
**... Uhr** ... o'clock  
**um** in order to, around  
**die Umfrage (n)** survey  
**der Umlaut (e)** umlaut

**die Umwelt (-)** environment  
**umweltbewusst** environmentally aware  
**der Umweltfeind (e)** environmental vandal  
**umweltfeindlich** environmentally unfriendly  
**der Umweltfreund (e)** environmentalist  
**umweltfreundlich** environmentally friendly  
**der Umweltschutz (e)** environmental protection  
**die Umweltverschmutzung (-)** pollution  
**um|ziehen\*** to move house  
**sich um|ziehen\*** to get changed  
**unbedingt** absolutely  
**und** and  
**und du?** and (what about) you?  
**und wie?** how so?  
**unfair** unfair  
**das ist unfair!** that is unfair!  
**der Unfall (‘e)** accident  
**ungefähr** dangerous  
**ungenügend** unsatisfactory  
**ungeschickt** clumsy, uncoordinated  
**unglaublich** unbelievably  
**die Universitätsstadt (‘e)** university city  
**uns** us  
**unser/unsere/unsere** our  
**unten** down there  
**unter** under, below, beneath, among  
**der Unterricht (e)** the lesson  
**unverschämt** disgraceful  
**unwichtig** unimportant  
**der Urlaub (e)** holiday  
**Urlaub machen** to take a holiday  
**die USA (pl.)** the USA

## V

**der Vater (‘-)** father  
**vegetarisch** vegetarian  
**verantwortungsvoll** responsible  
**das Verb (en)** verb  
**verbinden\*** to join  
**verboten** forbidden  
**verbringen\*** to spend (time)  
**verdienen** to earn  
**vergessen\*** to forget  
**vergiss mich nicht!** don't forget me!

**verheiratet** married  
**verkaufen** to buy  
**der Verkäufer (-)** sales assistant  
 (male)  
**die Verkäuferin (nen)** sales  
 assistant (female)  
**verletzt** injured  
**verlieren\*** to lose  
**verloren** lost  
**vermissen** to miss  
 (somebody/something)  
**verrückt nach** crazy about  
**verschieden** different  
**verschmutzt** dirty, polluted  
**verständnis haben für**  
 to have an understanding for  
**verstehen\*** to understand  
**versuchen** to try  
**der Verteidiger (-)** defender  
 (sports, male)  
**der Verteidigerin (nen)** defender  
 (sports, female)  
**vertrauen** to trust  
**verwöhnt** spoiled  
**verzieren** to decorate  
**verzweifeln** to doubt  
**verzweifelt** distressed/  
 distraught  
**das Video (s)** video  
**viel** much, a lot  
**viel Glück!** good luck!  
**viel Spaß!** have fun!  
**viele** many  
**vielen Dank!** thank you!  
**der Vielfraß ("e)** glutton,  
 greedy-guts  
**vielleicht** maybe, perhaps  
**vier** four  
**das Viertel (-)** quarter  
**Viertel nach/vor ...**  
 quarter past/to ...  
**der Vlog (s)** vlog  
**der Vogel ("-) bird**  
**das Vogelfutter** bird food  
**Völkerball** dodgeball  
**die Volksmusik** folk music  
**Volleyball** volleyball  
**von** from, by  
**von wem?** from who?  
**vor** in front of, before  
**vor ...** before ... (the hour)  
**vorbereiten** to prepare  
**der Vormittag (e)** morning  
**der Vorname (n)** first name  
**vorne** to/at the front  
**der Vorort (en)** suburb  
**die Vorschau (en)** preview  
**die Vorspeise (n)** entrée

## W

**waagrecht** horizontal (across)  
**wachsen** to grow  
**der Wagen (-)** car  
**der Wahnsinn** madness  
**wahnsinn!** awesome!  
**wahnsinnig** incredibly  
**während** during  
**der Wald ("er)** forest  
**wandern gehen** to go hiking  
**wann?** when?  
**wann hast du Geburtstag?**  
 when is your birthday?  
**warm** warm  
**warten (auf)** to wait (for)  
**warum?** why?  
**warum denn nicht?** why not?  
**was?** what?  
**was darf es sein?**  
 what would you like?  
**was denn?** what is it?  
**was geht?** what's up?  
**was geht ab?** what's up?  
**was gibt's Neues?**  
 what's new?  
**was ist das?** what is that?  
**was ist denn hier los?**  
 what's going on here?  
**was ist los?** what's up?  
**was ist passiert?**  
 what happened?  
**was kostet/kosten ...?**  
 how much does ... cost?  
**was macht das?**  
 how much is it?  
**was meint ... dazu?**  
 what does ... think about that?  
**waschen\*** to wash  
**die Waschmaschine (n)**  
 washing machine  
**das Waschmittel (-)** detergent  
**das Waschtuch ("er)** wash cloth  
**das Wasser (no pl.)** water  
**das Leitungswasser (-)**  
 tap water  
**das Mineralwasser (-)**  
 mineral water  
**das stilles Wasser** still water  
**Wasserski fahren**  
 to go waterskiing  
**die Website (s)** website  
**das Webstreaming (-)** online/  
 web streaming  
**weg** away  
**der Weg (e)** way  
**weg|bleiben\*** to stay away

**weg|fahren\*** to go away,  
 to drive away  
**weg|fliegen\*** to fly away  
**weg|kommen\*** to come away  
**weg|rennen\*** to run away  
**wehtun** to feel sore, to ache  
**das Weibchen (-)** female animal  
**weich** soft  
**das Weihnachten (no pl.)**  
 Christmas  
**der Weihnachtsbaum ("e)**  
 Christmas tree  
**der Weihnachtsmann ("er)**  
 Santa Claus  
**der Weihnachtsmarkt ("e)**  
 Christmas market  
**das Weihnachtsplätzchen (-)**  
 Christmas biscuit  
**der Weihnachtsschmuck (no pl.)**  
 Christmas ornaments  
**weil** because  
**der Wein (e)** wine  
**weiß** white  
**die Weißwurst ("e)** veal sausage  
**weit** wide, far  
**welche?** which?  
**der Wellensittich (e)** budgerigar,  
 budgie  
**der Wellnessbereich (e)** spa area  
**die Welt (en)** world  
**wenig** less, few, a little,  
 a little bit  
**wenn** if, whenever, when  
**wer?** who?  
**wer ist das?** who is that?  
**die Werbung (Werben)**  
 advertisement  
**Werbung machen** to promote  
**ich werde ...** I will ...  
**ich werde diese Zeit nie**  
**vergessen**  
 I will never forget this time  
**werfen\*** to throw  
**geworfen** to have thrown  
**wetten** to bet  
**das Wetter (-)** weather  
**wichtig** important  
**widerlich** revolting, repulsive  
**wie?** how?  
**wie alt bist du?**  
 how old are you?  
**wie bitte?** pardon?  
**wie geht es Ihnen?**  
 how are you? (formal)  
**wie geht's?, wie geht es dir?**  
 how are you? (informal)  
**wie geht's, wie steht's?**  
 how are you, what's going on?

**wie ist das Wetter?** what is the weather like?  
**wie lange?** how long?  
**wie spät ist es?** what time is it?  
**wie schmeckt's?** how is it?  
**wie viel?** how much?  
**wie viel Uhr ist es?** what's the time?  
**wie viele?** how many?  
**wie wär's ...?** how was ...?  
**wie waren die Ferien?** how were the holidays?  
**wie witzig!** how funny!  
**wieder** again  
**wiederholen** to repeat  
**Wiedersehen!** bye!  
**Wien** Vienna  
**der Wiener Schnitzel (-)** (crumbed) schnitzel  
**der Wievielte ist heute?** what date is it today?  
**das Wildschwein (e)** wild boar  
**willkommen!** welcome!  
**windig** windy  
**der Winter (-)** winter  
**die Winterkleidung** winter clothes  
**die Winterreise (n)** winter holiday  
**der Wintersport (e)** winter sports  
**der Wintersportort (e)** winter sports resort  
**wir** we  
**wirklich** really  
**wissen\*** to know  
**wo?** where?  
**wo warst du?** where were you?  
**wo wohnen wir?** where do we live?  
**die Woche (n)** week  
**das Wochenende (n)** weekend  
**schönes Wochenende!** have nice weekend!  
**der Wochentag (e)** day of the week, weekday  
**woher?** where from?  
**woher kommst du?** where are you from?  
**wohl** well  
**der Wohnblock (s)** block of flats/apartments  
**wohnen** to live  
**die Wohngemeinschaft (en)** shared accommodation group

**die Wohnung (en)** apartment, flat  
**der Wohnwagen (-)** caravan  
**das Wohnzimmer (-)** living room  
**der Wolf (‘e)** wolf  
**wolkig** cloudy  
**wollen\*** to want (to) (modal verb)  
**der Wolpertinger (-)** mythical German animal  
**das Wort (‘er)** word  
**die Wortstellung (en)** word order  
**der Wortschatz (‘e)** vocabulary  
**die Wortsuche (n)** word search  
**das Wunder (-)** wonder  
**wunderbar** wonderful  
**wünschen** to wish  
**die Wunschliste (n)** wish list  
**die Wurst (‘e)** sausage  
**die Wurstsorte (n)** type of sausage

## Z

**die Zahl (en)** number  
**zahlen, bitte!** the bill, please!  
**der Zahn (‘e)** tooth  
**die Zahnsperre (n)** braces (teeth)  
**das Zebra (s)** zebra  
**der Zeh (en)** toe  
**zehn** ten  
**zeig's ihnen!** show them!  
**die Zeit (en)** time  
**der Zeitglockenturm (‘e)** clock tower  
**die Zeitung (en)** newspaper  
**der Zettel (-)** piece of paper  
**das Zeugnis (se)** report card (school)  
**ziehen\*** to pull  
**ziemlich** quite, rather  
**das Zimmer (-)** room  
**die Zitrone (n)** lemon  
**die Zone (n)** zone  
**der Zoo (s)** zoo  
**die Zoohandlung (en)** pet shop  
**zu** at, to, too, towards  
**zu Fuß** on foot  
**zu Hause** at home  
**zu lange** too long  
**zubereiten** to prepare something  
**der Zucker** sugar  
**die Zuckermandel (n)** sugar almond  
**zuerst** first (of all)

**der Zug (‘e)** train  
**zuhören** to listen to (a sports match)  
**der Zuhörer (-)** listener (to sports match) (male)  
**die Zukunft** future  
**zumachen** to close  
**zum** to the  
**zum Beispiel** for example  
**zum ersten Mal** for the first time  
**zum Training** to (sport) training  
**zum Donnerwetter! damn it!**  
**der Zungenbrecher (-)** tongue-twister  
**zur** to the  
**zur Schule** to the school  
**zurückkommen\*** to return, to come back  
**zusammen** together  
**zuschauen** to watch (a sports match)  
**der Zuschauer (-)** spectator (male)  
**die Zuschauerin (nen)** spectator (female)  
**zusehen\*** to watch  
**zutraulich** trusting  
**zwanzig** twenty  
**zwei** two  
**zweite** second  
**die zweite Straße links/rechts** the second street on the left/right  
**Zweiter Weihnachtstag** Boxing Day  
**die Zwiebel (n)** onion  
**die Zwiebelsuppe (n)** onion soup  
**zwischen** between  
**zwölf** twelve

# ENGLISCH-DEUTSCH WORTSCHATZ

## A

a, an **ein** (*masc.*), **eine** (*fem.*),  
**ein** (*neut.*), **einen** (*masc.*)  
a lot **viel**  
to be able to **können\***  
about **etwa**  
about that **darüber**  
above **über**  
absolutely **unbedingt**  
accident **der Unfall** (‘e)  
accommodation (shared group)  
**die Wohngemeinschaft** (en)  
accountant  
**der Buchhalter** (-) (*male*),  
**die Buchhalterin** (nen) (*female*)  
accusative (case)  
**der Akkusativ** (e)  
ache **der Schmerz** (en)  
to have an earache  
**Ohrenschmerzen haben**  
to have a headache  
**Kopfschmerzen haben**  
to have a tummy ache  
**Bauchschmerzen haben**  
to ache **wehtun\***  
to achieve **schaffen**  
across **gegenüber, über**  
active **aktiv**  
actor **der Schauspieler** (-)  
(*male*), **die Schauspielerin** (nen)  
(*female*)  
actually **tatsächlich**  
address **die Adresse** (n)  
address book  
**das Adressbuch** (‘er)  
Advent **der Advent** (e)  
Advent calendar **der**  
**Adventskalender** (-)  
adverb **das Adverb** (ien)  
advertisement **die Anzeige** (n),  
**die Werbung** (Werben)  
aeroplane **das Flugzeug** (e)  
to be afraid (of)  
**Angst haben** (vor)  
after (time) **nach**  
after that **danach**  
afternoon **der Nachmittag** (e)  
in the afternoon **nachmittags**  
on Wednesday afternoon  
**am Mittwochnachmittag**

afterwards **nachher**  
again **wieder**  
against **gegen**  
aggressive **aggressiv**  
air **die Luft** (‘e)  
airport **der Flughafen** (‘-)  
air travel **die Luftfahrt** (en)  
alcohol **der Alkohol** (e)  
all **alle, alles**  
all the best **alles Gute!**  
to allow **erlauben**  
allowed **erlaubt**  
not allowed **nicht erlaubt**  
to be allowed to **dürfen\***  
almost **fast, knapp**  
alone **selbst, (von) allein**  
along **entlang**  
alpine horn **das Alpenhorn** (‘er)  
alpine pasture (s) **die Alm** (en)  
the Alps **die Alpen**  
already **gleich, schon**  
all right! **na gut!**  
also **auch**  
although **obwohl**  
always **immer**  
amazing **herrlich**  
American **amerikanisch**  
among **unter**  
and **und**  
and (what about) you?  
**und du?**  
angel **der Engel** (-)  
little angel **das Engelchen** (-)  
angry **böse, sauer**  
animal **das Tier** (e),  
(*male*) **das Männchen** (-),  
(*female*) **das Weibchen** (-)  
animal hotel **das Tierhotel** (s)  
animated film **der Trickfilm** (e)  
annoyed **sauer**  
answer **die Antwort** (en)  
to answer **antworten,**  
**beantworten**  
antelope **die Gazelle** (n)  
anyway **sowieso**  
apartment **die Wohnung**(en)  
apartments (block of)  
**der Wohnblock** (s)  
apology **die Entschuldigung** (en)

## Abbreviations used:

*adj.* – adjective  
*adv.* – adverb  
*fem.* – feminine  
*masc.* – masculine  
*neut.* – neuter  
*pl.* – plural  
*sing.* – singular  
\* – irregular verb  
(see verb table on page 223)

apparently (not) **anscheinend**  
**(nicht)**  
to appeal to **es gefällt mir**  
appetite **der Hunger**  
apple **der Apfel** (‘-)  
apple cake **der Apfelkuchen** (-)  
apple juice **der Apfelsaft** (‘e)  
apple spritzer  
**die Apfelschorle** (n)  
apple strudel  
**der Apfelstrudel** (-)  
to apply for ... **sich bewerben\*** um ...  
apprenticeship **die Ausbildung** (en),  
**die Lehre** (n)  
April **der April**  
architect **der Architekt** (en) (*male*),  
**die Architektin** (nen) (*female*)  
are you coming too? (do you want  
to come?) **kommt ihr mit?**  
Argentina **Argentinien**  
arm **der Arm** (e)  
around **um**  
to arrive **an|kommen\***  
Art (school subject) **Kunst**  
art gallery **das Kunstmuseum** (en),  
**die Galerie** (n)  
as **als, denn**  
as ... as **genauso**  
as well **auch**  
Asian **asiatisch**  
to ask **fragen**  
assembly hall **die Aula** (Aulen)  
at **auf, bei, zu, an**  
at a glance **auf einen Blick**  
at all **überhaupt**  
at home **zu Hause**  
at ... o'clock **um ... Uhr**  
at our place **bei uns**  
at your place **bei dir**  
at the front **vorne**  
at once **gleich**  
atmosphere **die Atmosphäre** (-)  
to pay attention **aufpassen**  
attic **der Dachboden** (‘-)  
attractive **attraktiv**  
au pair **das Au-pair** (s)  
August **der August**  
aunt **die Tante** (n)  
Australia **Australien**

Australian **australisch** (*adj.*);  
**der Australier (-),**  
**die Australierin (nen)**  
Australian Rules football  
**australischer Fußball**  
Austria **Österreich**  
autumn **der Herbst (e)**  
away **weg**  
awesome **super toll**  
awesome! **wahnsinn!**

## B

baby **das Baby (s)**  
to babysit **babysitten**  
back **der Rücken (-)**  
at the back **hinten**  
backpack **der Rucksack (‘e)**  
backpacking trip  
**die Rucksackreise (n)**  
bad **schlecht**  
badminton **Badminton**  
bag **die Tasche (n)**  
to bake **backen\***  
bakery **die Bäckerei (en)**  
balcony **der Balkon(s)**  
ball **der Ball (‘e)**  
ballet dancer  
**er Balletttänzer (-) (male),**  
**die Balletttänzerin (nen) (female)**  
balloon **der Luftballon (s)**  
banana **die Banane (n)**  
banana juice  
**der Bananensaft (‘e)**  
band rehearsal **die Bandprobe (n)**  
bank **die Bank (en)**  
barbecue **die Grillparty (s)**  
to barbecue **grillen**  
bargain **das Schnäppchen (-)**  
basket **der Korb (‘e)**  
basketball **Basketball**  
basketball training  
**das Basketballtraining**  
bathing suit **der Badeanzug (‘e)**  
bathroom **das Badezimmer (-)**  
batter **der Teig (e)**  
bauble **die Kugel (n)**  
Bavarian (dialect) **bay(e)risch**  
to be **sein\***  
to be able to **können\***  
to be afraid (of) **Angst haben (vor)**  
to be allowed to **dürfen\***  
beach **der Strand (‘e)**  
at the beach **am Strand**  
beak **der Schnabel (‘)**  
bean **die Bohne (n)**  
bean stew **der Bohneneintopf (‘e)**

beanie **die Mütze (n)**  
bear **der Bär (en)**  
beautiful **schön**  
because **denn, weil**  
bed **das Bett (en)**  
bedroom **das Schlafzimmer (-)**  
child’s bedroom  
**das Kinderzimmer (-)**  
beer **das Bier (e)**  
beer mug **der Bierkrug (‘e)**  
bee sting cake (*German cake*)  
**der Bienenstich (e)**  
before **bevor, vor**  
before (the hour) **vor ...**  
to begin **anfangen\*, beginnen\***  
beginner **der Anfänger (-)**  
beginning **der Anfang (‘e)**  
behind **hinten, hinter**  
belated **nachträglich**  
Belgium **Belgien**  
to believe **glauben**  
below **unter**  
beneath **unter**  
beside **neben**  
besides **außerdem**  
... the best ... **am besten,**  
... **am liebsten**  
(their) best **(ihr) bestes**  
best of luck! **toi, toi, toi!**  
best wishes **Glückwünsche,**  
**herzliche Grüße, beste Grüße**  
to bet **wetten**  
better **besser**  
better than **besser als**  
between **zwischen**  
beverage **das Getränk (e)**  
bicycle helmet  
**der Fahrradhelm (e)**  
to bid **bieten**  
big **groß**  
too big **zu groß**  
big appetite **der Bärenhunger**  
bicycle, bike **das Fahrrad (‘er)**  
bike-riding **das Radfahren**  
bikini **der Bikini (s)**  
bill **die Rechnung (en)**  
the bill, please! **zahlen, bitte!**  
biography **die Biographie (n)**  
Biology **Biologie (Bio)**  
bird **der Vogel (‘e)**  
bird food **das Vogelfutter**  
birthday **der Geburtstag (e)**  
best wishes on/all the best for  
your birthday! **alles Gute zum**  
**Geburtstag!**  
happy birthday! **herzlichen**  
**Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!**

much love on your birthday!  
**alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!**  
birthday boy/girl  
**das Geburtstagskind (er)**  
birthday cake  
**der Geburtstagskuchen (-)**  
birthday party  
**die Geburtstagsparty (s)**  
birthday present  
**das Geburtstagsgeschenk (e)**  
biscuits **das Gebäck (e),**  
**die Plätzchen (-)**  
a bit **ein bisschen**  
to bite **beißen\***  
black **schwarz**  
black tea **der schwarze Tee (s)**  
blackforest (cherry) cake **die**  
**Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte (n)**  
(black/white)board **die Tafel (n)**  
blackmail **die Erpressung (en)**  
bless you! **Gesundheit!**  
blog **der Blog (s)**  
blouse **die Bluse (n)**  
blue **blau**  
boat **das Boot (e)**  
boat trip **die Schifffahrt (en)**  
body part **das Körperteil (e)**  
Bolivia **Bolivien**  
bon appetit! **guten Appetit!**  
book **das Buch (‘er)**  
book department  
**die Buchabteilung (en)**  
bookshop  
**die Buchhandlung (en)**  
boomerang **der Bumerang (‘e)**  
boot **der Stiefel (-)**  
boring **langweilig**  
dead boring **todlangweilig**  
boss **der Chef (s) (male),**  
**die Chefin (nen) (female)**  
both **beide**  
bottle **die Flasche (n)**  
boxing **das Boxen**  
Boxing Day **der Zweiter**  
**Weihnachtstag**  
boy **der Junge (n)**  
boys **die Jungs**  
braces (for teeth)  
**die Zahnsperre (n)**  
Brandenburg Gate  
**das Brandenburger Tor**  
bratwurst sausage  
**die Bratwurst (‘e)**  
bratwurst with curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (‘e)**  
Brazil **Brasilien**  
bread **das Brot (e)**  
bread roll **das Brötchen (-)**

breakfast **das Frühstück (e)**  
 to have breakfast **frühstücken**  
 brave **mutig**  
 bridge **die Brücke (n)**  
 brilliant **glänzend**  
 to bring **bringen**  
 to bring along **mit|bringen**  
 I'm bringing ... **ich bringe ... mit**  
 broken **kaputt, gebrochen**  
 brother **der Bruder (")**  
 brothers and sisters **die Geschwister (pl.)**  
 brown **braun**  
 to have brunch **brunchen**  
 budgeterig, budgie **der Wellensittich (e)**  
 to build **bauen**  
 bunk beds **das Doppelstockbett (en), das Etagenbett (en)**  
 bus **der Bus (se)**  
 by bus **mit dem Bus**  
 on the bus **im Bus**  
 bus driver **der Busfahrer (-) (male), die Busfahrerin (nen) (female)**  
 business **das Geschäft (e)**  
 but **aber**  
 but yes! **doch!**  
 but of course! **aber sicher!**  
 but rather **sondern**  
 butcher shop **die Fleischerei (en), die Metzgerei (en)**  
 butter **die Butter**  
 button **der Knopf (")**  
 to buy **kaufen**  
 by **von, mit, bis, durch**  
 bye! **servus! (southern Germany and Austria), tschau!, tschüs!, tschüssi!, Wiedersehen!**

## C

café **das Café (s)**  
 at/in the café **im Café**  
 cage **der Käfig (e)**  
 cake **der Kuchen (-), die Torte (n)**  
 cake shop **die Konditorei (en)**  
 calculator **der Taschenrechner (-)**  
 calendar **der Kalender (-)**  
 to call **rufen\*, (on the phone) an|rufen\*, telefonieren**  
 to be called **heißen\***  
 can (modal verb) **können\***  
 can I help you? **ja, bitte?, bitte schön?**  
 Canada **Kanada**

canary **der Kanarienvogel (")**  
 candle **die Kerze (n)**  
 can't wait!  
**da bin ich ja gespannt!, ich bin schon gespannt!**  
 cap **die Mütze (n)**  
 car **das Auto (s), der Wagen (-)**  
 car mechanic **der Automechaniker (-) (male), die Automechanikerin (nen) (female)**  
 caravan **der Wohnwagen (-)**  
 (greeting) card **die Karte (n)**  
 carnival **Karneval**  
 carnival costume **das Karnevalskostüm (e)**  
 carpenter **der Tischler (-) (male), die Tischlerin (nen) (female)**  
 carrot **die Karotte (n), die Möhre (n)**  
 to carry **tragen\***  
 cartoon **der Trickfilm (e)**  
 cash **bar**  
 cash register **die Kasse (n)**  
 castle **die Burg (en), die Festung (en), das Schloss (")**  
 cat **die Katze (n), (male) der Kater (-)**  
 cat food **das Katzenfutter (-)**  
 catch it straight away!  
**fang sie sofort!**  
 to celebrate **feiern**  
 celebration **das Fest (e)**  
 cellar **der Keller (-)**  
 cent **der Cent (s)**  
 certainly **sicher**  
 chair **der Stuhl (")**  
 to get changed **sich um|ziehen\***  
 to chat **chatten**  
 cheap **billig**  
 checked (pattern) **kariert**  
 checklist **die Checkliste (n)**  
 cheeky **frech**  
 cheers! **prost!**  
 cheese **der Käse (-)**  
 cheese fondue **das Käsefondue (s)**  
 cheese sandwich **das Käsebrot (e)**  
 cheesecake **der Käsekuchen (-)**  
 cheetah **der Gepard (en)**  
 chef **der Koch (e) (male), die Köchin (nen) (female)**  
 Chemistry **Chemie**  
 cherry **die Kirsche (n)**  
 cherry juice **der Kirschsafte (")**  
 chess **das Schach (no pl.)**  
 to play chess **Schach spielen**

chic **schick**  
 chicken **das Hähnchen (-), das Huhn (")**  
 child **das Kind (er)**  
 good with children **kinderlieb**  
 Chile **Chile**  
 chilly **kühl**  
 chin **das Kinn (e)**  
 chinchilla **das Chinchilla (s)**  
 Chinese (language) **das Chinesisch**  
 chocolate **die Schokolade (no pl.), (individual) die Praline (n)**  
 chocolate cake **der Schokoladekuchen (-)**  
 chocolate mousse **die Mousse au Chocolat (-)**  
 choir **der Chor (")**  
 choir members **die Chorleute (pl.)**  
 choir rehearsal **die Chorprobe (n)**  
 to choose **aus|suchen**  
 Christmas **das Weihnachten (no pl.)**  
 merry Christmas!  
**frohe Weihnachten!**  
 (German) Christmas cake **der Stollen (-)**  
 Christmas Day **(der Erster) Weihnachtstag**  
 Christmas Eve **der Heiligabend, der Heilige Abend**  
 Christmas market **der Weihnachtsmarkt (")**  
 Christmas ornament **der Weihnachtsschmuck**  
 Christmas stocking **der Nikolausstiefel (-)**  
 Christmas tree **der Weihnachtsbaum (")**  
 Christmas wreath **der Adventskranz (")**  
 church **die Kirche (n)**  
 ciao! **tschau!**  
 cinema **das Kino (s)**  
 in/to the cinema **ins Kino**  
 city **die Stadt (")**  
 into the city **in die Stadt**  
 large/big city **die Großstadt (")**  
 small town **die Kleinstadt (")**  
 university city **die Universitätsstadt (")**  
 city centre **die Stadtmitte (n)**  
 city tourism **der Städteurlaub (e)**  
 clarinet **die Klarinette (n)**  
 class **die Klasse (n)**  
 class activity **die Klassenaktivität (-)**  
 class party **das Klassenfest (e)**

class photo **das Klassenfoto (s)**  
class project **das Klassenprojekt (e)**  
class teacher **der Klassenlehrer (-) (male),  
die Klassenlehrerin (nen) (female)**  
class test **die Klassenarbeit (en)**  
class trip/excursion **die Klassenfahrt (en)**  
classical music **klassische Musik**  
classmate **der Klassenkamerad**  
classroom **das Klassenzimmer (-)**  
classy **todsick**  
claw **die Kralle (n), die Klaue (n)**  
clean **sauber**  
to clean **putzen, sauber machen**  
clean the board!  
**mach(t) die Tafel sauber!**  
to clean up **aufräumen**  
to clean out (cupboard)  
**aus|räumen**  
cleaning lady **die Putzfrau (en)**  
cleaning product **das Putzmittel (-)**  
clear **klar**  
clever **klug**  
clock **die Uhr (en)**  
clock tower **der Zeitglockenturm (‘e)**  
to close **zumachen**  
close the door!  
**mach(t) die Tür zu!**  
close your books!  
**macht eure Bücher zu!**  
cloth bag **die Stofftüte**  
clothes **die Klamotten (pl.)  
(colloquial), die Kleidung (en),  
die Kleider**  
cloudy **wolkig**  
it is cloudy **es ist wolkig**  
clumsy **ungeschickt**  
coach **der Coach (es)**  
coat **der Mantel (‘-)**  
cocoa **der Kakao (s)**  
code **der Kode (s)**  
coffee **der Kaffee (s)**  
cola **die Cola (s)**  
cola/lemonade mix **das Spezi (s)**  
cold (temperature) **kalt**  
it is cold **es ist kalt**  
cold (illness) **die Erkältung**  
to catch a cold **sich erkälten**  
to have a cold **erkältet sein**  
to collect **ein|sammeln**  
colour **die Farbe (n)**  
coloured pencil **der Buntstift (e)**

colourful **bunt**  
combination **die Kombination (en)**  
to come **kommen\***  
come on! **komm!, na, los!**  
come on in!  
**na, komm mal rein!**  
come to the board!  
**komm(t) an die Tafel!**  
to come for a visit **auf Besuch kommen**  
to come (along) too, to come with  
**mit|kommen\***  
I’m coming along!  
**ich komme mit!**  
to come away **weg|kommen\***  
to come back **zurück|kommen\***  
comfortable **bequem**  
comma **das Komma (s)**  
to comment **kommentieren**  
commentary **der Kommentar (e)**  
commentator **der Kommentator (en) (male),  
die Kommentatorin (nen) (female)**  
community garden/allotment **der Schrebergarten (‘-)**  
company **die Firma (Firmen)**  
complete **ganz**  
to complete **ergänzen, erledigen**  
complicated **kompliziert**  
compost heap **der Komposthaufen (-)**  
compromise **der Kompromiss (e)**  
computer **der Computer (-)**  
computer game **das Computerspiel (e)**  
to concentrate (*reflexive verb*)  
**sich konzentrieren**  
to concentrate on  
**sich konzentrieren auf**  
I am concentrating  
**ich konzentriere mich**  
concert **das Konzert (e)**  
congratulations **der Glückwunsch (‘e)**  
congratulations! **gratuliere!,  
herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
constantly **ständig**  
conversation **das Gespräch (e)**  
cook **kochen**  
cookbook **das Kochbuch (‘e)**  
cool **cool, geil, kühl**  
it is cool (weather) **es ist kühl**  
coordinated **geschickt**  
to concentrate **sich konzentrieren**  
corn on the cob **der Maiskolben (-)**

corner **die Ecke (n)**  
correct **richtig**  
to be correct **stimmen**  
corridor **der Flur (en)**  
to cost **kosten**  
cosy **gemütlich**  
country **das Land (‘er)**  
in the country **auf dem Land**  
country music **die Countrymusik**  
cousin **der Cousin (s) (male),  
die Cousine (n) (female)**  
cow **die Kuh (‘e)**  
cow bell **die Kuhglocke (n)**  
coworker **die Mitarbeiter (-)**  
crab **der Krebs (e)**  
craft **das Handwerk**  
crap! **so ein Mist!**  
crazy about **verrückt nach**  
cream **die Sahne (pl.), (whipped)  
das Schlagobers (-) (Austria)**  
credit card **die Kreditkarte (n)**  
cricket **Kricket**  
crocodile **das Krokodil (e)**  
cross your fingers!  
**drück die Daumen!**  
crossword puzzle **das Kreuzworträtsel (-)**  
crutches **die Krücke (n)**  
cuckoo clock **die Kuckucksuhr (en)**  
cuddly **kuschelig, knuddelig**  
cup **die Tasse (n)**  
cupboard **der Schrank (‘e)**  
curry sauce **die Currysoße (n)**  
customer **der Kunde (n)**  
to cut **schneiden\***  
cute **niedlich, süß**

## D

dad **der Papa (s)**  
daddy **der Papi (s)**  
damn it! **zum Donnerwetter!**  
to dance **tanzen**  
dance floor **die Tanzfläche (n)**  
dance music **Dance**  
danger **die Gefahr (en)**  
dangerous **gefährlich**  
dark **dunkel**  
dark blue **dunkelblau**  
darling **der Schatz**  
date **das Datum (Daten)**  
daughter **die Tochter (‘-)**  
day **der Tag (e)** have a nice day!  
**schönen Tag noch!**  
days of the week **die Wochentage**

dead **tot**  
 dear **liebe, lieber**  
     dear Anna **liebe Anna**  
     dear Christian  
     **lieber Christian**  
 December **der Dezember**  
 to decide on ...  
     **sich entscheiden\*** für  
 decoration **die Dekoration (en)**  
 to decorate **verzieren**  
 deer **das Reh (e)**  
 defender (sports)  
     **der Verteidiger (-)** (*male*),  
     **der Verteidigerin (nen)** (*female*)  
 definitely **bestimmt**  
 definitely! **klar!**  
 degree (temperature)  
     **der Grad (e)**  
 delicious **lecker**  
 denim jacket **die Jeansjacke (n)**  
 to depart **ab|fahren\***  
 department **die Abteilung (en)**  
     book department  
     **die Buchabteilung (en)**  
     food department  
     **die Lebensmittelabteilung (en)**  
     men's department  
     **die Herrenabteilung (en)**  
     sports department  
     **die Sportabteilung (en)**  
     women's department  
     **die Damenabteilung (en)**  
 department store  
     **das Kaufhaus ('er)**  
 shopping in the department store  
     **im Kaufhaus einkaufen**  
 to describe **beschreiben\***  
 designer **der Designer (-)** (*male*),  
     **die Designerin (nen)** (*female*)  
 desk **der Schreibtisch (e),**  
     **der Tisch (e)**  
 despite **obwohl**  
 dessert **die Nachspeise (n),**  
     **der Nachtisch (e)**  
 detergent **das Waschmittel (-)**  
 devil **der Teufel (-)**  
 little devil **das Teufelchen (-)**  
 dialogue **der Dialog (e)**  
 diary **das Tagebuch ('er)**  
 to die **sterben\***  
 different **anders, verschieden**  
 difficult **schwierig**  
 digital **digital**  
 dingo **der Dingo (s)**  
 dining room **das Esszimmer (-)**  
 dining table **der Esstisch (e)**  
 dinner **das Abendessen (-)**  
 to dip **tunken**

directly **direkt**  
 dirndl **das Dirndlkleid (er)**  
 dirty **schmutzig, verschmutzt**  
 disappointed **enttäuscht**  
 disgraceful **unverschämt**  
 disgusting **ekelhaft, eklig**  
 dish **das Gericht (e)**  
 dishwasher **die Spülmaschine**  
     to load/unload the dishwasher  
     **die Spülmaschine ein|räumen/**  
     **aus|räumen**  
 to dislike doing (something)  
     **nicht gern machen**  
     I dislike singing  
     **ich singe nicht gern**  
 distressed/distraught  
     **verzweifelt**  
 to dive **tauchen**  
 diving **das Tauchen**  
 divorced **geschieden**  
 DJ **der DJ (s)**  
 to do **machen, tun\***  
 doctor **der Arzt ('e)** (*male*),  
     **die Ärztin (nen)** (*female*)  
 dodgeball **Völkerball**  
 does that taste good?  
     **schmeckt's?**  
 dog **der Hund (e), (female)**  
     **die Hündin (nen)**  
 doggy **das Hündchen (-)**  
 dog lovers  
     **die Hundefreunde (pl.)**  
 dog droppings  
     **der Hundehaufen (-)**  
 doner kebab  
     **der Döner Kebab (s)**  
 donkey **der Esel (-)**  
 don't panic! **keine Panik!**  
 door **die Tür (en)**  
 to doubt **verzweifeln**  
 dough **der Teig (e)**  
 (jam-filled) doughnut  
     **der Berliner (-)**  
 down **hinab, entlang**  
     down the street/road  
     **die Straße entlang**  
 down there **unten**  
 download voucher  
     **der Download-Gutschein (e)**  
 dream school  
     **die Traumschule (n)**  
 dress **das Kleid (er)**  
 to get dressed **sich an|ziehen\***  
 drink **das Getränk (e)**  
 to drink **trinken\***  
 to drive **fahren\***  
 to drive away **wegfahren\***  
 to drive with **mit|fahren\***

drug **die Droge (n)**  
 drug store **die Drogerie (n)**  
 drums **das Schlagzeug (e)**  
 dry **trocken**  
 to dry (the dishes) **ab|trocknen**  
 duck **die Ente (n)**  
 dumb **blöd**  
 during **während**  
 to dust **staubwischen**  
 to be dying to **gespannt sein**

## E

each other **einander**  
 eagle **der Adler (-)**  
 ear **das Ohr (en)**  
 earache **die Ohrenschmerzen**  
 to have an earache  
     **Ohrenschmerzen haben**  
 earring **der Ohrring (e)**  
 early **früh**  
 to earn **verdienen**  
 earth **die Erde (n)**  
 Easter **das Ostern**  
     happy Easter! **frohe Ostern!**  
     Easter bunny **der Osterhase (n)**  
     Easter Sunday  
     **der Ostersonntag**  
 easy/easily **einfach, leicht**  
 to eat **essen\*** (*used only for*  
     *humans*), **fressen\*** (*used only*  
     *for animals*)  
 eek! **iiiihh!**  
 egg **das Ei (er)**  
 eight **acht**  
 elbow **der Ellbogen (-)**  
 electrician  
     **der Elektriker (-)** (*male*),  
     **die Elektrikerin (nen)** (*female*)  
 elephant **der Elefant (en)**  
 eleven **elf**  
 elf **der Elf (en)**  
 else **anders**  
 email **die E-Mail (s), die Mail (s)**  
     to send an email **mailen**  
 empty **leer**  
 emu **der Emu (s)**  
 end **das Ende (s)**  
 end of school certificate  
     **das Abitur (en)**  
 energetic **aktiv**  
 energy **die Energie (n)**  
 engineer **der Ingenieur (e)** (*male*),  
     **die Ingenieurin (nen)** (*female*)  
 English (language) **Englisch**  
 to enjoy **genießen\***  
 enjoy your meal! **guten Appetit!,**  
     (*formal*) **Mahlzeit!**

entrée **die Vorspeise (n)**  
 environment **die Umwelt (-)**  
 environmental protection  
**der Umweltschutz (e)**  
 environmental vandal  
**der Umweltfeind (e)**  
 environmentalist  
**der Umweltfreund (e)**  
 environmentally aware  
**umweltbewusst**  
 environmentally friendly  
**umweltfreundlich**  
 environmentally unfriendly  
**umweltfeindlich**  
 episode **die Episode (n)**  
 equal **gleich**  
 eraser **der Radiergummi (s)**  
 escalator **die Rolltreppe (n)**  
 especially **besonders**  
 euro (currency) **der Euro (s)**  
 European **europäisch**  
 even **sogar**  
 even though **obwohl**  
 evening **der Abend (e)**  
   on Thursday evening  
**am Donnerstagsabend**  
   this evening (tonight)  
**heute Abend**  
 every **jede**  
 everybody **alle**  
 everything **alles**  
 everywhere **überall**  
 exactly **genau, haargenau**  
   exactly! **genau!, ganz genau!**  
 examination **die Prüfung (en)**  
 exams (final) **das Abitur (en)**  
 excellent **genial, ausgezeichnet**  
   excellent! **genial!, spitze!**  
 except (for) **außer**  
 exchange **der Austausch (e)**  
 to exchange **tauschen**  
 exchange partner  
**der Austauschpartner (-) (male),**  
**die Austauschpartnerin (nen)**  
*(female)*  
 exchange student  
**der Austauschschüler (-) (male),**  
**die Austauschschülerin (nen)**  
*(female)*  
 excited **gespannt**  
 excursion **der Ausflug (‘e),**  
**die Klassenfahrt (en)**  
 excuse **die Entschuldigung (en)**  
   excuse me! **Entschuldigung!,**  
**entschuldigen Sie (mich)!**  
*(formal)*  
 exercise book **das Heft (e)**  
 exhausted **kaputt, todmüde**

expensive **teuer**  
 to experiment **experimentieren**  
 to explain **erklären**  
 explanation **die Erklärung (en)**  
 expression **der Ausdruck (‘e)**  
 extensive **ausgedehnt**  
 extreme sports  
**der Extremsport (e)**  
 eye **das Auge (n)**

## F

fabric bag **die Stofftasche (n)**  
 face **das Gesicht (er)**  
 faint **ohnmächtig**  
 fair **fair**  
 falcon **der Falke (n)**  
 to fall **fallen\***  
 to fall asleep **einschlafen\***  
 false **falsch**  
 family **die Familie (n)**  
   family photo  
**das Familienfoto (s)**  
 family tree  
**das Familienstammbaum (‘e)**  
 famous **berühmt**  
 fan (sports) **der Fan (s)**  
 fantastic **fantastisch, spitze**  
   fantastic! **spitze!**  
 far **weit**  
 farewell **der Abschied (e)**  
 farewell card  
**die Abschiedskarte (n)**  
 farm **der Bauernhof (‘e)**  
 fashion parade  
**die Modenschau (en)**  
 fast **schnell**  
 fast food **das Fastfood (-)**  
 fast-food restaurant  
**das Schnellrestaurant (s)**  
 father **der Vater (‘-)**  
 favourite **Liebungs-**  
 favourite book  
**der Lieblingsbuch (‘er)**  
 favourite cake  
**der Lieblingskuchen (-)**  
 favourite colour  
**die Lieblingsfarbe (n)**  
 favourite day  
**der Lieblingstag (e)**  
 favourite meal  
**das Lieblingsessen (-)**  
 favourite subject  
**das Lieblingsfach (‘er)**  
 favourite team **die**  
**Lieblingsmannschaft (n)**  
 fear **die Angst (‘e)**  
 feather **die Feder (n)**

February **der Februar**  
 to feed (animals) **füttern**  
 to feel **fühlen**  
 to feel sore **wehtun**  
 feminine **das Femininum**  
 ferry **die Fähre (n)**  
 few **wenig**  
 a few of **ein paar**  
 to fill **füllen**  
 film **der Film (e)**  
 film star **der Filmstar (s)**  
 fin **die Flosse (n)**  
 final exams **das Abitur**  
 final whistle **der Schlusspfeiff (e)**  
 finally **endlich**  
 to find **finden\***  
 fine (weather) **schön**  
   it is fine **es ist schön**  
 finger **der Finger (-)**  
 finished **fertig**  
 fireworks **die Raketen (pl.)**  
 firm **die Firma (Firmen)**  
 first **erst, erstmal**  
 first (of all) **zuerst**  
 the first **der/die Erste**  
 first floor **das Erdgeschoss (e)**  
   on the first floor  
**im ersten Stock**  
 first name **der Vorname (n)**  
 fit **fit**  
 fish **der Fisch (e)**  
 fish food **das Fischfutter**  
 to fit **passen, es passt ihm**  
 fitness trainer  
**der Fitnesstrainer (-) (male),**  
**die Fitnesstrainerin (nen) (female)**  
 five **fünf**  
 flat tyre **der Platten (-)**  
 flat (apartment) **die Wohnung(en)**  
 flats (block of) **der Wohnblock (s)**  
 flexible **flexibel**  
 flight **der Flug (‘e)**  
 flight attendant  
**der Flugbegleiter (-) (male),**  
**die Flugbegleiterin (nen) (female)**  
 floor (of a building) **der Stock (‘e),**  
**das Stockwerk (e)**  
 floral (pattern) **geblümt**  
 flower **die Blume (n)**  
 flown away **weggeflogen**  
 flu **die Grippe**  
 fluffy **flauschig**  
 flute **die Flöte (n)**  
 to fly **fliegen\***  
 focus **der Fokus (se)**  
 foggy **neblig**  
 to fold **falten**

folk music **die Volksmusik**  
 to follow **folgen**  
 to be fond of (someone)  
**(jemanden) lieb haben**  
 food **das Essen** (*no pl.*),  
**die Speise** (n)  
 food department  
**die Lebensmittelabteilung** (en)  
 foot **der Fuß** (‘e)  
 on foot **zu Fuß**  
 football/soccer training  
**das Fußballtraining** (s)  
 for **für, denn, seit**  
 for example **zum Beispiel**  
 for me **für mich**  
 forbidden **verboten**  
 forehead **die Stirn** (e)  
 foreign language  
**die Fremdsprache** (n)  
 to forget **vergessen\***  
 don't forget me!  
**vergiss mich nicht!**  
 forest **der Wald** (‘er)  
 fortress **die Festung** (en)  
 forward (sports player)  
**der Stürmer** (-) (*male*),  
**die Stürmerin** (nen) (*female*)  
 foul (sports) **das Foul** (s)  
 four **vier**  
 France **Frankreich**  
 frankfurter (sausage)  
**das Frankfurter Würstchen**  
 free **frei**  
 free kick **der Freistoß** (‘e)  
 free time **die Freizeit** (en)  
 freeway/motorway  
**die Autobahn** (e)  
 to freeze **frieren**  
 freezing cold **bitterkalt**  
 French (language) **Französisch**  
 french fries **die Pommes** (*pl.*)  
 french fries with tomato sauce  
 and mayonnaise **die Pommes**  
**rot-weiß**  
 fresh **frisch**  
 Friday **der Freitag** (e)  
 fridge **der Kühlschrank** (‘e)  
 fried **gebraten**  
 friend **der Freund** (e) (*male*),  
**die Freundin** (nen) (*female*)  
 friendly **freundlich**  
 friendship book  
**das Poesiealbum** (-alben)  
 frog **der Frosch** (‘e)  
 from **aus, von**  
 from (... euro) **ab** (€ ...)  
 from Melbourne  
**aus Melbourne**

from Switzerland  
**aus der Schweiz**  
 in front of **vor**  
 at/to the front **vorne**  
 frozen peas  
**die gefrorenen Erbsen**  
 fruit **die Frucht** (‘e),  
**das Obst** (*no pl.*)  
 fruit salad **der Obstsalat** (e)  
 full (of food) **satt**  
 fun **der Spaß** (‘e)  
 have fun! **viel Spaß!**  
 ... is fun! **... macht Spaß!**  
 funny **lustig**  
 how funny! **wie witzig!**  
 fur **das Fell** (e)  
 furnishings  
**die Inneneinrichtung** (en)  
 future **die Zukunft**

## G

game **das Spiel** (e)  
 games room **das Spielzimmer** (-)  
 garage **die Garage** (n)  
 garden **der Garten** (‘-)  
 community garden/allotment  
**der Schrebergarten** (‘-)  
 garden salad **der Gartensalat** (e)  
 gardener **der Gärtner** (-) (*male*),  
**die Gärtnerin** (nen) (*female*)  
 gateau **die Torte** (n)  
 gee! **Mensch!**  
 gee, I'm exhausted!  
**Mensch, bin ich kaputt!**  
 generally **hauptsächlich**  
 geography **die Geographie**  
 Geography (school subject)  
**Erdkunde**  
 German (language) **Deutsch**  
 German class  
**die Deutschklasse** (n)  
 German jelly baby  
**das Gummibärchen** (-)  
 German Soccer Federation  
**Deutscher Fußballbund** (DFB)  
 German-speaking  
**deutschsprachig**  
 Germany **Deutschland**  
 get well soon! **gute Besserung!**  
 to get **holen**  
 to get off/out **aus|steigen\***  
 to get up **auf|stehen\***  
 get up! **steht auf!**  
 ... gets on my nerves!  
**... geht mir auf die Nerven!**  
 gingerbread **der Lebkuchen** (-)

gingerbread heart  
**das Lebkuchenherz** (en)  
 girl **das Mädchen** (-)  
 giraffe **die Giraffe** (n)  
 to give **geben\***  
 give me **gib mir**  
 gladly **gern**  
 glass **das Glas** (‘er)  
 glasses (spectacles) **die Brille** (n)  
 glove **der Handschuh** (e)  
 glue **der Klebstoff** (e)  
 glutton **der Vielfraß** (‘e)  
 to go (*on foot*) **gehen\***,  
 (*by car, train, etc.*) **fahren\***  
 to go away **weg|fahren\***  
 to go out **aus|gehen\***  
 to go with **mit|fahren\***  
 go away! **hau ab!**  
 goal **das Tor** (e)  
 goalkeeper **der Torwart** (e) (*male*),  
**die Torwartin** (nen) (*female*)  
 goggles **die Skibrille** (n)  
 goldfish **der Goldfisch** (e)  
 golf **Golf**  
 good **gut, schön**  
 good idea! **gute Idee!**  
 good luck! **viel Glück!**,  
**Hals- und Beinbruch!**  
 good morning! **guten Morgen!**  
 good with children **kinderlieb**  
 good work! **gute Arbeit!**  
 goodbye! **auf Wiedersehen!**  
 grade (mark) **die Note** (n)  
 grandchild **das Enkelkind** (er)  
 grandfather **der Großvater** (‘-)  
 grandma (granny) **die Oma** (s),  
**die Omi** (s)  
 grandmother **die Großmutter** (‘-)  
 grandpa **der Opa** (s), **der Opi** (s)  
 grandparents **die Großeltern** (*pl.*)  
 grape **die Traube** (n)  
 grapefruit **die Pampelmuse** (n)  
 grass **das Gras** (‘er)  
 great **klasse, prima, super, toll,**  
**herrlich**  
 that would be great!  
**das wäre toll!**  
 Greece **Griechenland**  
 greedy-guts **der Vielfraß** (‘e)  
 Greek (language) **Griechisch**  
 green **grün**  
 greeting **der Gruß** (‘e)  
 greeting card **die Karte** (n)  
 grey **grau**  
 to groan **stöhnen**  
 groceries **die Lebensmittel** (*pl.*)  
 ground floor **das Erdgeschoss** (-)

group photo **das Gruppenfoto (s)**  
 to grow **wachsen**  
 to guess **raten**  
 (have a) guess what this/that is!  
**rate mal, was das ist!**  
 group work **die Gruppenarbeit**  
 guest **der Gast (‘e)**  
 guesthouse **das Gästehaus (‘er)**  
 guinea pig  
**das Meerschweinchen (-)**  
 guitar **die Gitarre (n)**  
 gummy bear (German jelly baby)  
**das Gummibärchen (-)**  
 guy **der Typ (en)**  
 guys (informal) **die Jungs**  
 gymnasium **die Turnhalle (n)**  
 to do gymnastics **turnen**

## H

hairdresser **der Friseur (e) (male),  
 die Friseurin (nen) (female)**  
 half **halb**  
 half past three **halb vier**  
 half-brother **der Halbbruder (‘-)**  
 half-sister **die Halbschwester (n)**  
 hallway **der Flur (en)**  
 ham **der Schinken (-)**  
 ham sandwich  
**das Schinkenbrot (e)**  
 ham sausage **die Krakauer,  
 die Schinkenwurst (‘e)**  
 hamburger **der Hamburger (-)**  
 hamster **der Hamster (-)**  
 hand **die Hand (‘e)**  
 (European) handball **Handball**  
 handball training  
**das Handballtraining**  
 happy birthday! **herzlichen  
 Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!**  
 happy Easter! **frohe Ostern!**  
 happy new year! **gutes neues  
 Jahr und einen guten Rutsch!,  
 prosit Neujahr!**  
 hardly **kaum**  
 hare **der Hase (n)**  
 harmless **harmlos**  
 hat **der Hut (‘e), die Mütze (n)**  
 to have **haben\***  
 have some! **probier doch mal!**  
 have a nice day!  
**schönen Tag noch!**  
 have a nice weekend!  
**schönes Wochenende!**  
 to have (in a restaurant)  
**nehmen\***  
 to have to (modal verb) **müssen\***  
 hay **das Heu**

hay fever **der Heuschnupfen**  
 he **er**  
 head **der Kopf (‘e)**  
 headache **der Kopfschmerz (en)**  
 to have a headache  
**Kopfschmerzen haben**  
 healthy **gesund**  
 to hear **hören**  
 heart **das Herz (en)**  
 heater **die Heizung (en)**  
 heaven **der Himmel (-)**  
 heavy **schwer**  
 heavy goods vehicle/truck  
**der LKW (Lastkraftwagen) (-)**  
 heavy metal (music)  
**Heavymetal**  
 hell **die Hölle (n)**  
 hello! **guten Tag!, grüß dich!**  
 (informal), **grüß Gott!** (southern  
 Germany and Austria), **hallo!,  
 moin!** (northern Germany),  
**servus!** (southern Germany and  
 Austria), **Tag!**  
 helmet **der Helm (e)**  
 bicycle helmet  
**der Fahrradhelm (e)**  
 skateboard helmet  
**der Skateboardhelm (e)**  
 help **die Hilfe (no pl.)**  
 to help **helfen\*, mit|helfen\***  
 her **sie; ihr/ihre/ihren**  
 herbal tea, fruit tisane  
**der Fruchttetee (s)**  
 here **hier**  
 here you are! **bitte schön!**  
 hey **he, Mensch, na**  
 hey, you two! **he, ihr Zwei!**  
 hi! **hi!, Morgen!, Tag!**  
 high **hoch**  
 high school  
 (general) **die Hauptschule (n),  
 (intermediate) die Realschule (n),  
 (advanced) das Gymnasium  
 (Gymnasien), die Gesamtschule  
 (n) (comprehensive)**  
 to hike **wandern gehen\*,  
 wandern**  
 him **ihm, ihn**  
 Hip-Hop (music) **hip hop**  
 hippopotamus **das Nilpferd (e)**  
 History (school subject)  
**Geschichte**  
 his **sein/seine/seinen**  
 hit parade **die Hitparade (n)**  
 hockey **Hockey**  
 holiday **der Feiertag (e),  
 der Urlaub (e)**  
 to take a holiday  
**Urlaub machen**

holiday apartment  
**die Ferienwohnung (en)**  
 holiday job **der Ferienjob (s)**  
 holidays **die Ferien (pl.)**  
 home **das Heim (e)**  
 at home **zu Hause**  
 (to go) home **nach Hause  
 (gehen)**  
 to be homesick **Heimweh haben**  
 homesickness **das Heimweh**  
 homework **die Hausaufgabe (n)**  
 homey **gemütlich**  
 honey **der Honig (e)**  
 hoof **der Huf (e)**  
 hooray! **hurra!**  
 to hope **hoffen**  
 hopefully **hoffentlich**  
 horizontal (across) **waagrecht**  
 horn **das Horn (‘er)**  
 horse **das Pferd (e)**  
 hospital **das Krankenhaus (‘er),  
 das Spital (‘er)**  
 host family **die Gastfamilie (n)**  
 hot **heiß**  
 it is hot **es ist heiß**  
 hot chips **die Pommes (pl.)**  
 hot chocolate **der Kakao (s),  
 die heiße Schokolade (n)**  
 hour **die Stunde (n)**  
 house **das Haus (‘er)**  
 household **der Haushalt (e)**  
 house-trained **stubenrein**  
 housework **die Hausarbeit (en)**  
 how? **wie?**  
 how are you?  
**wie geht’s? (informal),  
 wie geht es dir? (informal),  
 wie geht es Ihnen? (formal)**  
 how does it taste?  
**(wie) schmeckt’s?**  
 how funny! **wie witzig!**  
 how is it? **wie schmeckt’s?**  
 how long? **wie lange?**  
 how many? **wie viele?**  
 how much? **wie viel?**  
 how much does ... cost?  
**was kostet/kosten ... ?**  
 how much is it?  
**was macht das?**  
 how old are you?  
**wie alt bist du? (informal)**  
 how so? **und wie denn?**  
 how was ... ? **wie war ... ?**  
 hundred **hundert**  
 hunger **der Hunger**  
 to be hungry **Hunger haben**  
 hurry up! **mach(t) schnell!,  
 nun aber los!**

husband **der Ehemann** (‘er)  
my/her husband **mein/ihr Mann**

## I

I **ich**  
I am ... years old  
**ich bin ... Jahre alt**  
I am called ... **ich heiße ...**  
I am good **mir geht’s gut**  
I am finished **Ich bin fertig**  
I am looking forward to ...  
**ich freue mich auf ...**  
I am sorry! **es tut mir Leid!,  
Entschuldigung!**  
I can ... **ich kann ...**  
I can’t wait **ich bin schon  
gespannt, da bin ich ja  
gespannt**  
I come from ...  
**ich komme aus ...**  
I do ... **ich mache ...**  
I do though! **ich aber schon!**  
I don’t! **ich nicht!**  
I don’t care **mir egal**  
I don’t know **ich weiß (es) nicht**  
I feel ... **mir geht’s ...**  
I feel unwell **mir ist schlecht**  
I go ... **ich gehe ...**  
I have to go! **ich muss los!**  
I play ... **ich spiele ...**  
I see! **ach so!**  
ice hockey **Eishockey**  
ice-cold **eisgekühlt**  
ice-cream **das Eis (-)**  
to ice-skate **Schlittschuh  
fahren\*/laufen\***  
ice-skating  
**das Schlittschuhfahren/-laufen**  
idea **die Ahnung (en),  
die Idee (n)**  
good idea! **gute Idee!**  
no idea! **keine Ahnung!**  
ideal **ideal**  
identity card  
**der Personalausweis (e),  
der Ausweis (e)**  
if **wenn, ob**  
immediately **gleich**  
important **wichtig**  
in **auf, in, im**  
in and around the house  
**im und um Haus**  
in any case **sowieso**  
in comparison **im Vergleich**  
in fashion **im Trend**  
in German **auf Deutsch**

in German class  
**im Deutschunterricht**  
in the schoolyard  
**auf dem Schulhof**  
in fact **tatsächlich**  
in moderation **in Maßen**  
in order to **um**  
in spite of this/that **trotzdem**  
in vast quantities **in Massen**  
in the **im**  
in the/one’s arms **im Arm**  
in the choir **im Chor**  
in the folder **im Ordner**  
in the/one’s hand **in der Hand**  
in the middle **in der Mitte**  
incorrect **falsch**  
incredibly **wahnsinnig**  
Indonesian (language)  
**Indonesisch**  
to inform **informieren**  
information  
**die Information (en)**  
Information Technology (IT)  
**(school subject) Informatik**  
ingenious! **genial!**  
inhabitant  
**der Einwohner (-) (male),  
die Einwohnerin (nen) (female)**  
injured **verletzt**  
inner city **die Innenstadt (‘e)**  
insect **das Insekt (en)**  
instrument **das Instrument (e)**  
intelligent **intelligent**  
to be interested in  
**sich interessieren für**  
interesting **interessant**  
international **international**  
internet **das Internet (no pl.)**  
interview **das Interview (s)**  
to interview **interviewen**  
invited **eingeladen**  
invitation **die Einladung (en)**  
to iron **bügeln**  
is **ist (from sein\*)**  
isn’t it? **ne?**  
isn’t that/it so? **oder?**  
isn’t that true? **stimmt das?,  
nicht wahr?**  
island **die Insel (n)**  
Israel **Israel**  
it **es, ihm, ihn/sie/es**  
it tastes good! **das schmeckt!**  
it is ... **es ist ...**  
it is cold **es ist kalt**  
it is cool **es ist kühl**  
it is cloudy **es ist wolkig**  
it is fine **es ist schön**  
it is hot **es ist heiß**

it is raining **es regnet**  
it is snowing **es schneit**  
it is stormy **es ist stürmisch**  
it is sunny **es ist sonnig**  
it is warm **es ist warm**  
it is windy **es ist windig**  
Italian (*adj.*) **italienisch**  
Italian (language) **Italienisch**  
Italy **Italien**  
item **die Sache (n)**  
its **sein/seine/seinen (masc.)**  
itself **(von) allein**

## J

jaguar **der Jaguar (e)**  
jacket **die Jacke (n)**  
jam **die Marmelade (n),  
die Konfitüre (n)**  
January **der Januar**  
Japanese (*adj.*) **japanisch**  
Japanese (language) **Japanisch**  
Jazz (music) **Jazz**  
jeans **die Jeans (pl.)**  
jeans/denim jacket  
**die Jeansjacke (n)**  
(German) jelly baby  
**das Gummibärchen (-)**  
jersey (soccer) **das Trikot (s)**  
(baby) Jesus **das Christkind**  
job **der Job (s) (informal)**  
holiday job **der Ferienjob (s)**  
part-time job **der Nebenjob (s)**  
to jog **joggen**  
jogging **Joggen**  
to join **verbinden\***  
to join in **mitmachen**  
journalist  
**der Journalist (en) (male),  
die Journalistin (nen) (female)**  
journey **die Fahrt (-)**  
judo **Judo**  
juice **der Saft (‘e)**  
July **der Juli**  
jumper **der Pulli (s),  
der Pullover (-)**  
June **der Juni**  
just **erst, gleich, eben**  
just a moment! **Moment mal!**  
just my type! **genau mein Typ!**

## K

kangaroo **das Känguru (s)**  
karate **Karate**  
keep the change! **stimmt so!**  
ketchup **der Ketchup**

kind **lieb**  
 kind regards **liebe Grüße, mit freundlichen Grüßen**  
 kind (sort, type) **die Art (en)**  
 kindergarten  
**der Kindergarten** (‘-)  
 kiss **der Kuß (Küsse)**  
 to kiss **küssen**  
 kitchen **die Küche (n)**  
 kitchen sink **der Spülbecken (-)**  
 kitten **das Kätzchen (-)**  
 knee **das Knie (-)**  
 to know **kennen\*, wissen\***  
 koala **der Koala (s)**

## L

lake **der See (n)**  
 lamp **die Lampe (n)**  
 to land **landen**  
 large **groß**  
 too large **zu groß**  
 last **letzt**  
 the last **der/die Letzte**  
 late **spät**  
 later **später**  
 later on **nachträglich**  
 Latin (language) **Latein**  
 lawn **der Rasen (-)**  
 lawyer **der Anwalt (‘e) (male), die Anwältin (nen) (female)**  
 lazy **faul**  
 leg **das Bein (e)**  
 leopard **der Leopard (n)**  
 to learn **lernen**  
 learning tips **Lerntipps**  
 leather jacket **die Lederjacke (n)**  
 Lebanese **libanesisch**  
 lederhosen **die Lederhose (n)**  
 left **links**  
 on the left-hand side  
**auf der linken Seite**  
 left-wing player  
**der Linksaußen (-)**  
 lemon **die Zitrone (n)**  
 lemonade **die Limonade (n), die Limo (s) (abbreviation)**  
 less **wenig**  
 lesson **der Unterricht (e)**  
 let's go! **na, los!, nun aber los!**  
 let's go in! **gehen wir mal rein!**  
 let's see **das wollen wir doch mal sehen**  
 letter **der Brief (e)**  
 lettuce **der Salat (e)**  
 Liechtenstein **Liechtenstein**  
 light **das Licht (er)**

light (adj.) **hell**  
 light blue **hellblau**  
 to have lightning **blitzen**  
 there is thunder and lightning  
**es donnert und blitzt**  
 to like **mögen\***  
 I like chocolate  
**ich mag Schokolade**  
 I would like to eat chocolate  
**ich möchte Schokolade essen**  
 to 'like' (online)  **liken**  
 to like doing (something)  
**gern machen**  
 I like to sing ...  
**Ich singe gern ...**  
 likewise! **gleichfalls!**  
 lion **der Löwe (n)**  
 lip **die Lippe (n)**  
 liquor  
**der Schnaps/Schnapps (en)**  
 list **die Liste (n)**  
 to listen in **reinhören**  
 to listen to **hören**  
 listen! **hör mal/zu!**  
 I listen to music  
**Ich höre Musik**  
 to listen to (a sports match)  
**zuhören**  
 listener (of sports match) (male)  
**der Zuhörer (-)**  
 litre **das Liter (-)**  
 little **klein**  
 too little **zu klein**  
 a little **ein bisschen, wenig**  
 to live **wohnen**  
 liverwurst **die Leberwurst (‘e)**  
 living room  
**das Wohnzimmer (-)**  
 to look (like) **aussehen\***  
 (have a) look! **guck(t) mal!**  
 to look after **aufpassen**  
 to look for **suchen**  
 to look forward to  
**sich freuen, gespannt sein**  
 I look forward to ...  
**Ich freue mich auf ...**  
 long **lang**  
 to lose **verlieren\***  
 lost **verloren**  
 loud **laut**  
 to love **lieben**  
 lovely **schön**  
 luck **das Glück**  
 best of luck! **toi, toi, toi!**  
 lucky **glücklich**  
 to be lucky **Glück/Schwein haben**  
 lucky beggar **der Glückspilz**

luggage **das Gepäck (no pl.)**  
 lunch **das Mittagessen (-)**  
 to have lunch **lunchen**  
 Luxembourg **Luxemburg**

## M

mad **böse**  
 made/did **gemacht**  
 madness **der Wahnsinn**  
 magazine **das Magazin (e)**  
 mail **die Post**  
 main course  
**das Hauptgericht (e)**  
 mainly **hauptsächlich**  
 to make **machen, (crafts) basteln**  
 to make use of **gebrauch machen**  
 to put on make-up  
**sich schminken**  
 malt beer (non-alcoholic)  
**das Malzbier (e)**  
 man **der Herr (en), der Mann (‘er)**  
 man! **Mann!**  
 oh man! **oh Mann!**  
 to manage **schaffen**  
 manager **der Chef (s) (male), die Chefin (nen) (female)**  
 many **viele**  
 map **die Karte (n)**  
 marble cake  
**der Marmorkuchen (n)**  
 marble cake (German style)  
**der Guglhupf (e)**  
 March **der März**  
 marine biologist  
**der Meeresbiologe (n) (male), die Meeresbiologin (nen) (female)**  
 mark (grade) **die Note (n)**  
 to mark **markieren**  
 market **der Markt (‘e)**  
 marketplace **der Marktplatz (‘e)**  
 married **verheiratet**  
 masculine **das Maskulinum**  
 match (sports) **das Spiel (e)**  
 materials **das Material (ien)**  
 Maths **Mathe(matik)**  
 May **der Mai**  
 may **dürfen\***  
 may I ...? **darf ich ...?**  
 maybe **vielleicht**  
 mayonnaise **die Majonäse**  
 maypole **der Maibaum (‘e)**  
 me **mich, mir**  
 me too **ich auch**  
 meal **das Essen (no pl.)**

enjoy your meal! **guten Appetit!**, (*formal*) **Mahlzeit!**  
 mean **gemein**  
 meat **das Fleisch** (*no pl.*)  
 medication **das Medikament** (e)  
 meerkat **das Erdmännchen** (-)  
 to meet **(sich) treffen\***  
 to meet with **sich treffen\*** mit  
 melted **geschmolzen**  
 men's department  
**die Herrenabteilung** (en)  
 menu **die Speisekarte** (n)  
 merry Christmas!  
**frohe Weihnachten!**  
 metre **der Meter** (-)  
 Mexican **mexikanisch**  
 midday **der Mittag** (e)  
 middle **die Mitte** (n)  
 midfielder  
**der Mittelfeldspieler** (-) (*male*),  
**die Mittelfeldspielerin** (nen)  
 (*female*)  
 midnight **die Mitternacht** (‘e)  
 milk **die Milch** (e)  
 million **die Million** (en)  
 mineral water  
**das Mineralwasser** (-)  
 minus **minus**  
 minute **die Minute** (n)  
 miserable **unglücklich**,  
**miserabel**  
 to miss (somebody/something)  
**vermissen**  
 Miss ... **Frau ...**  
 Miss! **Frau!**  
 missing **fehlend**  
 mobile phone **das Handy** (s)  
 mobile phone number  
**die Handynummer** (n)  
 modal verb **das Modalverb** (en)  
 in moderation **in Maßen**  
 modern **modern**  
 Monday **der Montag** (e)  
 money pouch **der Geldbeutel** (-)  
 month **der Monat** (e)  
 moped **das Mofa** (s) (‘e)  
 more **mehr**  
 morning **der Morgen** (-),  
**der Vormittag** (e)  
 morning! **Morgen!**  
 in the morning **morgens**  
 on Tuesday morning  
**am Dienstagmorgen**  
 yesterday morning  
**gestern Morgen**  
 the most **am meisten**  
 ... the most **... am liebsten**

most of the time, mostly  
**meistens**  
 motor sports **der Motorsport** (e)  
 motorbike **das Motorrad** (‘er)  
 mountain **der Berg** (e)  
 in the mountains **in den Bergen**  
 mother **die Mutter** (‘-)  
 mouse **die Maus** (‘e)  
 little mouse **das Mäuschen** (-)  
 mouth **der Mund** (‘er)  
 to move house **um|ziehen\***  
 movie **der Film** (e)  
 to the movies **ins Kino**  
 to mow **mähen**  
 Mr ... **Herr ...**  
 Mrs ..., Ms ... **Frau ...**  
 much **viel**  
 muesli **das Müsli** (s)  
 multicoloured **bunt**  
 multicultural **multikulturell**  
 mum, mummy **die Mama** (s),  
**die Mami** (s)  
 Munich **München**  
 muscly **durchtrainiert**  
 museum **das Museum** (Museen)  
 music **die Musik** (en)  
 Music (school subject) **Musik**  
 music shop  
**das Musikgeschäft** (e)  
 must (*modal verb*) **müssen\***  
 mustard **der Senf** (e)  
 my **mein/meine/meinen**  
 my birthday is on ...  
**mein Geburtstag ist am ...**  
 my name is ... **ich bin ...**  
 myself **mich**

## N

name **der Name** (n)  
 to narrate **erzählen**  
 national costumes  
**die Trachten** (*pl.*)  
 (German) national soccer league  
**die Bundesliga** (Bundesligen)  
 naturally **natürlich**  
 nature **die Natur** (*no pl.*)  
 nearby **bei, nahegelegen**  
 nearly **fast**  
 neck **der Hals** (‘e)  
 necklace **die Halskette** (n)  
 to need **brauchen**  
 needed **gebraucht**  
 nephew **der Neffe** (n)  
 netball **Korball**  
 the Netherlands  
**die Niederlande**

never **nie, nimmer**  
 never again **nimmermehr**  
 neuter (case) **das Neutrum**  
 new **neu**  
 newspaper **die Zeitung** (en)  
 New Year's Eve **Silvester**  
 New Zealand **Neuseeland**  
 next to **neben**  
 next to each other  
**nebeneinander**  
 nice **lieb, nett, schön**  
 niece **die Nichte** (-n)  
 night **die Nacht** (‘e)  
 nightclub **der Club** (s)  
 night-life **das Nachtleben** (-)  
 nine **neun**  
 no **nein**  
 no, not any (*indefinite article*)  
**kein/keine/keinen**  
 no idea! **keine Ahnung!**  
 no problem! **kein Problem!**  
 noise **der Krach** (‘e)  
 noodle **die Nudel** (n)  
 Norway **Norwegen**  
 nose **die Nase** (n)  
 not **nicht**  
 not allowed/permitted  
**nicht erlaubt**  
 no (not any) longer **nicht mehr**  
 not me! **ich nicht!**  
 not necessarily  
**nicht unbedingt**  
 not so good **nicht so gut**  
 not yet **noch nicht**  
 note **die Notiz** (en)  
 notepad **der Notizblock** (‘e)  
 nothing **nichts**  
 nothing! **gar nichts!**  
 nothing much  
**nichts Besonderes**  
 notice (in newspaper)  
**die Anzeige** (n)  
 noticeboard **das schwarze** (n)  
**Brett** (er)  
 noun **das Nomen** (-)  
 novel **der Roman** (e)  
 November **der November**  
 now **jetzt, gleich, nun**  
 number **die Nummer** (n),  
**die Zahl** (en)  
 nurse  
**der Krankenpfleger** (-) (*male*),  
**die Krankenpflegerin** (nen)  
 (*female*)  
 nutcracker **der Nussknacker** (-)

**O**

occupation **der Beruf (e)**  
 ocean **der Ozean (e), die See (n), das Meer (e)**  
 ... o'clock **... Uhr**  
 October **der Oktober**  
 of course! **ja, klar!**  
 to offer **bieten\***  
 office **das Büro (s)**  
 offside **das Abseits (-)**  
 often **oft**  
 oh! **ach!, oh!**  
   oh dear! **oh weh!, ach du Schreck!, oh weia!**  
   oh my god! **oh Gott!**  
   oh no! **so ein Mist!**  
 oh, there you are!  
   **ach, da seid ihr ja!**  
 OK **O.K., in Ordnung**  
 Oktoberfest **das Oktoberfest (e)**  
 old **alt**  
 old-fashioned **altmodisch**  
 Olympic Games  
   **die Olympischen Spiele**  
 on **am, auf, im**  
   on the computer  
   **am Computer**  
   on television **im Fernsehen**  
   on the internet **im Internet**  
   on this page/side  
   **auf diese Seite**  
 on top of **auf**  
 once again **noch einmal**  
 one (I) **man**  
 one (number) **eins**  
 one (indefinite article)  
   **ein/eine/einen**  
 one another **einander**  
 onion **die Zwiebel (n)**  
 onion soup  
   **die Zwiebelsuppe (n)**  
 online/web streaming  
   **das Webstreaming (-)**  
 only **nur**  
 only child **das Einzelkind (er)**  
 onto **an, auf**  
 opal **der Opal (e)**  
 open **offen**  
 to open **aufmachen**  
   open the door!  
   **mach(t) die Tür auf!**  
   open your books!  
   **macht eure Bücher auf!**  
 opening time (shop)  
   **die Öffnungszeiten (en)**  
 opposite **das Gegenteil (e), gegenüber**

opposite to ...  
**gegenüber von ...**  
 opposite the train station  
**gegenüber von dem (vom) Bahnhof**  
 opposite the church  
**gegenüber von der Kirche**  
 opposite the museum  
**gegenüber vom Museum**  
 or **oder**  
 orange (colour) **orange**  
 orange (fruit) **die Orange (n)**  
 orange juice **der Orangensaft ("e)**  
 organic shop **der Bioladen ("), der Biomarkt ("e)**  
 to organise **organisieren**  
 ostrich **der Strauß (en)**  
 other **ander**  
 otherwise **sonst**  
 otter **der Otter (-)**  
 ouch! **autsch!**  
 ought to **sollen**  
 our **unser/unsere/unsere**  
 to go out **ausgehen\***  
 out of **aus**  
 out of control **außer Kontrolle**  
 out of the house **aus dem Haus**  
 outside **draußen**  
 over **über**  
 over that **darüber**  
 over there **da drüben**  
 overcast **wolkig**  
 owl **die Eule (n)**  
 own **eigen/eigene**  
 oxygen tank  
   **die Sauerstoffflasche (n)**

**P**

to pack **ein|packen**  
 to pack away **ein|räumen**  
 page **die Seite (n)**  
 pain **der Schmerz (en)**  
 pair **das Paar (e)**  
 pale **blass**  
 palm **die Palme (n)**  
 don't panic! **keine Panik!**  
 panther **der Panther (-)**  
 pants **die Hose (n)**  
 pantyhose **die Strumpfhose (n)**  
 paper **das Papier**  
 paradise **das Paradies (e)**  
 Paraguay **Paraguay**  
 pardon? **wie bitte?**  
 parents **die Eltern (pl.)**  
 park **der Park (s)**  
 to park **parken**

parrot **der Papagei (en)**  
 to participate **mit|machen**  
 part-time job **der Nebenjob (s)**  
 partner **der Partner (-) (male), die Partnerin (nen) (female)**  
 party **die Party (s)**  
   to a party **zu einer Party**  
 passport **der Reisepass ("e)**  
 past (the hour) **nach**  
   twenty past four  
   **zwanzig nach vier**  
 past ... **an ... vorbei**  
   past the train station  
   **an dem Bahnhof vorbei**  
   past the church  
   **an der Kirche vorbei**  
   past the museum  
   **an dem Museum vorbei**  
 pasta **die Nudel (n)**  
 pasta salad **der Nudelsalat (e)**  
 pastry **der Teig (e)**  
 to pat **streicheln**  
 pattern **das Muster (-)**  
 paw **die Pfote (n), die Tatze (n)**  
   (of a big cat)  
 to pay **bezahlen**  
 to pay attention **aufpassen**  
   pay attention! **pass(t) auf!**  
   pay attention, please!  
   **aufpassen, bitte!**  
 PE **Sport**  
 peas **die Erbsen**  
 frozen peas  
   **die gefrorenen Erbsen**  
 in peace **in Ruhe**  
 pear **die Birne (n)**  
 pedestrian precinct  
   **die Fußgängerzone (n)**  
 peer pressure  
   **der Gruppenzwang ("e)**  
 (ballpoint) pen **der Kuli (s)**  
 (coloured) pencil  
   **der Buntstift (e)**  
 (grey-lead) pencil  
   **der Bleistift (e), der Stift (e)**  
 pencil case **das Mäppchen (-)**  
 pencil sharpener **der Spitzer (-)**  
 people **die Leute (pl.)**  
 pepper **der Pfeffer**  
 per **pro**  
   per piece **pro Stück**  
 perfect **perfekt**  
 perfume **das Parfüm (s)**  
 perhaps **vielleicht**  
 to permit **erlauben**  
   permitted **erlaubt**  
 not permitted **nicht erlaubt**  
 person **die Person (en)**

to persuade **überreden**  
 pet **das Haustier (e)**  
 pet food **das Futter (-),  
 das Tierfutter**  
 pet name **der Haustiernamen (n)**  
 pet owner **das Herrchen (-)  
 (male), das Frauchen (-) (female)**  
 pet shop **die Tierhandlung (en),  
 die Zoohandlung (en)**  
 petrol station **die Tankstelle (n)**  
 pharmacy **die Apotheke (n)**  
 to phone **an|rufen\***  
 photo **das Foto (s)**  
   group photo  
   **das Gruppenfoto (s)**  
 photo album **das Fotoalbum  
 (Fotoalben)**  
 photographer **der Fotograf (en)  
 (male), die Fotografin (nen)  
 (female)**  
 to photograph **fotografieren**  
 physics **Physik**  
 piano **das Klavier (e)**  
 to pick up **ab|holen**  
 picture **das Bild (er)**  
   to take a picture **fotografieren**  
 piece (of cake, fruit)  
   **das Stück (e)**  
 piece of paper **der Zettel (-)**  
 pied piper **der Rattenfänger**  
 pig **das Schwein (e)**  
 pilot **der Pilot (en) (male),  
 die Pilotin (nen) (female)**  
 pink **rosa**  
 pitch (sports) **der Rasen (-)**  
 pizza **die Pizza (s)**  
 pizza parlour **die Pizzeria (en)**  
 place **der Platz (er)**  
 to plan **planen**  
 plant **die Pflanze (n)**  
 plastic bag **die Plastiktüte (n)**  
 to play **spielen**  
   to play a lot of sport  
   **viel Sport treiben\***  
   I like to play ...  
   **ich spiele gern ...**  
 player **der Spieler (-) (male),  
 die Spielerin (nen) (female)**  
 please **bitte**  
 pleased to meet you! **freut mich,  
 euch kennenzulernen!**  
 to be pleasing to **gefallen\***  
 plumber **der Klempner (-) (male),  
 die Klempnerin (-) (female)**  
 plural **Plural**  
 plus **plus**  
 pocket **die Tasche (n)**  
 poem **das Gedicht (e)**

poisonous **giftig**  
 Poland **Polen**  
 police **die Polizei (no pl.)**  
 police officer  
   **der Polizist (en) (male),  
 die Polizistin (nen) (female)**  
 police station **die Polizei (-)**  
 polluted **schmutzig,  
 verschmutzt**  
 pollution  
   **die Umweltverschmutzung (-)**  
 poodle **der Pudel (-)**  
 pop (grandfather) **der Opi (s)**  
 pop music **die Popmusik**  
 popular **beliebt, populär**  
 poppy seed cake  
   **der Mohnkuchen (-)**  
 pork sausage  
   **die Fleischwurst (er)**  
 portion **die Portion (en)**  
 to post (on the internet) **posten**  
 post (mail/office) **die Post (no pl.)**  
 postcard **die Postkarte (n)**  
 poster **das Poster (s)**  
 potato **die Kartoffel (n)**  
 potato cake  
   **der Kartoffelpuffer (-)**  
 potato salad  
   **der Kartoffelsalat (e)**  
 practice **das Training (s)**  
 to practise **trainieren**  
 to prepare **vorbereiten**  
 to prepare something **zubereiten**  
 preposition **die Präposition (en)**  
 present **das Geschenk (e)**  
 to present **präsentieren**  
 pretzel **die Brezel (n)**  
 preview **die Vorschau (en)**  
 price **der Preis (e)**  
 primary school  
   **die Grundschule (n)**  
 to print **aus|drucken**  
 private life **das Privatleben (-)**  
 prize **der Preis (e)**  
 pro(fessional) **der Profi (s)**  
 problem **das Problem (e)**  
   no problem! **kein Problem!**  
 product **das Produkt (e),  
 das Material (ien)**  
 profession **der Beruf (e)**  
 profile **das Profil (e)**  
 programmer  
   **der Programmierer (-) (male),  
 die Programmiererin (nen)  
 (female)**  
 project **das Projekt (e)**  
 to promote **Werbung machen**  
 pronoun **das Pronomen (-)**

to protect oneself against ...  
   **sich schützen vor ...**  
 proverb **das Sprichwort (er)**  
 to pull **ziehen\***  
 punctual **pünktlich**  
   be on time, please!  
   **seid bitte pünktlich!**  
 puppy **das Hündchen (-)**  
 purple **lila**  
 to put **stellen**  
 put the chairs up!  
   **stell(t) die Stühle hoch!**  
   put your hand(s) up!  
   **melde dich!, meldet euch!**  
 puzzle **das Rätsel (-)**  
 pyjamas **der Pyjama (s)**

## Q

quality **die Qualität (en)**  
 quarter **das Viertel (-)**  
   quarter past/to ...  
   **Viertel nach/vor ...**  
 question **die Frage (n)**  
 quick/quickly **schnell**  
 quiet **ruhig**  
   quiet, please! **ruhe, bitte!**  
 quite **ganz, ziemlich**  
 quiz **das Quiz (-)**

## R

rabbit **das Kaninchen (-)**  
 raid **die Razzia (Razzien)**  
 rain **der Regen**  
 raincoat **der Regenmantel (er)**  
 rainforest **der Regenwald (er)**  
 to rain **regnen**  
   it is raining **es regnet**  
 rap (music) **Rap**  
 rat **die Ratte (n)**  
 rather **lieber**  
 rather than **lieber als**  
 rather (quite) **ziemlich**  
 raw **roh**  
 to read **lesen\***  
 reading page **die Leseseite (n)**  
 ready **fertig**  
 really **echt, wirklich, richtig**  
   really? **wirklich?**  
   really great **richtig toll**  
 to receive **bekommen\***  
 recess **die Pause (n)**  
 recipe **das Rezept (e)**  
 to recycle **recyclen**  
 red **rot**  
 red cabbage **der Rotkohl (e)**

red card (soccer) **die rote Karte (n)**  
 reduced **reduziert**  
 referee **der Schiedsrichter (-)**  
 (male), **der Schiedsrichterin**  
 (nen) (female)  
 reindeer **das Rentier (e)**  
 to relax **relaxen**  
 relieved **erleichtert**  
 Religious Education **Religion/Reli**  
 to remain **bleiben\***  
 to repair **reparieren**  
 to repeat (a phrase) **wiederholen,**  
 (a year at school) **sitzenbleiben\***  
 to report **berichten**  
 report card (school)  
**das Zeugnis (se)**  
 repulsive **widerlich**  
 responsible **verantwortungsvoll**  
 to rest **sich ausruhen**  
 restaurant **das Restaurant (s)**  
 to return **zurück|kommen\***  
 revolting **ekelhaft, ekelig,**  
**widerlich**  
 Rhenish (from Rhineland)  
**rheinländisch**  
 rhinoceros **das Nashorn (‘er)**  
 rhythmic gymnastics  
**die rythmische Sportgymnastik**  
 rice **der Reis**  
 to ride **fahren\***  
 to ride a bike **Rad fahren\***  
 to ride a horse **reiten\***  
 to ride a skateboard  
**Skateboard fahren\***  
 riddle **das Rätsel (-)**  
 right **rechts, (correct) richtig**  
 on the right-hand side  
**auf der rechten Seite**  
 that's right! **stimmt!**  
 right-wing player  
**der Rechtsaußen (-)**  
 river **der Fluss (‘e)**  
 R'n'B (music) **R'n'B**  
 roast chicken **das Hähnchen (-)**  
 roast pork  
**der Schweinebraten (-)**  
 rock (music) **Rock**  
 role-play **das Rollenspiel (e)**  
 romantic movie  
**der Liebesfilm (e)**  
 romantic song (European style)  
**der Schlager (-)**  
 roof **das Dach (‘er)**  
 room **das Zimmer (-)**  
 rooster **der Hahn (‘e)**  
 rubbish **der Müll (-)**  
 to take out the rubbish  
**der Müll rausbringen\***

rubbish bin **der Mülleimer (-)**  
 rugby (Union or League) **Rugby**  
 ruler **das Lineal (e)**  
 to run **laufen\*, rennen\***  
 to run away **weg|laufen\***  
 running **das Rennen**

## S

sachertorte (rich Austrian  
 chocolate cake)  
**die Sachertorte (n)**  
 sad **traurig**  
 safe **sicher**  
 Saint Martin **Sankt Martin**  
 Saint Nicholas **Sankt Nikolaus,**  
**der Nikolaus (‘e)**  
 salad **der Salat (e)**  
 salami **die Salami (s)**  
 salami roll  
**das Salamibrötchen (-)**  
 sale (shopping)  
**der Schlussverkauf**  
 sales assistant  
**der Verkäufer (-) (male),**  
**die Verkäuferin (nen) (female)**  
 salt **das Salz**  
 salty **salzig**  
 same **gleich**  
 sandwich **das Sandwich (e),**  
**das belegtes Brot**  
 Santa Claus **der**  
**Weihnachtsmann (‘er)**  
 Saturday **der Samstag (e)**  
 sauce **die Soße (n)**  
 sauerkraut (pickled cabbage)  
**das Sauerkraut (-)**  
 sausage **die Wurst (‘e)**  
 sausage with curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (‘e)**  
 to save **sparen**  
 Saxon (dialect) **Sächsisch**  
 saxophone **das Saxophon (e)**  
 to say **sagen**  
 saying **das Sprichwort (‘er)**  
 scarcely **knapp**  
 scarf **der Schal (s)**  
 schnitzel  
**das (Wiener) Schnitzel (-)**  
 school **die Schule (n)**  
 academic high school  
**das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)**  
 comprehensive school  
**die Gesamtschule (n)**  
 high school (less academic)  
**die Realschule (n)**  
 primary school  
**die Grundschule (n)**

school bag **die Schultasche (n)**  
 school band **die Schulband (s)**  
 (end of) school certificate  
**das Abitur (en)**  
 school club  
**die Arbeitsgemeinschaft (en)**  
 school concert  
**das Schulkonzert (e)**  
 school disco **das Schuldisko (s)**  
 school formal/prom  
**der Abiball (ë)**  
 school hobby group  
**die Arbeitsgemeinschaft (en)**  
 school magazine  
**die Schülerzeitung (en)**  
 school-related/academic stress  
**der Schulstress (-)**  
 school subject  
**das Schulfach (‘er)**  
 school system  
**das Schulsystem (en)**  
 school uniform  
**die Schuluniform (en)**  
 school website  
**die Schulwebsite (s)**  
 school work **die Schularbeit (en)**  
 school year **das Schuljahr (e)**  
 school yard **der Schulhof (‘e)**  
 Science (school subject)  
**Naturwissenschaft (en)**  
 scissors **die Schere (n)**  
 score **der Spielstand (‘er)**  
 scoreboard **die Anzeigetafel (n)**  
 sea **das Meer (e), die See (n)**  
 by the sea **am Meer (e)**  
 sea horse **das Seepferdchen (-)**  
 season **die Jahreszeit (en)**  
 seat (at venue) **der Platz (‘e)**  
 seaweed **die Seealge (n)**  
 second **zweite**  
 the second street on the left/  
 right **die zweite Straße links/  
 rechts**  
 secondary school  
 see **high school**  
 to see **sehen\***  
 see you later! **bis später!,**  
**tschüs!, tschüssi!**  
 see you soon! **bis bald!**  
 self **selbst**  
 to send **schicken, senden\***  
 to send a text message (SMS)  
**texten**  
 sent **versendet**  
 sentence **der Satz (‘e)**  
 separable **trennbar**  
 separated **getrennt**  
 September **der September**

seriously? **im Ernst?**  
 serve **die Portion (en)**  
 to serve **bedienen**  
 service **der Service (-)**  
 to set off **losfahren\***  
 to set the table  
**den Tisch decken**  
 that's settled! **abgemacht!**  
 seven **sieben**  
 sewage **das Abwasser (no pl.)**  
 shadow **der Schatten (-)**  
 to share **teilen**  
 shared accommodation group  
**die Wohngemeinschaft (en)**  
 shark **der Hai (e)**  
 sharp **scharf**  
 to shave **sich rasieren**  
 she **sie**  
 shelf **das Regal (e)**  
 shell necklace  
**die Muschelkette (n)**  
 to shine **scheinen\***  
 ship **das Schiff (e)**  
 shirt (man's) **das Hemd (en)**  
 shoe **der Schuh (e)**  
 shoe shop **das Schuhgeschäft (e)**  
 to shoot (a goal) **schießen\***  
 shop **der Laden (")**,  
**die Handlung (en)**,  
**das Geschäft (e)**  
 organic shop **der Bioladen (")**,  
**der Biomarkt (")e)**  
 cake shop **die Konditorei (en)**  
 music shop  
**das Musikgeschäft (e)**  
 shoe shop **das Schuhgeschäft (e)**  
 to shop **ein|kaufen**  
 shop till you drop!  
**einkaufen bis zum Umfallen!**  
 shopping in the department  
 store **im Kaufhaus einkaufen**  
 shopping for food  
**Lebensmittel einkaufen**  
 shopping **das Shopping (no pl.)**,  
**das Einkaufen (-)**  
 shopping centre  
**das Einkaufszentrum (-zentren)**  
 shopping bag  
**die Einkaufsstüte (n)**,  
**die Einkaufstasche (n)**  
 shopping list  
**die Einkaufsliste (n)**  
 shopping street  
**die Marktstraße (n)**  
 shopping trolley  
**der Einkaufswagen (-)**  
 short, shortly **kurz**  
 shorts **die Shorts (pl.)**

should (*modal verb*) **sollen**  
 shoulder **die Schulter (n)**  
 show them! **zeig's ihnen!**  
 shower **die Dusche (n)**  
 to have a shower **sich duschen**  
 show-off **der Angeber (-)**  
 shy **scheu**  
 siblings **die Geschwister (pl.)**  
 sick **krank**  
 side **die Seite (n)**  
 sideline **die Seitenlinie (n)**  
 sign **das Schild (er)**  
 silly **blöd**  
 simple, simply **einfach**  
 simply great **einfach klasse**  
 since **seit**  
 to sing **singen\***  
 I sing in a choir  
**ich singe im Chor**  
 single-family house  
**das Einfamilienhaus (")er)**  
 singular (*grammar*) **der Singular**  
 (kitchen) sink **der Spülbecken (-)**  
 Sir! **Herr!**  
 sister **die Schwester (n)**  
 sister school  
**die Schwesterschule (n)**  
 to sit **sitzen\***  
 to sit down **sich setzen**  
 sit down! **setz dich! /**  
**setzt euch!**  
 six **sechs**  
 size (of clothing) **die Größe (n)**  
 skateboard **das Skateboard (s)**  
 to ride a skateboard  
**Skateboard fahren\***  
 skateboard helmet  
**der Skateboardhelm (e)**  
 to ski **Ski fahren\*/laufen\***  
 skiing **das Skifahren**  
 skilful **geschickt**  
 skin **die Haut (")e)**  
 skirt **der Rock (")e)**  
 sky **der Himmel (-)**  
 to sleep **schlafen\***  
 to fall asleep **ein|schlafen\***  
 (did you) sleep well?  
**gut geschlafen?**  
 sleeping bag **der Schlafsack (")e)**  
 slice **die Scheibe (n)**  
 sliced cold meat  
**der Aufschnitt (no pl.)**  
 slipper **der Hausschuh (e)**  
 slow, slowly **langsam**  
 small **klein**  
 too small **zu klein**  
 to smell **riechen\***

to smoke **rauchen**  
 to smoke marijuana **kiffen**  
 SMS **die SMS (-)**  
 snack **der Imbiss (e)**,  
**der Snack (s)**  
 snack stand/stall  
**die Imbissbude (n)**  
 snake **die Schlange (n)**  
 sniffer dog **der Spürhund (e)**  
 sniffles **der Schnupfen**  
 to snorkel **schnorcheln**  
 snow **der Schnee**  
 to snow **schneien**  
 it is snowing **es schneit**  
 snowball **der Schneeball (")e)**  
 snowboard **das Snowboard (s)**  
 to snowboard **snowboarden**  
 snowboarding  
**das Snowboarden**  
 snowflake **die Schneeflocke (n)**  
 snowman **der Schneemann (")er)**  
 so **so**  
 so far **bis jetzt**  
 so long! **tschau!**  
 so viel **so much**  
 so viele **so many**  
 so what? **na, und?**  
 soccer **Fußball**  
 soccer ball **der Fußball (")e)**  
 soccer jersey  
**das (Fußball) Trikot (s)**  
 soccer stadium  
**das Fußballstadion (-stadien)**  
 soccer training  
**das Fußballtraining (s)**  
 social media **soziale Medien (pl.)**  
 sock **die Socke (n)**  
 Social Science (school subject)  
**Sozialwissenschaft (en)**  
 Social Studies (school subject)  
**Sozialkunde (no pl.)**  
 sofa **das Sofa (s)**  
 soft **weich**  
 soft toy **das Kuscheltier (e)**  
 something **etwas**  
 something else?  
**sonst noch etwas?**  
 sometimes **manchmal**  
 son **der Sohn (")e)**  
 song **das Lied (er)**  
 soon **bald**  
 sorry! **Entschuldigung!**  
 I'm sorry! **tut mir Leid!**  
 sort (type) **die Art (en)**  
 to sort **sortieren**  
 soup **die Suppe (n)**  
 sour (taste) **sauer**  
 souvenir **das Souvenir (e)**

spa area **der Wellnessbereich (e)**  
space (seat, spot) **der Platz (‘e)**  
spaghetti **die Spaghetti (s)**  
Spain **Spanien**  
sparkling wine **der Sekt (e)**  
to speak **sprechen\*, reden**  
speaking tips **Sprachtipps**  
speciality **die Spezialität (en)**  
spectator (*male*)  
**der Zuschauer (-)**  
to spend (time) **verbringen\***  
spicy **scharf**  
spider **die Spinne (n)**  
spirits (alcohol) **der Schnaps/  
Schnapps (en)**  
spoiled **verwöhnt**  
sport **der Sport**  
Sport (school subject) **Sport, PE**  
sports carnival **das Sportfest (e)**  
sports day **der Sporttag (e)**  
sports department  
**die Sportabteilung (en)**  
sports gear  
**das Sportzeug (no pl.)**  
sports hall **die Sporthalle (n)**  
sports teacher  
**der Sportlehrer (-) (male),  
die Sportlehrerin (nen) (female)**  
sports star **der Sportstar (s)**  
sportsfield **das Spielfeld (er)**  
sporty **sportlich**  
spot on! **genau!, ganz genau!,  
haargenau**  
spotted (pattern) **gepunktet**  
spring **der Frühling (e)**  
spritzer **die Schorle (n)**  
apple spritzer  
**die Apfelschorle (n)**  
squirrel **das Eichhörnchen (en)**  
stadium **das Stadion (Stadien)**  
stairs **die Treppe (n)**  
stand ...! **stell dich /  
stellt euch ...!**  
stand up! **steh(t) auf!**  
stand (sports) **die Tribüne (n)**  
star **der Stern (e)**  
to start **beginnen\***  
stay **der Aufenthalt (e)**  
to stay **bleiben\***  
to stay away **wegbleiben\***  
to stay overnight **übernachten**  
stepbrother **der Stiefbruder (‘-)**  
stepmother **die Stiefmutter (‘-)**  
stepfather **der Stiefvater (‘-)**  
stepsister **die Stiefschwester (n)**  
to stick **kleben**  
still **(immer) noch**  
still water **das stilles Wasser**

stomach **der Bauch (‘e)**  
stomach ache  
**der Bauchschmerzen**  
to have a stomach/tummy ache  
**Bauchschmerzen haben**  
stop that! **nun hört aber auf!**  
storey (of a building)  
**der Stock (‘e),  
das Stockwerk (e)**  
stormy **stürmisch**  
it is stormy **es ist stürmisch**  
stove **der Herd(e)**  
strange **komisch**  
straight ahead **gradeaus**  
straight away **gleich**  
straw star **der Strohstern (e)**  
to stream (music, film, TV show)  
**streamen**  
street **die Straße (n)**  
down the street/road  
**die Straße entlang**  
strict **streng**  
striker (sports player)  
**der Stürmer (-) (male),  
die Stürmerin (nen) (female)**  
striped (pattern) **gestreift**  
to stroll **spazieren**  
strong **stark**  
structure **die Struktur**  
student  
(*school*) **der Schüler (-) (male),  
die Schülerin (nen) (female);  
(university) der Student (en) (male),  
die Studentin (nen) (female)**  
study (room in a house)  
**das Arbeitszimmer (-)**  
stupid **blöd, doof**  
stylish **schick**  
subject (school) **das Fach (‘er),  
das Thema (s)**  
suburb **der Vorort (en)**  
to suit **stehen\***  
it suits me **es steht mir**  
sun hat **der Sonnenhut (‘e)**  
sunburn **der Sonnenbrand (‘e)**  
sure! **klar!**  
survey **die Umfrage**  
sugar **der Zucker**  
sugar almond  
**die Zuckermandel (n)**  
suitcase **der Koffer (-)**  
summer **der Sommer (-)**  
sun **die Sonne (n)**  
it is sunny **es ist sonnig**  
the sun is shining  
**die Sonne scheint**  
sunglasses **die Sonnenbrille (n)**  
Sunday **der Sonntag (e)**

sunscreen **die Sonnencreme (s)**  
super **super, toll**  
supermarket  
**der Supermarkt (‘e)**  
to be supposed to **sollen**  
sure **sicher, klar**  
sure! **klar!**  
sure thing! **doch!**  
to surf **surfen**  
surfing **Surfen**  
surname **der Familienname (n)**  
surprise **die Überraschung (en)**  
to surprise **überraschen**  
survey **die Umfrage (n)**  
sushi **das Sushi**  
sweet **süß**  
to swim **schwimmen\***  
swimming  
**das Schwimmen (no pl.)**  
Switzerland **die Schweiz**  
swollen **geschwollen**

## T

table **der Tisch (e)**  
table reserved for regulars  
**der Stammtisch (e)**  
table tennis **Tischtennis**  
tablet **die Tablette (n)**  
to tag **taggen**  
tail **der Schwanz (‘e)**  
take care! **mach’s gut!**  
take care of yourself!  
**pass auf dich auf!**  
to take **nehmen\***  
to take a photograph  
**photographieren**  
to take (along, with)  
**mitnehmen\***  
to take out (the rubbish)  
**(der Müll) rausbringen\***  
to take time **dauern**  
talent scout  
**der Talentsucher (-) (male),  
die Talentsucherin (nen)  
(female)**  
to talk **sprechen\*, reden**  
tap water  
**das Leitungswasser (-)**  
task **die Aufgabe (n)**  
to taste **schmecken**  
does that taste good?  
**schmeckt’s?**  
how does it taste?  
**wie schmeckt’s?**  
it tastes good! **das schmeckt!**  
tea **der Tee (s)**  
black tea **der schwarze Tee (s)**

herbal tea, fruit tisane  
**der Früchtetee (s)**  
 teacher **der Lehrer (-) (male),  
 die Lehrerin (nen) (female)**  
 teacher book  
**das Lehrerhandbuch (‘er)**  
 team **das Team (s),  
 die Mannschaft (en)**  
 team game **das Teamspiel (e)**  
 team leader  
**der Teamleiter (-) (male),  
 die Teamleiterin (nen) (female)**  
 techno music **Techno**  
 techno fan **das Technofan**  
 technology **die Technologie (n)**  
 teddy bear **der Teddybär (en)**  
 teenager **der Teenager (-)**  
 teeth braces **die Zahnsperre (n)**  
 to telephone **telefonieren (mit)**  
 telephone call/conversation  
**das Telefongespräch (e)**  
 telephone number  
**die Telefonnummer (n)**  
 television show  
**die Fernsehshow (en)**  
 to tell **sagen, erzählen**  
 tell me ... **sag mal ...**  
 temperature (in illness)  
**das Fieber**  
 temporary staff member  
**die Aushilfe (n)**  
 ten **zehn**  
 tennis **Tennis**  
 terrible **schlimm**  
 test **der Test (s)**  
 test of courage **die Mutprobe (n)**  
 text message **der Text (e),  
 die SMS (-)**  
 textbook **das Kursbuch (‘er)**  
 than **als**  
 thank you, thanks **danke**  
 thank goodness!  
**Gott sei Dank!**  
 thank you! **vielen Dank!**  
 thank you very much!  
**danke schön!**  
 that (thing) **das**  
 that comes to ... **das macht ...**  
 that costs ... **das kostet ...**  
 that is ... **das ist ...**  
 that would be great!  
**das wäre toll!**  
 that (conjunction) **dass**  
 so that **dass, damit**  
 that’s terrible! **so ein Mist!**  
 the **der (masc.), die (fem. & pl.),  
 das (neut.)**  
 theatre **das Theater (-)**

their **sein/seine/seinen**  
 them **sie, damit**  
 then **dann, denn**  
 there **da, dort**  
 there is ... **es gibt ...**  
 there you are! **da seid ihr ja!**  
 these **diese**  
 they **ihnen, sie**  
 thin **dünn**  
 thing **die Sache (n)**  
 to think (about) **denken (an)**  
 I will think of you!  
**ich werde an dich denken!**  
 thirst **der Durst**  
 to be thirsty **Durst haben**  
 this **diese**  
 three **drei**  
 throat **der Hals (‘e)**  
 to have a sore throat  
**Halbschmerzen haben**  
 through **durch**  
 to throw **werfen\***  
 to thunder **donnern**  
 there is thunder and lightning  
**es donnert und blitzt**  
 thunderstorm **das Gewitter (-)**  
 there is a thunderstorm  
**es gibt Gewitter**  
 Thursday **der Donnerstag (e)**  
 ticket **die Karte (n)**  
 to tidy up **aufräumen,  
 (in Ordnung) bringen**  
 tie (neck tie) **der Schlips (e)**  
 tiger **der Tiger (-)**  
 tight **eng**  
 till **bis**  
 till Monday! **bis Montag!**  
 time **die Zeit (en)**  
 on time **pünktlich**  
 be on time, please!  
**seid bitte pünktlich!**  
 what time is it? **wie spät ist es?,  
 wie viel Uhr ist es?**  
 timetable **der Stundenplan (‘e)**  
 timid **scheu**  
 tip **das Trinkgeld (no pl.)**  
 tiramisu **das Tiramisu (s)**  
 tired **müde**  
 to **auf, in, nach, vor, zu, bis, an**  
 to go to the toilet  
**auf die Toilette gehen**  
 to the cinema **ins Kino**  
 to Germany  
**nach Deutschland**  
 to Vienna **nach Wien**  
 ten to three **zehn vor drei**  
 to (sports) training  
**zum Training**

to (the) school **zur Schule**  
 to that (in addition) **dazu**  
 toast **der Toast (s)**  
 today **heute**  
 today is the ... (date)  
**heute ist der ... (Datum)**  
 toe **der Zeh (en)**  
 together **zusammen**  
 toilet **die Toilette (n)**  
 to go to the toilet  
**auf die Toilette gehen**  
 tomato **die Tomate (n)**  
 tomato sauce  
**die Tomatensoße (n)**  
 tomato soup  
**die Tomatensuppe (n)**  
 tomorrow **morgen**  
 tongue-twister  
**der Zungenbrecher (-)**  
 tonight **heute Abend**  
 too **auch (also), zu**  
 tooth **der Zahn (‘e)**  
 top **das Top**  
 in top form **topfit**  
 topic **das Thema (Themen)**  
 totally **total**  
 totally sick **total abgefahren**  
 tour **die Rundreise (n),  
 die Tour (en)**  
 tourism **der Tourismus**  
 tourist **der Tourist (en) (male),  
 die Touristin (nen) (female)**  
 towards **zu, nach, gegen**  
 town hall **das Rathaus (‘er)**  
 Trabant (East German car)  
**der Trabant (en)**  
 tracksuit  
**der Trainingsanzug (‘e)**  
 trade **das Handwerk**  
 train **der Zug (‘e)**  
 train line (rapid local)  
**die S-bahn (Schnellbahn) (en)**  
 train station **der Bahnhof (‘e)**  
 train (underground) **die U-bahn  
 (U-Bahn) (en)**  
 to train **trainieren**  
 trainer (sneaker, runner)  
**der Turnschuh (e)**  
 training **das Training (s)**  
 tram **die Straßenbahn (en)**  
 to translate **übersetzen**  
 transport **das Verkehrsmittel (-)**  
 travel agent **die  
 Reisebürokauffrau (female),  
 der Reisebürokaufmann (male)**  
 to travel **reisen**  
 to travel by (mode of transport)  
**fahren\***

trip **die Reise (n)**  
trousers **die Hose (n)**  
truck/heavy goods vehicle  
**der LKW (Lastkraftwagen) (-)**  
true **wahr**  
true! **stimmt!**  
trumpet **die Trompete (n)**  
trunk (of elephant)  
**der Rüssel (-)**  
to trust **vertrauen**  
trusting **zutraulich**  
to try **probieren, versuchen**  
try some! **probier doch mal!**  
to try on **an|probieren**  
T-shirt **das T-Shirt (s)**  
Tuesday **der Dienstag (e)**  
Turkey **die Türkei**  
Turkish **türkisch**  
turn the light on/off!  
**mach(t) das Licht an/aus!**  
tusk **der Hauer (-)**  
tutoring centre  
**die Nachhilfeschule (n)**  
twelve **zwölf**  
twenty **zwanzig**  
two **zwei**  
type **die Art (en), (of person)**  
**der Typ (en)**  
type of music  
**die Musikarte (n)**  
type of sausage  
**die Wurstsorte (n)**  
typical **typisch**

## U

ugh! **igitt!, pfui!**  
ugly **hässlich**  
umlaut **der Umlaut (e)**  
umpire  
**der Schiedsrichter (-) (male),**  
**der Schiedsrichterin (nen)**  
*(female)*  
unbelievably **unglaublich**  
uncle **der Onkel (-)**  
uncoordinated **ungeschickt**  
under **unter**  
underground train **die U-bahn**  
**(Untergrundbahn) (en)**  
to understand **verstehen\***  
to have an understanding for  
**Verständnis haben für**  
unfair **unfair**  
that is unfair! **das ist unfair!**  
unfortunately **leider**  
unfortunately ... **schade ...**  
United Kingdom **Großbritannien**  
unimportant **unwichtig**

university city  
**die Universitätsstadt (‘e)**  
unsatisfactory **ungenügend**  
until **bis**  
unusual **sonderbar**  
unvoiced **stimmlos**  
up to **bis**  
upon **auf**  
us **uns**  
the USA **die USA (pl.)**  
to use **benutzen, verwenden**

## V

to vacuum **staubsaugen,**  
**Staub saugen**  
is valid **genauso gilt**  
in vast quantities **in Massen**  
veal sausage **die Weißwurst (‘e)**  
vegetables **das Gemüse (-)**  
vegetarian **vegetarisch**  
venomous **giftig**  
verb **das Verb (en)**  
vertical (down) **senkrecht**  
very **sehr**  
very good **sehr gut**  
vet **der Tierarzt (‘e) (male),**  
**die Tierärztin (nen) (female)**  
video **das Video (s)**  
Vienna **Wien**  
village **das Dorf (‘er)**  
vinyl record **die Schallplatte (n)**  
violin **die Geige (n)**  
visit **der Besuch (e)**  
to visit **besuchen**  
vlog **der Vlog (s)**  
vocabulary **der Wortschatz (‘e)**  
voiced **stimmhaft**  
volleyball **Volleyball**  
voucher **der Gutschein (e)**

## W

to wait (for) **warten (auf)**  
wait a moment! **Moment!**  
waiter **der Kellner (-)**  
waitress **die Kellnerin (nen)**  
to go for a walk  
**spazieren gehen\***  
to wake up **auf|wachen**  
to want (to) *(modal verb)* **wollen\***  
warm **warm**  
to wash **waschen\***  
to wash (the dishes)  
**ab|waschen\***  
to wash (your body)  
**sich waschen\***

wash cloth **das Waschtuch (‘er)**  
washing machine  
**die Waschmaschine (n)**  
waste water  
**das Abwasser (no pl.)**  
watch **die Uhr (en)**  
to watch **zu|sehen\***  
watch out! **pass(t) auf!**  
to watch (a sports match)  
**zu|schauen**  
to watch television **fern|sehen\***  
water **das Wasser (no pl.)**  
mineral water  
**das Mineralwasser (-)**  
still water **das stilles Wasser**  
tap water  
**das Leitungswasser (-)**  
to go waterskiing  
**Wasserski fahren\***  
way **der Weg (e)**  
we **wir**  
we’ll see **mal sehen**  
to wear **tragen\***  
wedding anniversary  
**der Hochzeitstag (e)**  
weather **das Wetter (-)**  
what is the weather like?  
**wie ist das Wetter?**  
web/online streaming  
**das Webstreaming (-)**  
website **die Website (s),**  
**die Internetseite (n)**  
Wednesday **der Mittwoch (-)**  
week **die Woche (n)**  
week of cleaning duties  
*(in a block of flats)*  
**die Kehrwoche (n)**  
weekday **der Wochentag (e)**  
weekend **das Wochenende (n)**  
have a nice weekend!  
**schönes Wochenende!**  
welcome! **willkommen!**  
you’re (very) welcome  
**bitte, bitte schön, bitte sehr**  
well **gut, wohl**  
well ... **na ...**  
well done! **gut gemacht!**  
well, thanks **danke, gut**  
what? **was?**  
what a smell! **so ein Mist!**  
what can I do for you?  
**bitte schön?**  
what date is it today?  
**der Wievielte ist heute?**  
what does ... think about that?  
**was meint ... dazu?**  
what happened?  
**was ist passiert?**

what is going on here?  
**was ist denn hier los?**  
 what is it? **was denn?**  
 what is that? **was ist das?**  
 what is the weather like?  
**wie ist das Wetter?**  
 what is your name?  
**wie heißt du?**  
 what time is it? **wie viel Uhr ist es?, wie spät ist es?**  
 what would you like?  
**was darf es sein?**  
 what's going on? **wie steht's?**  
 what's going on here?  
**was ist denn hier los?**  
 what's new?  
**was gibt's Neues?**  
 what's the matter?  
**was ist los?**  
 what's up? **was ist los?, gibt's? gibt es?, was geht?, was geht ab?**  
 whatever you say!  
**na, wenn du so meinst!**  
 when? **wann?**  
 when is your birthday?  
**wann hast du Geburtstag?**  
 when, whenever **wenn, als**  
 where? **wo?**  
 where do we live?  
**wo wohnen wir?**  
 where were you?  
**wo warst du?**  
 where from? **woher?**  
 where are you from?  
**woher kommst du?**  
 whether **ob**  
 which? **welche?**  
 whipped cream (Austrian)  
**das Schlagobers (-)**  
 whisker **das Schnurrbarthaar (e)**  
 whistle (final)  
**der Schlusspiff (e)**  
 white **weiß**  
 whiteboard **die Tafel (n)**  
 who? **wer?**  
 who is that? **wer ist das?**  
 from who(m)? **von wem?**  
 whole **ganz**  
 why? **warum?**  
 why ever not?  
**warum denn nicht?**  
 wide **weit**  
 wife **die Frau (en)**  
 wild boar **das Wildschwein (e)**  
 I will ... **ich werde ...**  
 I will never forget this time  
**ich werde diese Zeit nie vergessen**

I will think of you!  
**ich werde an dich denken!**  
 I will/we will miss you!  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!**  
 to win **gewinnen\***  
 windy **windig**  
 window **das Fenster (-)**  
 wine **der Wein (e)**  
 wing **der Flügel (-)**  
 winter **der Winter (-)**  
 winter clothes  
**die Winterkleidung**  
 winter holiday  
**die Winterreise (n)**  
 winter sports  
**der Wintersport (e)**  
 winter sports resort  
**der Wintersportort (e)**  
 to wish **wünschen**  
 wishlist **die Wunschliste (n)**  
 witch **die Hexe (n)**  
 with **mit, bei**  
 with pleasure **gern**  
 with it **damit**  
 without **ohne**  
 wolf **der Wolf ('e)**  
 woman **die Frau (en)**  
 women's department  
**die Damenabteilung (en)**  
 wonder **das Wunder (-)**  
 to wonder **sich fragen**  
 wonderful **wunderbar, herrlich**  
 word **das Wort ('er)**  
 word order **die Wortstellung (en)**  
 word search **die Wortsuche (n)**  
 work **die Arbeit (en)**  
 to work **arbeiten**  
 to work (part-time job) **jobben**  
 to work on **arbeiten an**  
 workbook **das Arbeitsbuch ('er)**  
 it worked! **es hat geklappt!**  
 worker **der Arbeiter (-) (male), die Arbeiterin (nen) (female)**  
 world **die Welt (en)**  
 worry **die Sorge (n)**  
 to worry **sich Sorgen machen**  
 is worth **genauso gilt**  
 would like **möchte**  
 would you like to dance?  
**möchtest du gern tanzen?**  
 would like to **möchten**  
 would have liked **gemocht**  
 wristwatch **die Armbanduhr (en)**  
 to write **schreiben\***  
 write that down!  
**schreib(t) das auf!**  
 writing tips **Schreibtipp(s)**  
 wrong **falsch**

## Y

year **das Jahr (e)**  
 ... year old ... **Jahre alt**  
 yellow **gelb**  
 yellow card (soccer)  
**die gelbe Karte (n)**  
 yes **ja**  
 yes, absolutely! **ja und wie!**  
 yes, gladly (with pleasure)  
**ja, gerne**  
 yes, that's true **ja, stimmt**  
 yesterday **gestern**  
 yoghurt **der Joghurt (s)**  
 you (sing. informal) **du, dich, dir;**  
 (pl.) **ihr, euch;** (sing. formal) **Sie;**  
 (formal) **Ihnen**  
 you are getting on my nerves!  
**du gehst mir auf die Nerven!**  
 you look angry!  
**du siehst sauer aus!**  
 you poor thing! **du Arme/r!**  
 you really don't need to worry  
**du brauchst dir wirklich keine Sorgen machen**  
 you're (very) welcome  
**bitte, bitte schön, bitte sehr**  
 you're a lucky person  
**du bist ein Glückspilz**  
 young **jung**  
 your (sing. informal) **dein/deine/**  
**deinen,** (pl.) **euer/eure,** (formal)  
**Ihr/Ihre/Ihren**  
 youth guest house  
**das Jugendgästehaus ('er)**  
 youth hostel  
**die Jugendherberge (n)**  
 yuck! **pfui!, igitt!**  
 yum! **lecker!**

## Z

zebra **das Zebra (s)**  
 zero **null**  
 zone **die Zone (n)**  
 zoo **der Zoo (s)**

# STARKE VERBEN

## Achtung!

\* = these verbs form the perfect tense with *sein*

Below is a list of irregular verbs that appear in *Ganz Klasse! 1* and *2*.

In German, irregular verbs are referred to as *unregelmäßige Verben* or *starke Verben*.

Infinitive	Present tense <i>er, sie, es</i> form	Simple past <i>er, sie, es</i> form	Perfect tense past participle	English
<b>backen</b>	bäckt	backte	gebacken	to bake
<b>beginnen</b>	beginnt	begann	begonnen	to begin, to start
<b>beißen</b>	beißt	biss	gebissen	to bite
<b>bieten</b>	bietet	bot	geboten	to bid, to offer
<b>bleiben</b>	bleibt	blieb	geblieben*	to stay
<b>bringen</b>	bringt	brachte	gebracht	to bring
<b>dürfen</b>	darf	durfte	gedurft	to be allowed to
<b>entscheiden</b>	entscheidet	entschied	entschieden	to decide (on)
<b>essen</b>	isst	aß	gegessen	to eat
<b>fahren</b>	fährt	fuhr	gefahren*	to go; to drive
<b>fallen</b>	fällt	fiel	gefallen*	to fall
<b>fangen</b>	fängt	fang	gefangen	to catch
<b>finden</b>	findet	fand	gefunden	to find
<b>fliegen</b>	fliegt	flog	geflogen*	to fly
<b>fressen</b>	frisst	fraß	gefressen	to eat (for animals)
<b>geben</b>	gibt	gab	gegeben	to give
<b>gehen</b>	geht	ging	gegangen*	to go, to walk
<b>genießen</b>	genießt	genoß	genossen	to enjoy
<b>gewinnen</b>	gewinnt	gewann	gewonnen	to win
<b>haben</b>	hat	hatte	gehabt	to have
<b>heißen</b>	heißt	hieß	geheißen	to be called
<b>helfen</b>	hilft	half	geholfen	to help
<b>kennen</b>	kennt	kannte	gekant	to know (a person)
<b>kommen</b>	kommt	kam	gekommen*	to come
<b>können</b>	kann	konnte	gekonnt	to be able to; can
<b>lassen</b>	lässt	ließ	gelassen	to leave
<b>laufen</b>	läuft	lief	gelaufen*	to run
<b>lesen</b>	liest	las	gelesen	to read
<b>mögen</b>	mag	mochte	gemocht	to like, to like to
<b>müssen</b>	muss	musste	gemusst	to have to
<b>nehmen</b>	nimmt	nahm	genommen	to take; to have

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Present tense <i>er, sie, es</i> form</b>	<b>Simple past <i>er, sie, es</i> form</b>	<b>Perfect tense past participle</b>	<b>English</b>
<b>reiten</b>	reitet	ritt	geritten*	to ride (a horse)
<b>rennen</b>	rennt	rannte	gerannt*	to run
<b>riechen</b>	riecht	roch	gerochen	to smell
<b>rufen</b>	ruft	rief	gerufen	to call, to shout
<b>scheinen</b>	scheint	schien	geschienen	to shine
<b>schießen</b>	schießt	schoss	geschossen	to shoot (a goal)
<b>schlafen</b>	schläft	schief	geschlafen	to sleep
<b>schließen</b>	schließt	schloss	geschlossen	to close
<b>schneiden</b>	schneidet	schnitt	geschnitten	to cut
<b>schreiben</b>	schreibt	schrieb	geschrieben	to write
<b>schwimmen</b>	schwimmt	schwamm	geschwommen*	to swim
<b>sehen</b>	sieht	sah	gesehen	to see
<b>sein</b>	ist	war	gewesen*	to be
<b>senden</b>	sendet	sandte/sendete	gesandt	to send
<b>singen</b>	singt	sang	gesungen	to sing
<b>sitzen</b>	sitzt	saß	gesessen	to sit
<b>sprechen</b>	spricht	sprach	gesprochen	to speak
<b>stehen</b>	steht	stand	gestanden	to stand; to suit (clothes)
<b>steigen</b>	steigt	stieg	gestiegen*	to climb
<b>sterben</b>	stirbt	starb	gestorben*	to die
<b>tragen</b>	trägt	trug	getragen	to wear, to carry
<b>treiben</b>	treibt	trieb	getrieben	to do (e.g. sport)
<b>treffen</b>	trifft	traf	getroffen	to meet (up with)
<b>trinken</b>	trinkt	trank	getrunken	to drink
<b>tun</b>	tut	tat	getan	to do
<b>verbinden</b>	verbindet	verband	verbunden	to join
<b>vergessen</b>	vergisst	vergaß	vergessen	to forget
<b>verlieren</b>	verliert	verlor	verloren	to lose
<b>verstehen</b>	versteht	verstand	verstanden	to understand
<b>waschen</b>	wäscht	wusch	gewaschen	to wash
<b>werben</b>	wirbt	warb	geworben	to recruit; to advertise
<b>werfen</b>	wirft	warf	geworfen	to throw
<b>wissen</b>	weiß	wusste	gewusst	to know
<b>wollen</b>	will	wollte	gewollt	to want (to)
<b>ziehen</b>	zieht	zog	gezogen	to pull



This book and online study tools will help you master the skills and knowledge needed to succeed in class!



*If you haven't already...*

Create an account in NelsonNet:  
**[www.nelsonnet.com.au](http://www.nelsonnet.com.au)**  
to build your Bookshelf.



For easy reference,  
make a note of your login  
email & password and keep  
it somewhere safe...  
like your mobile or school diary!



From the menu bar select  
**Enter Access Code**  
& type in your code.

YOUR ACCESS CODE

Don't forget to register first at:  
**[www.nelsonnet.com.au](http://www.nelsonnet.com.au)**



XXXXXX - XXXX



For help using your Access Code, go to:  
**[www.nelsonnet.com.au/help](http://www.nelsonnet.com.au/help)**

## Overview

*Ganz Klasse!* 1 and 2 is a fresh, new series for beginner students of German in Years 7–10. It has been written to fully address the requirements of the Australian Curriculum: German, Victorian Curriculum: German and New South Wales German syllabus. Features of the series include:

- Integrated, easy-to-use print and digital resources with engaging and contemporary content
- A strong emphasis on cultural and intercultural teaching and learning, carefully integrated within a communicative approach
- Numerous opportunities for differentiated learning, language practice and language use
- A stimulating and clean design to visually assist students in their learning



Level 1 Student Book  
9780170419505



Level 1 Workbook  
9780170419543



Level 1 Teacher Toolkit  
9780170419550



Level 2 Student Book  
9780170419512



Level 2 Workbook  
9780170419529



Level 2 Teacher Toolkit  
9780170419536

## Student book features

- Clearly structured to allow for meaningful and fun language and cultural learning, reflecting and comparing
- Provides a variety of tasks and texts that consolidate both productive and receptive skills, interwoven with opportunities for the development of general capabilities and cross-curriculum priorities
- Lively cartoon spreads, photos, reading passages and multiple occasions for intercultural reflection.